Contents

Introduction 1
Keys, Doors, and Windows 6
Seats and Restraints 33
Storage 77
Instruments and Controls 80
Lighting 118
Infotainment System 125
Climate Controls 173
Driving and Operating 179
Vehicle Care 252
Service and Maintenance 320
Technical Data 329
Customer Information 336
OnStar 345
Connected Services 350
Index. 353

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 85525240

Introduction

The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, CADILLAC, the CADILLAC Emblem, and CT5, are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on the vehicle because of optional equipment that was not purchased on the vehicle, model variants, country specifications, features/applications that may not be available in your region, or changes subsequent to the printing of this owner's manual, including changes in standard or optional content.

Refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm the features.

Danger, Warning, and Caution

Warning messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce them.

⚠ Danger

Danger indicates a hazard with a high level of risk which will result in serious injury or death.

⚠ Warning

Warning indicates a hazard that could result in injury or death.

Caution

Caution indicates a hazard that could result in property or vehicle damage.

©2023 General Motors LLC. All Rights Reserved.



A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

: Shown when the owner’s manual has additional instructions or information.

: Shown when the service manual has additional instructions or information.

: Shown when there is more information on another page — “see page.”

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. See the features in this manual for information.

: Air Conditioning System

: Air Conditioning Refrigerant Oil

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Brake System Warning Light

: Dispose of Used Components Properly

: Do Not Apply High Pressure Water

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Flame/Fire Prohibited

: Flammable

: Forward Collision Alert

: Fuse Block Cover Lock Location

: Fuses

: ISOFIX/LATCH System Child Restraints

: Keep Fuse Block Covers Properly Installed

: Lane Change Alert

: Lane Departure Warning

: Lane Keep Assist

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Park Assist

: Pedestrian Ahead Indicator

: Power

: Rear Cross Traffic Alert

: Registered Technician

: Remote Vehicle Start

: Risk of Electrical Fire

: Seat Belt Reminders

: Side Blind Zone Alert

: Stop/Start

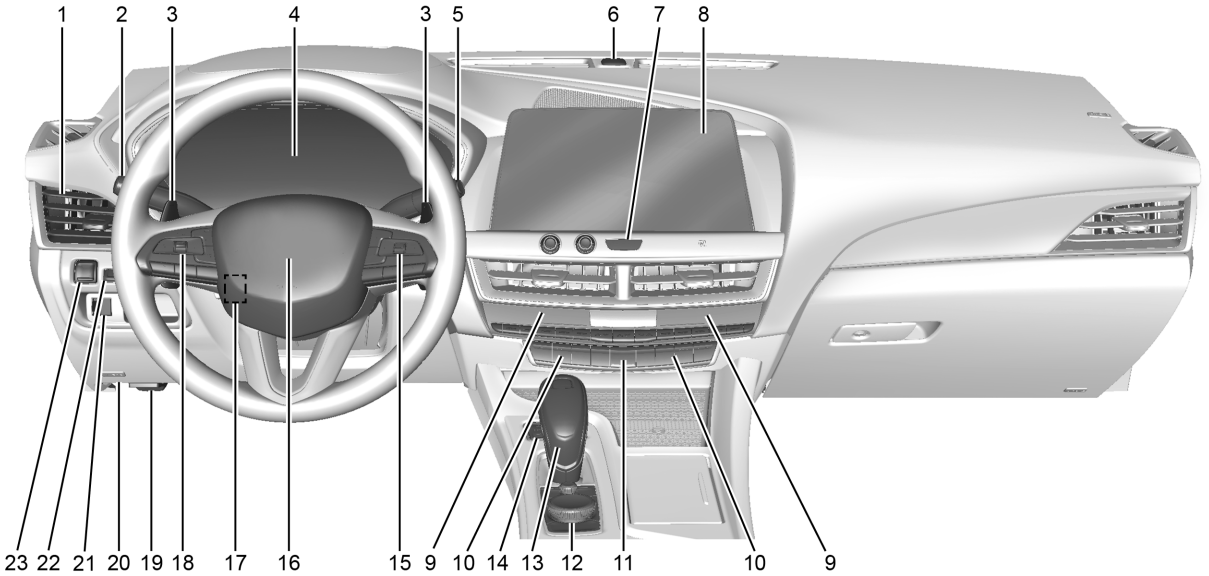
: Tire Pressure Monitor

: Traction Control/StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

: Under Pressure

: Vehicle Ahead Indicator

Instrument Panel Overview



Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

1. *Air Vents* ⇨ *177*.
2. Turn Signal Lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *121*.

   Exterior Lamp Controls ⇨ *118*.

   IntelliBeam System Button (If Equipped). See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *118*.
3. Tap Shift Controls (If Equipped). See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *206*.
4. *Instrument Cluster (Uplevel)* ⇨ *90* or *Instrument Cluster (Base Level)* ⇨ *87*.
5. *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *82*.
6. Light Sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *120*.
7. Home Button and Infotainment Controls. See *Overview* ⇨ *126*.
8. Infotainment. See *Introduction* ⇨ *125*.
9. *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *173*.
10. *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *40* (If Equipped).

    Lane Keep Assist (LKA) ⇨ *246* (If Equipped).

    Automatic Park Assist Button (If Equipped). See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *231*.

    Park Assist Button. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *231*.
11. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *121*.
12. Infotainment Controls. See *Overview* ⇨ *126*.
13. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *203*.
14. *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *210*.

    Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) ⇨ *210*.

    Stop/Start Disable Switch. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *199*.

    MODE Switch. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *212*.
15. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *127*.

    Driver Information Center (DIC) Controls. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.
16. *Horn* ⇨ *82*.
17. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *81*.
18. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *219* (If Equipped).

    Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced) ⇨ *221* (If Equipped).

    Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *239* (If Equipped).

    Heated Steering Wheel ⇨ *81* (If Equipped).
19. Hood Release. See *Hood* ⇨ *253*.
20. Data Link Connector (DLC) (Out of View). See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *97*.
21. *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *122*.
22. *Head-Up Display (HUD)* ⇨ *111* (If Equipped).
23. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Switch. See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *208*.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 6
Remote Key 7
Remote Key Operation 7
Remote Vehicle Start 12
Door Locks 13
Power Door Locks 15
Delayed Locking 16
Automatic Door Locks 16
Lockout Protection 16
Safety Locks 16

Doors
Trunk 17

Vehicle Security
Vehicle Security 21
Vehicle Alarm System 21
Steering Column Lock 23
Immobilizer Operation 23

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 24
Power Mirrors 25
Folding Mirrors 25
Heated Mirrors 26
Automatic Dimming Mirror 26
Reverse Tilt Mirrors 26

Interior Mirrors
Interior Rearview Mirrors 26
Manual Rearview Mirror 27
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror ... 27
Rear Camera Mirror 27

Windows
Windows 29
Power Windows 29
Sun Visors 31

Roof
Sunroof 31

Keys and Locks

Keys

⚠ Warning

Leaving children in a vehicle with a remote key is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the remote key in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with a remote key.





The key inside the remote key is used for the driver door and glove box.

To remove the mechanical key, press the button on the side of the remote key near the bottom, and pull the mechanical key out. Never pull the mechanical key out without pressing the button.

If it becomes difficult to turn the key, inspect the key blade for debris. Periodically clean with a brush or pick.

See your dealer if a new mechanical key is needed.

Remote Key

If there is a decrease in the remote key operating range:

- Check the distance. The remote key may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the remote key battery. See "Battery Replacement" later in this section.
- If the remote key is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Key Operation

The Keyless Access system allows for vehicle entry when the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft). See "Keyless Access Operation" later in this section.

The remote key functions may work up to 60 m (197 ft) away from the vehicle.

Other conditions can impact the performance of the remote key. See *Remote Key* ⇨ *7*.



: Press to lock all doors and the fuel door, if equipped. The turn signal indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound on the second press to indicate locking. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Remote Lock, Unlock, Start".

Pressing may also arm the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *21*.

If equipped with remote folding mirrors, double pressing and holding on the remote key may fold the mirrors. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ *25*.

: Press to unlock the driver door and the fuel door, if equipped. Press again within five seconds to unlock all doors. The remote key can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first button press. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Remote Lock, Unlock, Start". When remotely unlocking the vehicle at night, the headlamps and back-up lamps may come on for about 30 seconds to light your approach to the vehicle. The turn signal indicators may flash to indicate unlocking.

Pressing will disarm the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *21*.

Double press and hold for about three seconds to remotely open the windows, if enabled. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Remote Lock, Unlock, Start".

If equipped with remote folding mirror, double pressing and holding on the remote key may unfold the mirrors. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ *25*.

: Press twice to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the remote key. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *12*.

: Press and release one time to initiate vehicle locator. The exterior lamps flash and the horn chirps three times. Press and hold for more than three seconds to sound the panic alarm. The horn sounds and the turn signal lamps flash for 30 seconds, or until is pressed again or the vehicle is started.

: Press twice to release the trunk.

Keyless Access Operation

The Keyless Access system lets you lock and unlock the doors and access the trunk without removing the remote key from your pocket, purse, briefcase, etc. The remote key must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the trunk or door being opened. The button is on the outside door handle.

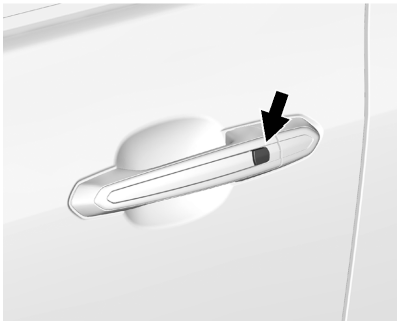
The Keyless Access system can be programmed to be turned off or to unlock all doors on the first door handle press from the driver door. Keyless unlocking can also be turned off. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Remote Lock, Unlock, Start".

If equipped with memory seats, remote keys 1 and 2 are linked to seating positions of memory 1 or 2. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *38*.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door

When the doors are locked and the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, pressing the door handle button on the inside of the driver door handle will unlock the driver door. If the door handle button is pressed again within five seconds, all passenger doors will unlock.

If equipped with remote folding mirror, pressing the driver door handle button may fold and unfold the mirrors. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ *25*.



Driver Door Shown, Passenger Similar

Pressing the door handle button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- It has been more than five seconds since the first door handle button press.
- Two door handle button presses were used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Passenger Doors

When the doors are locked and the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, pressing the door handle button on a passenger door handle will unlock all doors. Pressing the door handle button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- The door handle button was used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

Disable/Enable Keyless Unlocking of Exterior Door Handles and Trunk

If equipped, keyless unlocking of the exterior door handles and trunk can be disabled and enabled.

Disabling Keyless Unlocking:

With the vehicle off, press and hold and on the remote key at the same time for approximately four seconds. The turn signal lamps will flash four times quickly to indicate access is disabled. Using any exterior handle to unlock the doors or open the trunk will cause the turn signal lamps to flash four times quickly, indicating access is disabled. If disabled, disarm the alarm system before starting the vehicle.

Disabling Keyless Unlocking may also be configured under Vehicle settings. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select “Vehicle” to display the list of available options and select “Remote Lock, Unlock, Start”.

Enabling Keyless Unlocking:

With the vehicle off, press and hold and on the remote key at the same time for approximately four seconds. The turn signal lamps will flash twice quickly to indicate access is enabled.

Enabling Keyless Unlocking may also be configured under Vehicle settings. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select “Vehicle” to display the list of available options and select “Remote Lock, Unlock, Start”.

Passive (Walkaway) Locking

The Keyless Access system will lock the vehicle several seconds after all doors are closed if the vehicle is off and at least one remote key has been removed or none remain in the vehicle.

If equipped, the fuel door will also lock.

If other electronic devices interfere with the remote key signal, the vehicle may not detect the remote key inside the vehicle. If passive (walkaway) locking is enabled, the

doors may lock with the remote key inside the vehicle. Do not leave the remote key in an unattended vehicle.

To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Power Door Locks".

If equipped with remote folding mirror, passive (walkaway) locking may fold the mirrors. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ *25*.

Temporary Disable of Passive (Walkaway) Locking

Temporarily disable passive locking by pressing and holding on the interior door switch with a door open for at least four seconds, or until three chimes are heard. Passive (walkaway) locking will then remain disabled until the vehicle is turned on.

Remote Key Left In Vehicle Alert

When the vehicle is turned off and a remote key is left in the vehicle, the horn will chirp three times after all doors are closed. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Remote Lock, Unlock, Start".

Remote Key No Longer In Vehicle Alert

If the vehicle is on, with a door open, and then all doors are closed, the vehicle will check for a remote key inside. If a remote key is not detected, the Driver Information Center (DIC) will display NO KEY FOUND and the horn will chirp three times.

This occurs only once each time the vehicle is driven. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Remote Lock, Unlock, Start".

Keyless Trunk Opening

Press the touch pad on the rear of the trunk above the license plate if the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft).

Mechanical Key Access

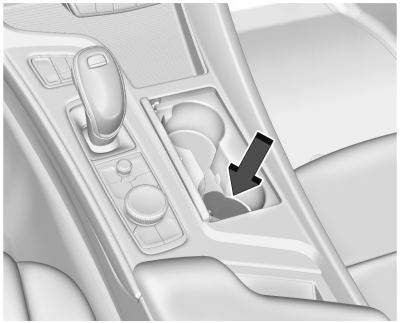
To access a vehicle with a weak remote key battery, see *Door Locks* ⇨ *13*.

Programming Remote Keys to the Vehicle

Only remote keys programmed to the vehicle will work. If a remote key is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. The vehicle can be reprogrammed so that lost or stolen remote keys no longer work. Each vehicle can have up to eight remote keys matched to it.

Starting the Vehicle with a Low Remote Key Battery

For improved vehicle security, the remote key is equipped with a motion sensor. When starting the vehicle, if the remote key has been idle for a while, the DIC may display KEY IN SLEEP MODE, MOVE KEY, THEN START. Move the remote key slightly and try starting the vehicle. When starting the vehicle, if the remote key battery is depleted or there is signal interference, the DIC may display NO KEY FOUND, REPLACE BATTERY IN KEY or NO REMOTE KEY WAS DETECTED PLACE KEY IN KEY POCKET THEN START YOUR VEHICLE, follow the steps shown below:



1. Place the remote key into the rear cupholder.
2. With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral) press the brake pedal and ENGINE START/STOP.

   Replace the remote key battery as soon as possible.

Battery Replacement

⚠ Warning

Never allow children to play with the remote key. The remote key contains a small battery, which can be a choking hazard. If swallowed, internal burns can
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

occur, resulting in severe injury or death. Seek medical attention immediately if a battery is swallowed.

⚠ Warning

To avoid personal injury, do not touch metal surfaces on the remote key when it has been exposed to extreme heat. These surfaces can be hot to the touch at temperatures above 59 °C (138 °F).

Caution

When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the remote key. Static from your body could damage the remote key.

Caution

Always replace the battery with the correct type. Replacing the battery with an incorrect type could potentially create a risk of battery explosion. Dispose of
(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

used batteries according to instructions and local laws. Do not attempt to burn, crush, or cut the used battery, and avoid exposing the battery to environments with extremely low air pressures or high temperatures.

Caution

If the remote key is not reassembled properly, liquids could enter the housing and damage the circuitry, resulting in a remote key malfunction and/or failure. To prevent damage, always follow the steps for remote key reassembly in this manual to ensure the remote key is sealed properly whenever the remote key is opened.

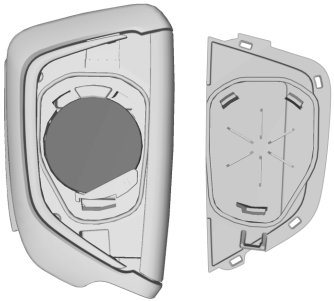
Replace the battery if the DIC displays REPLACE BATTERY IN KEY.



1. Press the button on the side of the remote key and pull the mechanical key out. Never pull the mechanical key out without pressing the button.



2. Use the mechanical key blade in the slot to remove the battery cover by hand.



3. Remove the seal by pulling on the tab to access the battery.
4. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
5. Insert the new battery, positive side toward the back cover. Replace with a CR2450 Lithium or equivalent battery.
6. Place the seal back into the groove around the battery compartment.
7. Reassemble the battery cover by snapping it back on the remote key.
8. Reinsert the mechanical key.

Remote Vehicle Start

This feature allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

$_{x2}$: This button on the remote key is for remote start.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear window defogger may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear defog indicator light does not come on during remote start.

If equipped, the heated and ventilated front seats may also come on when the vehicle personalization setting is enabled. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *40*.

If equipped with a remote start heated steering wheel, it may come on during a remote start. See *Heated Steering Wheel* ⇨ *81*.

Laws in some local communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view. Check local regulations for any requirements.

If your vehicle is low on fuel, do not use the remote start feature. The vehicle may run out of fuel.

The remote key range may be shorter while the vehicle is running.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the remote key. See *Remote Key* ⇨ 7.

You are allowed multiple starts totaling 30 minutes of engine run time. The maximum run time of a single start is 15 minutes, and it will shut off automatically. You could do three 10 minute starts, if you manually shut off after 10 minutes. The last 10 minute start would shut off automatically as your total 30 minutes will have been used.

Starting the Engine Using Remote Start

1. Press (x2) twice on the remote key. The turn signal lamps will flash. The lamps flash to confirm the request to remote start the vehicle has been received. During the remote start, the parking lamps will remain on as long as the engine is running.
2. The engine will shut off after 15 minutes or after the remainder of the 30 minute total running time is used, unless you stop the remote start before engine running has completed or the vehicle is turned on.
3. Press the brake pedal and turn the ignition on to drive the vehicle.

Additional Engine Run Time

Remote start can be used for up to 30 minutes of total engine run time.

After two remote starts of 15 minutes, or multiple shorter time starts totaling 30 minutes have been used, the vehicle must be started and then turned off before the remote start can be used again.

Canceling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Press (x2) once. The parking lamps will turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then back off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

The remote start will not operate if any of the following occur:

- The ignition is in any mode other than off.
- A remote key is in the vehicle.
- The hood is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- There is an emission control system malfunction.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- The 30 minutes of engine run time have been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

Door Locks

⚠ Warning

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. The doors can be unlocked and opened while the vehicle is moving. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear seat belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

Always take your remote key with you when exiting the vehicle to prevent being locked out. To lock or unlock the doors from outside the vehicle:

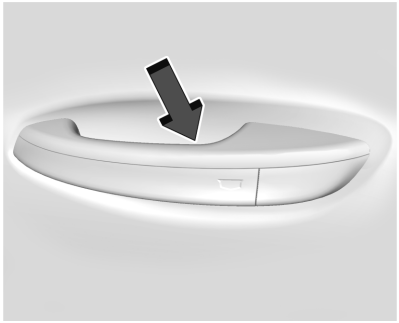
- Press or on the remote key. See *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ 7.
- Use the mechanical key in the driver door. The key lock cylinder is covered with a cap.

  See "Driver Door Key Lock Cylinder Access (In Case of Dead Battery)" later in this section.

To lock or unlock the doors from inside the vehicle:

- Press or on the power door lock switch.
- Pull the front door handle once to open the door. Pull the rear door handle once to open the door.

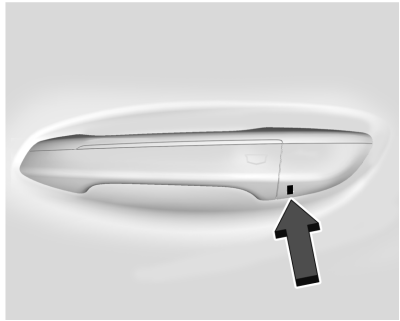
Keyless Access



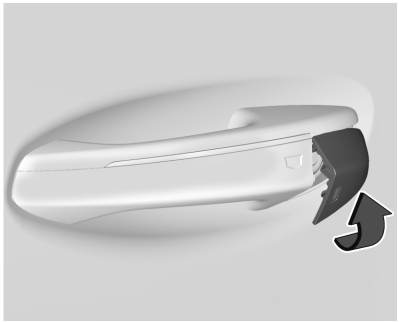
The remote key must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the trunk or door being opened or locked. To unlock and unlatch any door, press the release button on the inside grip area of the outside door handle. Touch the sensor on the front outside door handle to lock. See "Keyless Access Operation" in *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ 7.

Driver Door Key Lock Cylinder Access (In Case of Dead Battery)

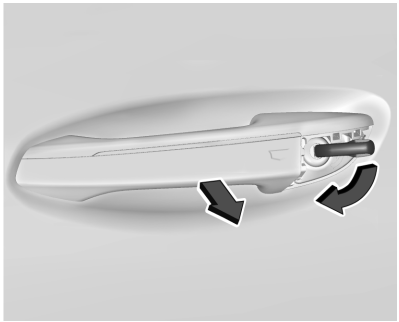
To access the driver door key lock cylinder and unlatch the door:



1. Insert the mechanical key into the slot at the bottom of the handle and push upward all the way until the cover frees. Do not pry or pull on the key.



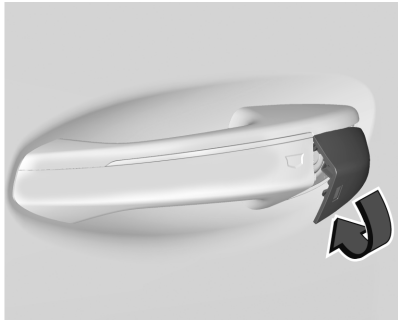
2. Remove the cover.



3. Insert the mechanical key in the cylinder.
4. Turn the mechanical key clockwise until it stops.
5. Slowly turn the mechanical key counterclockwise while pulling the handle to unlatch the door.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 if the door does not fully open.

To replace the cap:

1. Align the top edge of the cover to the handle.

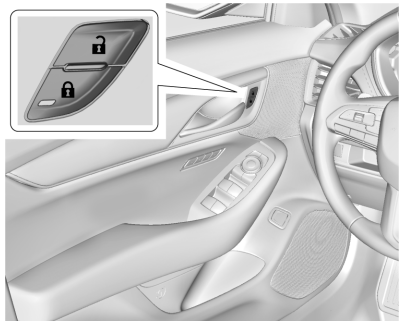


2. Turn downward to snap cover into position.
3. Check to ensure cap is fully seated.

Free-Turning Locks

The door key lock cylinder turns freely when either the wrong key is used, or the correct key is not fully inserted. The free-turning door lock feature prevents the lock cylinder from being forced open. To reset the lock cylinder, ensure the correct key is fully inserted into the lock cylinder. Rotate the key until you feel the lock cylinder click back into place. Remove the key and reinsert fully, rotate the key to unlock the vehicle.

Power Door Locks



: Press to lock the doors. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when locked.

: Press to unlock the doors.

If equipped, the fuel door is also locked or unlocked using these features.

Delayed Locking

This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until five seconds after all doors are closed.

When is pressed on the power door lock switch with the door open, a chime will sound three times indicating that delayed locking is active.

The doors will then lock automatically five seconds after all doors are closed. If a door is reopened before five seconds have elapsed, the five-second timer will reset once all the doors are closed again.

Press on the door lock switch again, or press on the key, to override this feature and lock the doors immediately.

Delayed locking can be programmed. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Power Door Locks".

Automatic Door Locks

The vehicle is programmed so that when the doors are closed, the ignition is on, and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park), the doors will lock.

If a vehicle door is unlocked, and then opened and closed, the doors will lock either when your foot is removed from the brake or the vehicle speed becomes faster than 13 km/h (8 mph).

To unlock the doors:

- Press on the power door lock switch.
- Shift the transmission into P (Park).

Automatic door locking can be programmed. To view available settings from the infotainment screen, touch Settings > Vehicle > Power Door Locks.

Lockout Protection

If the vehicle is on or in accessory mode and the power door lock switch is pressed with the driver door open, all the doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock.

If the vehicle is off and locking is requested while a door is open, when all doors are closed the vehicle will check for keys inside. If any remote key programmed to the vehicle is detected and the number of keys inside has not reduced, the driver door will unlock and the horn will chirp three times.

Lockout Protection can be manually overridden with the driver door open by pressing and holding on the power door lock switch.

Safety Locks

Manual Safety Locks



The safety lock is on the inside edge of the rear doors. To use the safety lock:

1. Move the lever forward to the lock position.
2. Close the door.

3. Repeat for the other rear door.

To open a rear door when the safety lock is on:

1. Unlock the door by activating the inside handle, by pressing the power door lock switch, or by using the remote key.
2. Open the door from the outside.

When the safety lock is enabled, adults and older children will not be able to open the rear door from the inside. Cancel the safety locks to enable the doors to open from the inside.

To cancel the safety lock:

1. Unlock the door and open it from the outside.
2. Move the lever rearward to unlock. Repeat for the other door.

Doors

Trunk

⚠ Warning

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate or trunk/hatch open, or with any objects that pass (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

through the seal between the body and the trunk/hatch or liftgate. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

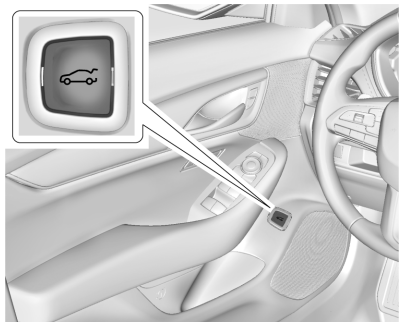
If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate or trunk/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.
- If the vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

See *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *202*.

Manual Trunk

To release the trunk, the vehicle must be off or in P (Park).



- Press on the driver door.
- Press twice quickly on the remote key.



- Press the touch pad on the rear of the trunk above the license plate when all doors are unlocked.

The trunk can be opened while the vehicle is locked by pressing the touch pad above the license plate while the remote key is within 1 m (3 ft) of the rear of the vehicle. See *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ *7*.



Close the trunk by pulling on the handle. Do not use the handle as a tie-down. Do not press the touch pad while closing the trunk; this will cause the trunk lid to be unlatched.

The trunk has an electric latch. If the vehicle has lost power or the battery is disconnected, the trunk will not open. If this happens, enter the rear compartment by folding the rear seats down, and pull the emergency release handle to open the trunk.

Hands-Free Trunk



If equipped, the trunk may be opened with a kicking or swiping motion under the rear bumper at the location of the projected logo. The remote key must be within 1 m (3 ft).

The hands-free feature can be customized. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select “Vehicle” to display the list of available options and select “Comfort and Convenience.” Choose from the following:

On-Open Only : The kicking motion is activated to open the trunk.

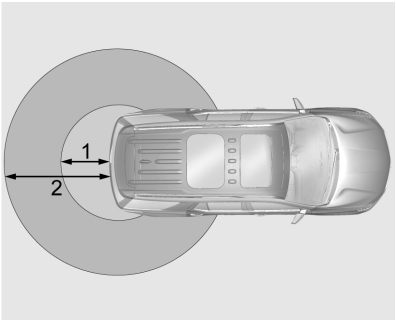
Off : The feature is disabled.

To operate, kick your foot straight up in one swift motion under the center of the rear bumper at the location of the projected logo, then pull it back. Alternatively, swipe your foot in one swift motion below the center of the rear bumper at the location of the projected logo.

- Do not keep your foot under the bumper; it will not activate.
- This feature may be temporarily disabled under some conditions. If it does not respond to the kick, open the trunk by another method or start the vehicle and the feature will be re-enabled.

Projected Logo

If equipped with this feature, a vehicle logo will be projected for one minute onto the ground near the rear bumper when a remote key is detected within approximately 2 m (6 ft). The projected logo may not be visible under brighter daytime conditions.



1. 1 m (3 ft) Hands-Free Operation Detection Zone
2. 2 m (6 ft) Projected Logo Detection Zone

The projected logo shows where the kicking motion is to take place.

The projected logo will only be available for this remote key after it has been out of range for at least 20 seconds.

If a remote key is again detected within approximately 2 m (6 ft) of the trunk, or another hands-free operation has been detected, the one-minute timer will be reset.

The projected logo will not work under these conditions:

- The vehicle battery is low.
- The transmission is not in P (Park).
- Hands Free Trunk Control is set to Off in vehicle personalization. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Comfort and Convenience."
- The vehicle remains parked for 72 hours or more, with no remote key use or Keyless Access operation. To re-enable, press any button on the remote key or open and close a vehicle door.

The projected logo will not work for a single remote key when a remote key:

- Has been left within approximately 5 m (15 ft) of the trunk for several minutes.
- Has been left inside the vehicle and all vehicle doors are closed.
- Has approached the area outside of the trunk five times within 10 minutes.

Lens Cleaning

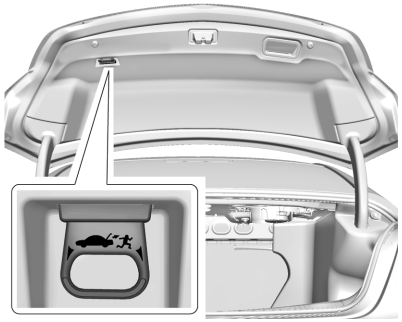


Clean the recessed lens with a cotton swab.

Hands-Free Trunk and Projected Logo Availability

Action	Hands-Free Trunk	Projected Logo
Remote key entering projected logo detection zone	Operative	On for one minute
Remote key left inside projected logo detection zone for minimum of 5 minutes	Operative	Off until remote key button press or a door is opened and closed
Remote key brought in and out of projected logo detection zone five times or more within 5 minutes	Operative	Off for one hour or until remote key button press or a door is opened and closed
Vehicle remains parked for 10 days or more	Operative	Off until remote key button press or a door is opened and closed
Vehicle battery is low	Non-operative	Off
Transmission is not in P (Park)	Non-operative	Off
Hands-free trunk is disabled in vehicle personalization	Non-operative	Off

Emergency Trunk Release Handle



Caution
Do not use the emergency trunk release handle as a tie-down or anchor point when securing items in the trunk as it could damage the handle.

There is a glow-in-the-dark emergency trunk release handle on the trunk lid. This handle will glow following exposure to light. Pull the release handle to open the trunk from the inside.

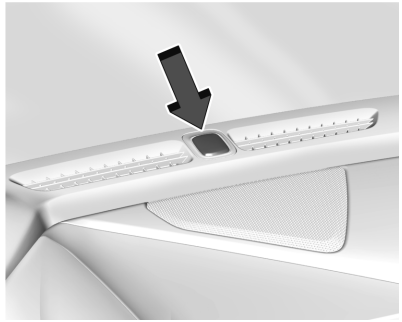


Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make the vehicle impossible to steal.

Vehicle Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.



The indicator light, on the instrument panel near the windshield, indicates the status of the system.

Off : Alarm system is disarmed.

On Solid : Vehicle is secured during the delay to arm the system.

Fast Flash : Vehicle is unsecured. A door, the hood, or the trunk is open.

Slow Flash : Alarm system is armed.

Arming the Alarm System

1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Lock the vehicle in one of three ways:
   - Use the remote key.
   - Use the Keyless Access system.

- With a door open, press on the interior of the door.

3. After 30 seconds the alarm system will arm, and the indicator light will begin to slowly flash indicating the alarm system is operating. Pressing on the remote key a second time will bypass the 30-second delay and immediately arm the alarm system.

The vehicle alarm system will not arm if the doors are locked with the mechanical key.

If the driver door is opened without first unlocking with the remote key, the horn will chirp and the lights will flash to indicate pre-alarm. If the vehicle is not started, or the door is not unlocked by pressing on the remote key during the 10-second pre-alarm, the alarm will be activated.

The alarm will also be activated if a passenger door, the trunk, or the hood is opened without first disarming the system. When the alarm is activated, the turn signals flash and the horn sounds for about 30 seconds. The alarm system will then re-arm to monitor the next unauthorized event.

Disarming the Alarm System

To disarm the alarm system or turn off the alarm if it has been activated:

- Press on the remote key.
- Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Access system.
- Start the vehicle.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- Lock the vehicle after all occupants have left the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the remote key or use the Keyless Access system.

Unlatching the driver door with the mechanical key will not disarm the system or turn off the alarm.

How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If is pressed on the remote key and the horn chirps and the lights flash three times, a previous alarm occurred while the system was armed.

If the alarm has been activated, a message will appear on the DIC.

Power Sounder, Inclination Sensor, and Intrusion Sensor

In addition to the standard theft-deterrent system features, this system may also have a power sounder, inclination sensor, and intrusion sensor.

The power sounder provides an audible alarm which is distinct from the vehicle's horn. It has its own power source, and can sound an alarm if the vehicle's battery is compromised.

The inclination sensor can set off the alarm if it senses movement of the vehicle, such as when a tire is removed. Make sure the vehicle's alarm is not armed prior to any jacking.

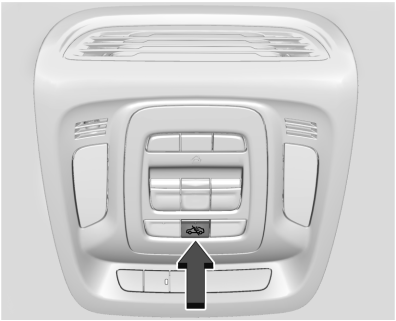
The intrusion sensor monitors the vehicle interior, and can activate the alarm if it senses unauthorized entry into the vehicle's interior. Do not allow passengers or pets to remain in the vehicle when the intrusion sensor is activated.

Before arming the theft-deterrent system and activating the intrusion sensor:

- Make sure all doors and windows are completely closed.

- Secure any loose items such as sun glasses.
- Make sure there are no obstructions blocking the sensors in the front overhead console.
- Close DVD screens before leaving the vehicle.

Inclination and Intrusion Sensor Disable Switch



It is recommended that the intrusion and inclination sensor be deactivated if pets are left in the vehicle or the vehicle is being transported. With the vehicle turned off, press in the front overhead console. The indicator light will come on momentarily, indicating that these sensors have been disabled for the next alarm system arming cycle.

Steering Column Lock

If equipped, the steering column lock is a theft-deterrent device. This feature locks the steering column when the vehicle is turned off and the driver door is opened, or when the driver door is opened and then the vehicle is turned off. The steering column unlocks when the vehicle is turned on.

The Driver Information Center (DIC) may display one of these messages:

- A message to service the steering column lock indicates that an issue has been detected with the column lock feature and the vehicle should be serviced.
- A message that the steering column is locked indicates that the engine is running, but the steering column is still locked. It is normal for the column to be locked during a remote start, but the column should unlock after the brake pedal is pressed and the vehicle is started. No message will display during a remote start.
- A message that the steering wheel must be turned and the vehicle must be started again indicates that the column lock mechanism is bound, the column locking device was unable to unlock the steering column, and the vehicle did not start. If this happens, immediately turn the steering wheel from side to side to unbind the column lock. If this does not unlock the steering column, turn the vehicle off and open the driver door to reset the system. Then turn the vehicle on and immediately turn the steering wheel side to side for about 15 seconds. In some cases, it may take significant force to unbind the column.

To keep the steering column from binding, straighten the front wheels before turning off the vehicle.

Immobilizer Operation

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilized when the vehicle is turned off.

The immobilization system is disarmed when the ignition is turned on or to accessory mode and a valid remote key is present in the vehicle.



The security light, in the instrument cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

The system has one or more remote keys matched to an immobilizer control unit in the vehicle. Only a correctly matched remote key will start the vehicle. If the remote key is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light may come on briefly.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the vehicle will not change ignition modes (accessory mode, on, off), and the remote key appears to be undamaged, try another remote key. Or, you may try placing the remote key in the backup location. See *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ 7.

If the ignition modes will not change with the other remote key or in the backup location, the vehicle needs service. If the ignition does change modes, the first remote key may be faulty. See your dealer.

It is possible for the immobilizer system to learn new or replacement remote keys. Up to eight remote keys can be programmed for the vehicle. To program additional remote keys, see "Programming Remote Keys to the Vehicle" under *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ 7.

Do not leave the remote key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

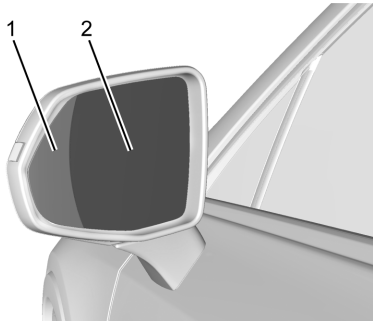
Convex Mirrors

⚠ Warning

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

into the next lane, you could hit a vehicle that is driving next to you. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

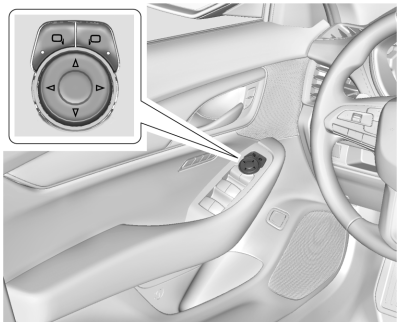


1. Wide View Side
2. Convex Side

The driver outside mirror has two sides. The outboard side provides a wider field of view when viewing lanes that are next to the vehicle. The inboard side is convex shaped, which is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped.

Power Mirrors



To adjust each mirror:

1. Press or to select the driver or passenger side mirror. The indicator light will illuminate.
2. Press the arrows on the control pad to move the mirror in the desired direction.
3. Adjust each outside mirror so that a little of the vehicle and the area behind it can be seen.
4. Press or again to deselect the mirror.

Memory Mirrors

The vehicle may have memory mirrors. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *38*.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

The vehicle may have SBZA. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *244*.

Lane Change Alert (LCA)

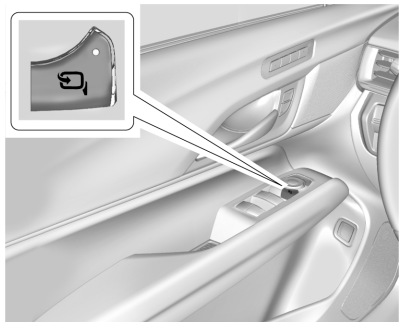
The vehicle may have LCA. See *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *244*.

Folding Mirrors

Manual Folding Mirrors

The mirrors can be folded inward toward the vehicle to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position.

Power Folding Mirrors



If equipped, press to power fold the mirrors. Press again to unfold.

The outside mirrors may automatically unfold when the vehicle is driven above 20 km/h (12 mph), but may be folded with the power folding mirror switch. If the vehicle speed is driven above 40 km/h (25 mph), they may automatically unfold and may not be refolded with the power folding mirror switch.

Resetting the Power Folding Mirrors

Reset the power folding mirrors if:

- The mirrors are accidentally obstructed while folding.

- They are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors do not stay in the unfolded position.
- The mirrors vibrate at normal driving speeds.

Fold and unfold the mirrors one time using the mirror controls to reset them to their normal position. A noise may be heard during the resetting of the power folding mirrors. This sound is normal after a manual folding operation.

Remote Mirror Folding

If equipped with power folding mirrors, and the mirrors have been folded with the power folding mirror switch, they may not be automatically unfolded by the Remote Mirror Folding feature.

If equipped with power folding mirrors, and the mirrors have not been folded with the power folding mirror switch and the vehicle is in P (Park), they may be automatically folded/unfolded as follows:

1. If doors are locked by pressing on the remote key, the mirrors will fold.
   If doors are unlocked by pressing on the remote key, the mirrors will unfold. See *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ *7*.
2. If doors are locked by pressing the door handle button, the mirrors will fold.
   If doors are unlocked by pressing the door handle button, the mirrors will unfold. See "Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door" in *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ *7*.
3. If passive locking is enabled and doors are locked by that feature, the mirrors will fold. See "Passive Locking" in *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ *7*.

Heated Mirrors

If equipped with heated mirrors:

REAR : The rear window defogger also heats the outside mirrors.

See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *173*.

Automatic Dimming Mirror

If the vehicle has the automatic dimming mirror, the driver outside mirror automatically adjusts for the glare of headlamps behind you.

Do not spray glass cleaner or chrome cleaner directly onto the mirror. Only use a soft towel dampened with water.

Reverse Tilt Mirrors

If equipped with reverse tilt mirrors and memory seats, the passenger and/or driver mirror tilts to a preselected position when the vehicle is in R (Reverse). This allows the curb to be seen when parallel parking.

The mirror(s) may move from their tilted position when:

- The vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse) or remains in R (Reverse) for about 30 seconds.
- The vehicle is turned off.
- The vehicle is driven in R (Reverse) above a set speed.

To view available settings from the infotainment screen, touch Settings > Vehicle > Comfort and Convenience.

Interior Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirrors

Adjust the rearview mirror for a clear view of the area behind the vehicle.

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Manual Rearview Mirror

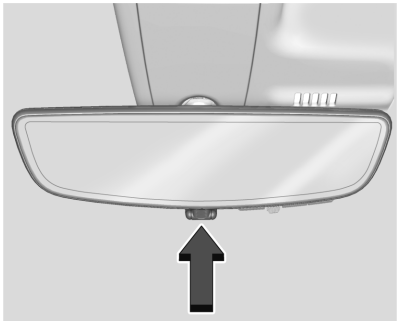
If equipped, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it rearward for nighttime use to avoid glare of the headlamps from behind.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

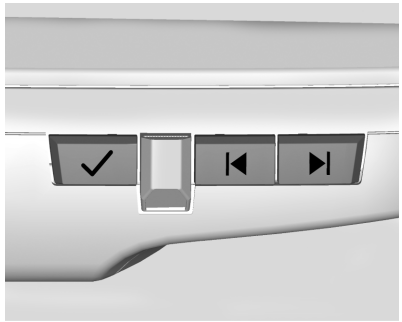
If equipped, automatic dimming reduces the glare of headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started.

Rear Camera Mirror

If equipped, this automatic dimming mirror provides a wide angle camera view of the area behind the vehicle.



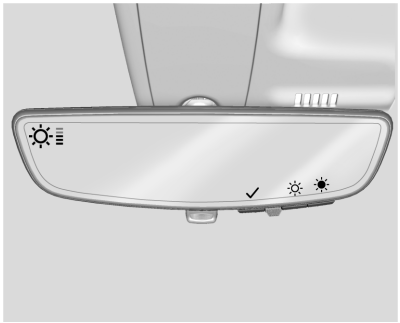
Pull the tab to turn on the display. Push the tab to turn it off. When off the mirror is automatic dimming. Adjust the mirror for a clear view of the area behind the vehicle while the display is off.



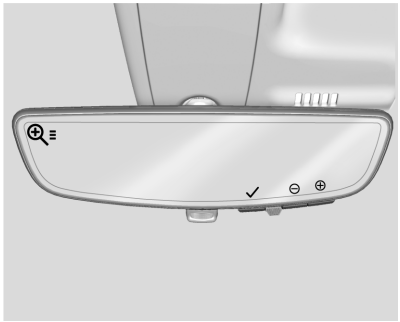
Press ✓ to scroll through the adjustment options.

Press ⏮ and ⏭ to adjust the settings using the indicators on the mirror. The indicators will remain visible for five seconds after the last button activation, and the settings will remain saved.

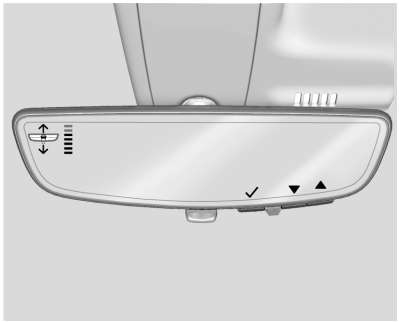
The adjustment options are:



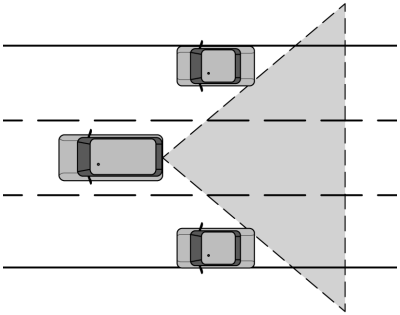
- Brightness



- Zoom



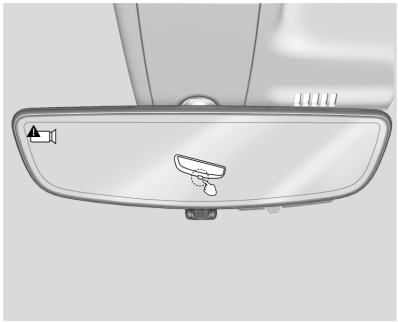
- Tilt



⚠ Warning

The Rear Camera Mirror (RCM) has a limited view. Portions of the road, vehicles, and other objects may not be seen. Do not drive or park the vehicle using only this camera. Objects may appear closer than they are. Check the outside mirrors or glance over your shoulder when making lane changes or merging. Failure to use proper care may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

Troubleshooting



See your dealer for service if a blue screen and are displayed in the mirror, and the display shuts off. Also, push the tab as indicated to return to the automatic dimming mode.

The Rear Camera Mirror may not work properly or display a clear image if:

- There is glare from the sun or headlamps. This may obstruct objects from view. If needed, push the tab to turn off the display.
- Dirt, snow, or other debris blocks the camera lens. Clean the lens with a soft damp cloth.



- The camera's mounting on the vehicle has been damaged, and/or the position or the mounting angle of the camera has changed.

Windows

⚠ Warning

Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.

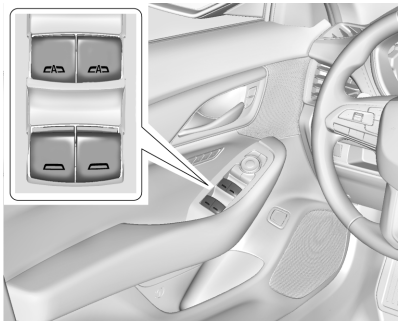


The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open either a front window or the sunroof, if equipped.

Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Never leave the remote key in a vehicle with children. When there are children in the rear seat, use the window lockout switch to prevent operation of the windows. See *Keys* ⇨ *6*.

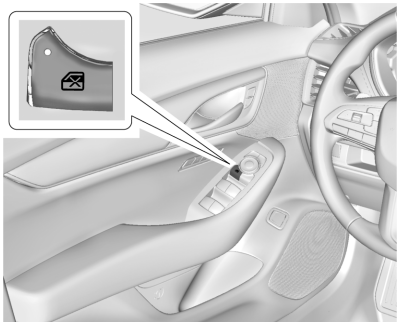


Power windows work when the ignition is on, in accessory mode, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *200*.

Using the window switch, press to open or pull to close the window.

The windows may be temporarily disabled if they are used repeatedly within a short time.

Window Lockout



With Folding Mirrors, Without Folding Mirrors Similar

This feature stops the rear passenger window switches from working.

- Press to engage the rear window lockout feature. The indicator light is on when engaged.
- Press again to disengage.

Window Express Movement

All windows can be opened without holding the window switch. Press the switch down fully and quickly release to express open the window.

If equipped, pull the window switch up fully and quickly release to express close the window. Briefly press or pull the window switch in the same direction to stop that window's express movement.

Window Automatic Reversal System

The express-close feature will reverse window movement if it comes in contact with an object. Extreme cold or ice could cause the window to auto-reverse. The window will operate normally after the object or condition is removed.

Programming the Power Windows

Programming may be necessary if the vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged. If the window is unable to express-up, program each express-close window:

1. Close all doors.
2. Turn the ignition on or to accessory mode.
3. Partially open the window to be programmed. Then close it and continue to pull the switch briefly after the window has fully closed.

4. Open the window and continue to press the switch briefly after the window has fully opened.

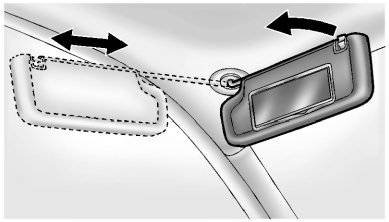
Remote Window Operation

If enabled through vehicle settings, this feature allows all side windows to be opened remotely. To open, double press and hold on the remote key.

If equipped, all windows can also be closed using the remote key. To close, double press and hold on the remote key.

To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Remote Lock, Unlock, Start".

Sun Visors



Pull the sun visor down to block glare. Detach the sun visor from the center mount to pivot to the side window and, if equipped, extend along the rod.

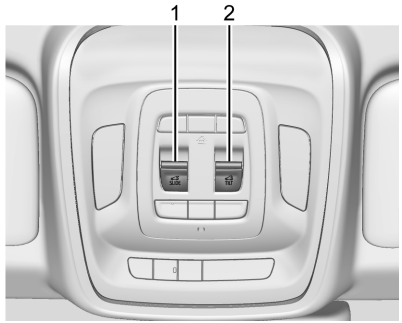
Roof

Sunroof

If equipped, the ignition must be on or in accessory mode, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active to operate the sunroof. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *197* and *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *200*.

While operating in express, movement can be stopped by pressing the switch again.

The sunroof cannot be opened or closed if the vehicle has an electrical failure.



1. SLIDE Switch
2. TILT Switch

Sunroof Operation:

- Press and release SLIDE (1) to express-open to the fully open position.
- Pull and release SLIDE (1) to express-close.
- Press or pull and hold SLIDE (1) to open or close without express. Release SLIDE (1) at the desired position.

Sunroof Vent Operation:

- Press and release TILT (2) to vent the sunroof.
- Pull and release TILT (2) to close the sunroof vent.

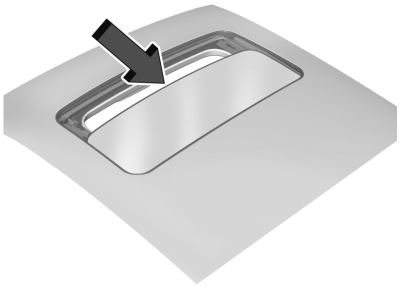
This sunroof also has a sunshade, which must be opened and closed manually.

Automatic Reversal System

The sunroof, if equipped, has an automatic reversal system that is only active when the sunroof is operated in express-close mode.

If an object is in the path while express-closing, the reversal system will detect an object, stop, and open the sunroof slightly.

If this condition occurs, attempt to remove the object, then pull and release the switch to express close. If the reversal occurs multiple times, the DIC message OPEN THEN CLOSE SUNROOF will display, and express is disabled. To operate sunroof while express is disabled, the switch must be either pressed or pulled and held.



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation or noise. It could also plug the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 33

Front Seats
Power Seat Adjustment 35
Thigh Support Adjustment 35
Reclining Seatbacks 36
Lumbar Adjustment 36
Massage 37
Memory Seats 38
Heated and Ventilated Front Seats 40

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 42

Seat Belts
Seat Belts 43
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 44
Lap-Shoulder Belt 46
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 49
Safety System Check 49
Seat Belt Care 49
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 50

Airbag System
Airbag System 50
Where Are the Airbags? 52
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 53
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 54
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 54
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 54
Passenger Sensing System 55
Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 58
Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 59
Airbag System Check 59
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 60

Child Restraints
Older Children 60
Infants and Young Children 61
Child Restraint Systems 63
Where to Put the Restraint 65
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 66
Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash 72
Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat) 72
Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Seat) 74

Head Restraints

If equipped with base seats, the vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

If equipped with high performance seats, the vehicle's front seats have head restraints in the outboard seating positions that cannot be adjusted.

⚠ Warning

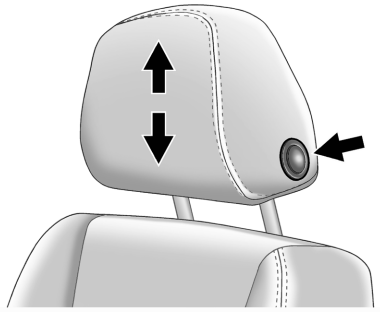
With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.



If equipped with base seats, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

Front Seats

The vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.



The height of the head restraint can be adjusted.

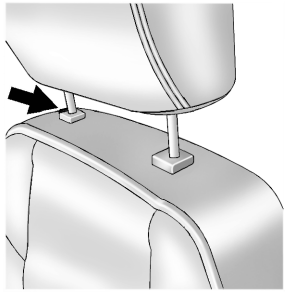
To raise or lower the head restraint, press the button located on the side of the head restraint, and pull up or push the head restraint down and release the button. Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The front seat outboard head restraints are not removable.

Rear Seats

The vehicle's rear seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

The height of the head restraint can be adjusted. Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to make sure that it is locked in place.



To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the head restraint down. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

The rear seat outboard head restraints are not intended to be removed. If removal is required see your dealer for assistance with removal.

Front Seats

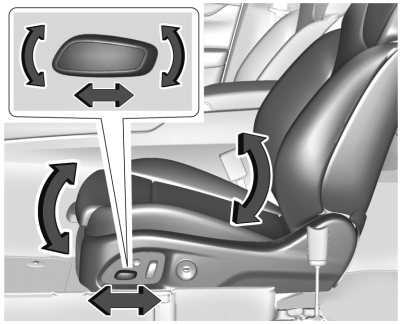
Power Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ Warning

The power seats will work with the ignition off. Children could operate the power seats and be injured. Never leave children alone in the vehicle.



To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.
- If equipped, raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.

For vehicles not equipped with front cushion tilt, the front part of the control will raise and lower the seat.

If the vehicle is not in P (Park), seat travel may be limited. Release and press the seat switch again to continue movement.

To adjust the seatback, see *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *36*.

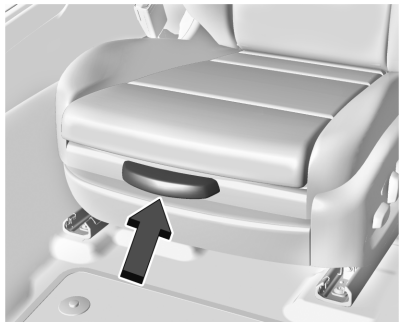
To adjust the lumbar support, see *Lumbar Adjustment* ⇨ *36*.

Some vehicles are equipped with a Safety Alert Seat. This feature activates a vibrating pulse alert in the driver seat to help the driver avoid crashes.

Obstructions

If something has blocked the seat during movement, the movement may stop. Remove the obstruction and try the adjustment again. If movement is still not available, see your dealer.

Thigh Support Adjustment



If equipped, pull up on the lever. Then pull or push on the support to lengthen or shorten. Release the lever to lock in place.

Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ Warning

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the seat belts cannot do their job.

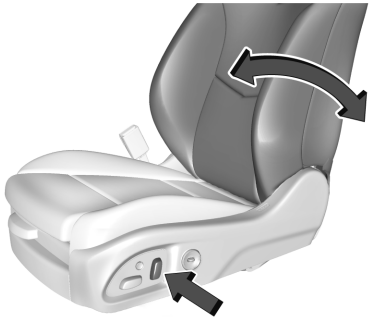
The shoulder belt will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the seat belt properly.



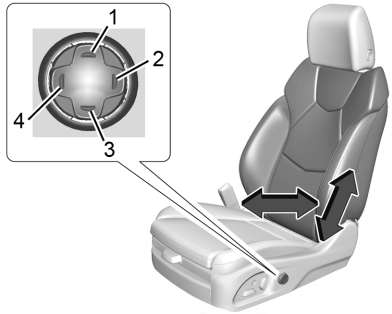
Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.



To adjust the seatback:

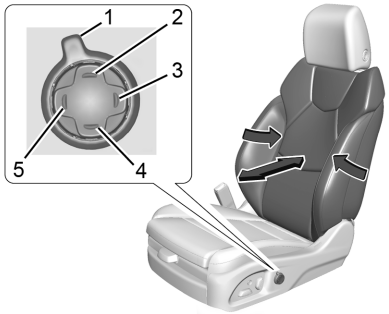
- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

Lumbar Adjustment



1. To adjust lumbar support, if equipped:
   - If equipped, press Up (1) to move lumbar support upward.
   - Press Rearward (2) to move lumbar support rearward.
   - If equipped, press Down (3) to move lumbar support down.
   - Press Forward (4) to move lumbar support forward.

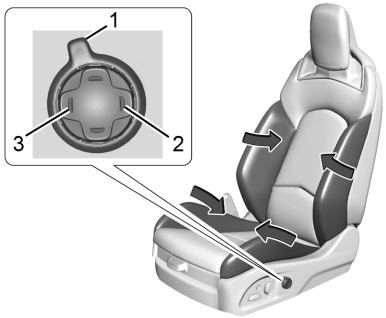
Uplevel Lumbar Adjustment



To adjust uplevel lumbar support, if equipped:

- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to lumbar support on the infotainment display.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust lumbar forward or rearward.
- Press Up (2) or Down (4) to adjust lumbar up or down.

Bolster Support Adjustment



High Performance Seat Shown, Others Similar

Back Bolster Support

To adjust back bolster support, if equipped:

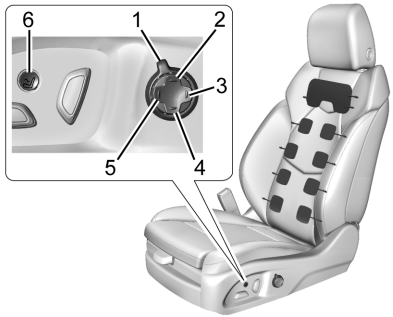
Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to bolster support on the infotainment display. Press Forward (3) or Rearward (2) to adjust back bolster support inward or outward.

Cushion Bolster Support

To adjust cushion bolster support, if equipped:

Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to bolster support on the infotainment display. Press Forward (3) or Rearward (2) to adjust cushion bolster support inward or outward.

Massage



If equipped, the vehicle must be on to use the massage feature.

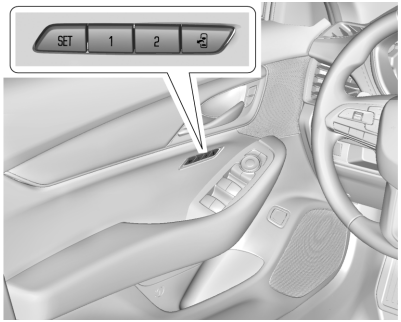
To activate and adjust massage:

- Turn the Feature Select (1) to scroll to massage on the infotainment display.

- Press Up (2) or Down (4) to adjust massage type.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust the intensity.
- To turn massage off or to activate massage at last massage type and intensity settings, press the massage On/Off Control (6).

The massage feature will turn off after approximately 20 minutes. Press the massage On/Off Control (6) to restart the massage feature.

Memory Seats



Overview

If equipped, the memory seat feature allows drivers to save their unique driving positions and a shared exit position. See "Saving Seating Positions" later in this section. The saved positions can be recalled manually by all drivers, see "Manually Recalling Seating Positions" later in this section, and drivers with remote key 1 and 2 can also recall them automatically. See "Auto Seat Entry Memory Recall" or "Auto Seat Exit Memory Recall" later in this section. To enable automatic recalls, turn on Seat Entry Memory and/or Seat Exit Memory. See "Enabling Automatic Recalls" later in this section. The memory recalls may be cancelled at any time during the recall. See "Cancel Memory Seating Recalls" later in this section.

Identifying Driver Number

The vehicle identifies the current driver by their remote key number 1–8. The current remote key number may be identified by Driver Information Center (DIC) welcome message, "You are driver x for memory recalls." This message is displayed the first few times the vehicle is turned on when a different remote key is used. For Seat Entry Memory to work properly, save positions to the 1 or 2 memory button matching the driver number of this welcome message. To aid in identifying remote key IDs, it is recommended to only carry one remote key when entering the vehicle. Perform the following if the welcome message is not displayed:

1. Move all keys and remote keys away from the vehicle.
2. Start the vehicle with another remote key. A DIC welcome message should display indicating the driver number of the other remote key. Turn the vehicle off and remove the other key or remote key from the vehicle.
3. Start the vehicle with the initial key or remote key. The DIC welcome message should display the driver number of the initial remote key.

Saving Seating Positions

Read these instructions completely before saving memory positions.

To save preferred driving positions to 1 and 2:

1. Turn the vehicle on or to accessory mode. A DIC welcome message may indicate the driver number of the current remote key. See "Identifying Driver Number" previously in this section.
2. Adjust all available memory features to the desired driving position.
3. Press and release SET; a beep will sound.
4. Immediately upon releasing SET, press and hold memory button 1 or 2 matching the current Driver's remote key number until two beeps sound. If too much time passes between releasing SET and pressing 1 or 2, the two beeps will not sound indicating memory position were not saved. Repeat Steps 3 and 4 to try again.
5. Repeat Steps 1–4 for the other remote key 1 or 2 using the other 1 or 2 memory button.

It is recommended to save the preferred driving positions to both 1 and 2 if you are the only driver.

To save the common exit seating position to that is used by all drivers for Manually Recalling Seating Positions and Auto Seat Exit Memory Recall features, repeat Steps 1–4 using , the exit button.

Manually Recalling Seating Positions

Press and hold 1, 2, or button until the recall is complete, to recall the positions previously saved to that button.

Manual Memory recall movement for 1, 2 or buttons may be initiated and will complete to the saved memory position if the vehicle is in or out of P (Park).

Enabling Automatic Recalls

- Seat Entry Memory moves the driver seat to the selected 1 or 2 position when the vehicle is started. Select Settings > Vehicle > Seating Position > Seat Entry Memory > ON or OFF. See "Auto Seat Entry Memory Recall" later in this section.
- Seat Exit Memory moves the driver seat to the preferred exit position of the button when the vehicle is turned off and the door is opened. Select Settings > Vehicle > Seating Position > Seat Exit Memory > Select ON or OFF. See "Auto Seat Exit Memory Recall" later in this section.

Auto Seat Entry Memory Recall

Seat Entry Memory will automatically begin movement to the seating positions of the 1 or 2 button corresponding to the driver's remote key number 1 or 2 detected by the vehicle when:

- The vehicle is turned ON.
- Seating positions have been previously saved to the same 1 or 2 button. See "Saving Seating Positions" previously in this section.
- Seat Entry Memory is enabled. See "Enabling Automatic Recalls" previously in this section.
- The vehicle is in P (Park).

Seat Entry Memory Recall will continue if the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) prior to reaching the saved memory position.

If the saved memory seat position does not automatically recall, verify the recall is enabled. See "Enabling Automatic Recalls" previously in this section.

If the memory seat recalls to the wrong position, the driver's remote key number 1 or 2 may not match the memory button number positions they were saved to. Try the other remote key or try saving the positions to the other 1 or 2 memory button. See "Saving Seating Positions" previously in this section.

Automatic Seat Entry Memory recalls are only available for driver's remote key numbers 1 and 2. Remote keys 3–8 will not provide Seat Entry Memory recalls.

Auto Seat Exit Memory Recall

Seat Exit Memory will begin movement to the seating position of the button when:

- The vehicle is turned off and the driver door is open or opened within a short time.
- A seating position has been previously been saved to the memory button. See "Saving Seating Positions" previously in this section.
- Seat Exit Memory is enabled. See "Enabling Automatic Recalls" previously in this section.
- The vehicle is in P (Park).

Seat Exit Memory recall will continue if the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) prior to reaching the saved memory position.

Seat Exit Memory is not linked to the driver's remote key. The seating position saved to is used for all drivers.

Cancel Memory Seating Recalls

- During any memory recall:
  Press a power seat control
  Press SET memory button
- During Manual memory recall:
  Release 1, 2, or memory button
- During Auto Seat Entry Memory Recall:
  Turn vehicle off
  Press SET, 1, 2, or memory buttons
- During Auto Seat Exit Memory Recall:
  Press SET, 1, 2, or memory buttons

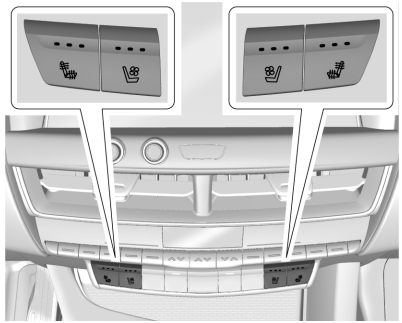
Obstructions

If something has blocked the seat while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction and try the recall again. If the memory position still does not recall, see your dealer.

Heated and Ventilated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

If temperature change or pain to the skin cannot be felt, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.



If equipped, the buttons are near the climate controls on the center stack. To operate, the engine must be running.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

Press or to ventilate the driver or passenger seat.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The indicator lights next to the buttons indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest. If the front heated seats are on high, the level may automatically be lowered after approximately 30 minutes.

When this feature is off, the heated and ventilated seat symbols on the buttons are white. A ventilated seat has a fan that pulls air through the seat. The air is not cooled. When a heated seat is turned on, the symbol turns red. When a ventilated seat is turned on, the symbol turns blue.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

Auto Heated and Ventilated Seats

If the vehicle is equipped with auto heated or ventilated seats, and the engine is running, this feature will automatically activate the heated or ventilated seats at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature.

The active high, medium, low, or off heated or ventilated seat level will be indicated by the manual heated and ventilated seat buttons on the center stack. Use the manual heated and ventilated seat buttons on the center stack to turn auto heated or ventilated seats off. If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the auto heated or ventilated seats feature will not activate that seat. If equipped with a heated steering wheel, the auto heated steering wheel activation will follow the heated seat auto activation and the heated wheel indicator will follow the state of the steering wheel heat.

To enable or disable auto heated or ventilated seats, select Settings > Vehicle > Climate and Air Quality > Auto Cooled or Auto Heated Seats > ON or OFF.

Remote Start Heated and Ventilated Seats

If equipped, the heated seats will turn on automatically during a remote start if it is cold outside and the ventilated seats will turn on automatically if it is hot outside. If equipped, the heated steering wheel will turn on automatically during a remote start if it is cold outside. The heated and ventilated seat indicators and heated steering wheel indicator may come on during this operation.

The heated and ventilated seats and heated steering wheel may cancel when the vehicle is started. These features can be manually selected after the ignition is turned on.

The temperature performance of an unoccupied seat may be reduced. This is normal.

To enable or disable remote start heated or ventilated seats, select Settings > Vehicle > Remote Lock, Unlock, and Start > Remote Start Auto Heat Seats or Remote Start Auto Cool Seats > ON or OFF. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *12*.

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Reminder

If equipped, the message REAR SEAT REMINDER LOOK IN REAR SEAT displays under certain conditions indicating there may be an item or passenger in the rear seat. Check before exiting the vehicle.

This feature will activate when a second row door is opened while the vehicle is on or up to 10 minutes before the vehicle is turned on. There will be an alert when the vehicle is turned off. The alert does not directly detect objects in the rear seat; instead, under certain conditions, it detects when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seat.

The feature is active only once each time the vehicle is turned on and off, and will require reactivation by opening and closing the second row doors. There may be an alert even when there is nothing in the rear seat; for example, if a child entered the vehicle through the rear door and left the vehicle without the vehicle being shut off.

The feature can be turned on or off. Select Settings > Vehicle > Rear Seat Reminder > ON or OFF.

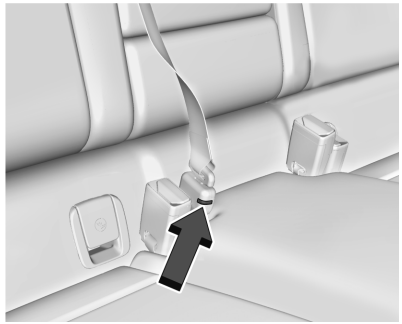
Folding the Seatback

Either side of the seatback can be folded for more cargo space. Fold a seatback only when the vehicle is not moving.

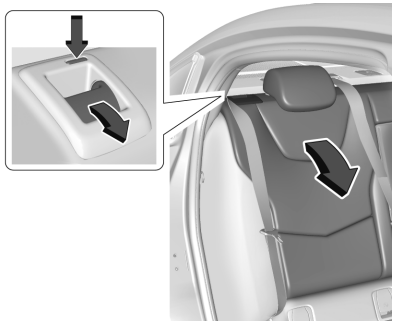
⚠ Warning

Folding a rear seat with the seat belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the seat belts. Always unbuckle the seat belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold the seatback:



1. Disconnect the rear seat belt mini-latch using a key in the slot on the mini-buckle, and let the belt retract.



2. Pull the lever on top of the seatback toward you to unlock the seatback.

   A red tab near the seatback lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.
3. Fold the seatback forward.

   Repeat Steps 2 and 3 to fold the other seatback, if desired.

Raising the Seatback

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the seat belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To raise a seatback:

1. Lift the seatback up. Make sure the center seat belt and latch do not get trapped behind the seat. Push the seatback rearward to lock it in place.

   A red tab near the seatback lever retracts when the seatback is locked in place.
2. Push and pull the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.
3. Reconnect the center seat belt mini-latch to the mini-buckle. Do not let the belt twist.
4. Pull on the center seat belt to make sure the mini-latch is secure.
5. Repeat the steps to raise the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seat is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Seat Belts

This section describes how to use seat belts properly, and some things not to do.

⚠ Warning

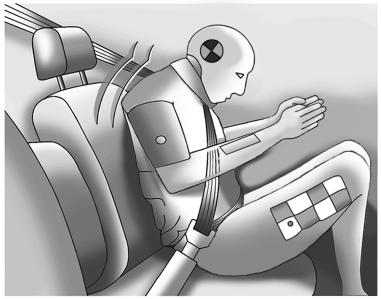
Do not let anyone ride where a seat belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing seat belts, injuries can be much worse than if you are wearing seat belts. You can be seriously injured or killed by hitting things inside the vehicle harder or by being ejected from the vehicle. In addition, anyone who is not buckled up can strike other passengers in the vehicle.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, passengers riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow passengers to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

Always wear a seat belt, and check that all passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the seat belts. See *Seat Belt Reminders ⇨ 95*.

Why Seat Belts Work



When riding in a vehicle, you travel as fast as the vehicle does. If the vehicle stops suddenly, you keep going until something stops you. It could be the windshield, the instrument panel, or the seat belts!

When you wear a seat belt, you and the vehicle slow down together. There is more time to stop because you stop over a longer distance and, when worn properly, your strongest bones take the forces from the seat belts. That is why wearing seat belts makes such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Seat Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a seat belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a seat belt or not. Your chance of being conscious during and after a crash, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear seat belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only. They work *with* seat belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection.

Also, in nearly all regions, the law requires wearing seat belts.

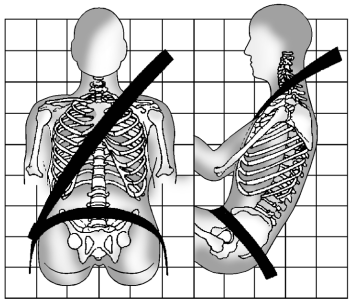
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

Follow these rules for everyone's protection.

There are additional things to know about seat belts and children, including smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children* ⇨ *60* or *Infants and Young Children* ⇨ *61*. Review and follow the rules for children in addition to the following rules.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing seat belts.

There are important things to know about wearing a seat belt properly.

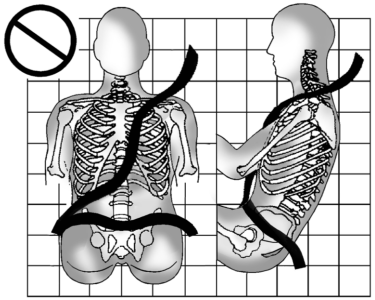


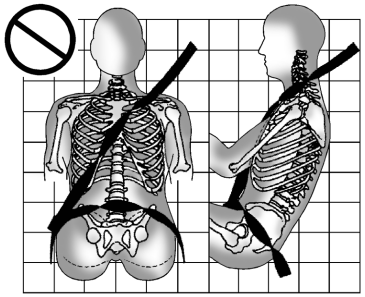
- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you (if possible).
- Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.

- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

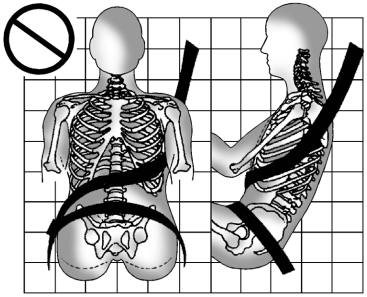
⚠ Warning

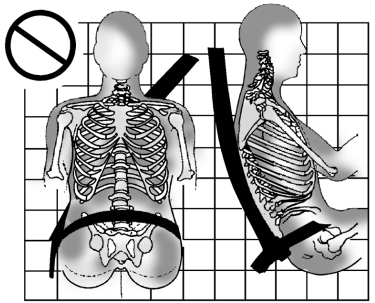
You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your seat belt properly.



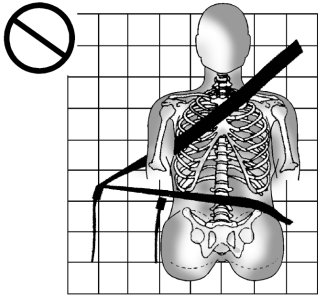


Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.

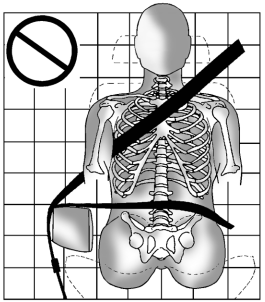




Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.



Always use the correct buckle for your seating position.



Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.

⚠ Warning

The seat belt can be pinched if it is routed under plastic trim on the seat, such as trim around the rear seatback folding handle or side airbag. In a crash, pinched seat belts might not provide adequate protection. Never allow seat belts to be routed under plastic trim pieces.

⚠ Warning

You can be seriously injured or killed if the shoulder belt is worn behind your back, under your legs, or wrapped around your neck. The shoulder belt can tighten but cannot be loosened if it is locked. The shoulder belt locks when it is pulled all the way out of the retractor. It unlocks when the shoulder belt is allowed to go all the way back into the retractor, but it cannot do this if it is wrapped around you. You may have to cut the seat belt if it is locked and tightened around you.

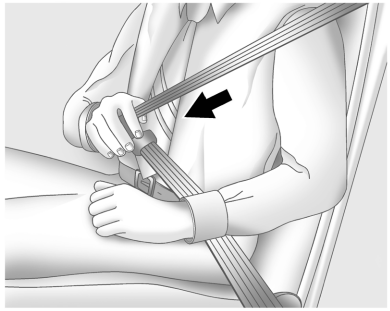
Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

If you are using a rear seating position with a detachable seat belt and the seat belt is not attached, see *Rear Seats* ⇨ *42* for instructions on reconnecting the seat belt to the mini-buckle.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.



2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

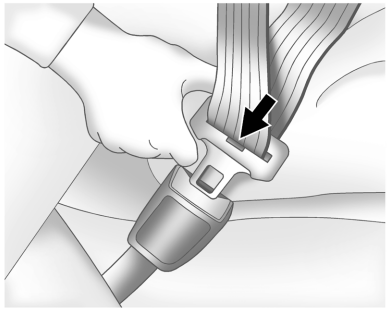
   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

   If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. See *Child Restraint Systems* ⇨ *63*. If this occurs, let the belt go back all the way and start again. If the locking feature stays engaged after letting the belt go back to stowed

position on the seat, move the seat rearward or recline the seat until the shoulder belt retractor lock releases.

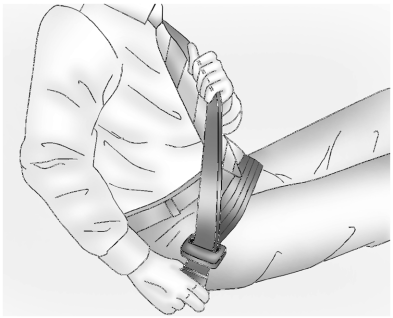
Engaging the child restraint locking feature in the front outboard seating position may affect the passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *55*.

If the shoulder portion of the driver belt is pulled out all the way, the shoulder belt retractor lock feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again. If the locking feature stays engaged after letting the belt go back to stowed position on the seat, move the seat rearward or recline the seat until the shoulder belt retractor lock releases.



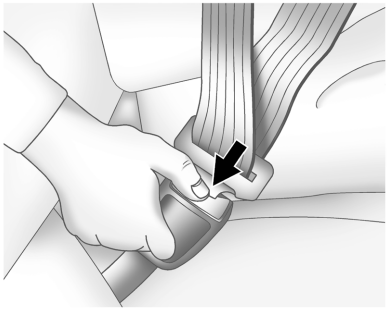
3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

   Position the release pushbutton on the buckle so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.
4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See "Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster" later in this section for instructions on use and important safety information.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   It may be necessary to pull the webbing firmly, through the adjustable stop, or move the adjustable stop along the webbing toward the outboard floor anchor, to fully tighten the lap belt across the lap.



To unlatch the belt, push the release pushbutton on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

Slide the adjustable stop along the webbing toward the guide loop when the seat belt is not in use to prevent the latch plate from rattling against the interior trim.

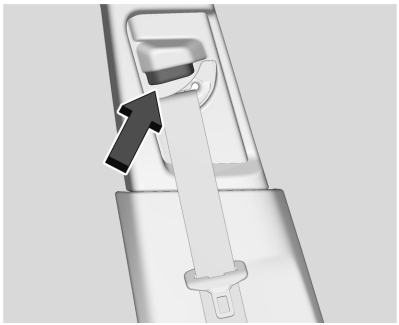
Always stow the seat belt slowly. If the seat belt webbing returns quickly to the stowed position, the retractor may lock and cannot be pulled out. If this happens, pull the seat belt straight out firmly to unlock the webbing, and then release it. If the webbing is still locked in the retractor, see your dealer.

Before a door is closed, be sure the seat belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a seat belt, damage can occur to both the seat belt and the vehicle.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and front outboard passenger seating positions.

Adjust the height so the shoulder portion of the belt is on the shoulder and not falling off of it. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in a crash. See *How to Wear Seat Belts Properly* ⇨ *44*.



Press the release button and move the height adjuster to the desired position. The adjuster can be moved up by pushing the slide/trim up. After the adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it down without pressing the release button to make sure it has locked into position.

Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System

The vehicle may have the Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System.

Each time the vehicle is started with the front seat belts buckled, the system activates once to tighten the seat belts when the forward vehicle speed exceeds the threshold for activation.

The system also activates during emergency braking and/or sudden driving maneuvers and releases when driving conditions return to normal.

The system will not activate if the Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control system is not functioning properly. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *210*. If there is a problem with the Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System, a message displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC). If a system unavailable message displays repeatedly or if a service message

displays, see your dealer. Other seat belt functions are not affected by the Automatic Seat Belt Tightening System.

Seat Belt Pretensioners

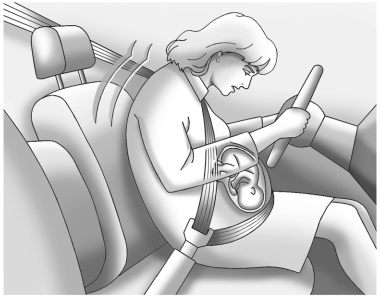
This vehicle has seat belt pretensioners for the front outboard occupants. Although the seat belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the seat belt assembly. They can help tighten the seat belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near frontal, or rear crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. Seat belt pretensioners can also help tighten the seat belts in a side crash or a rollover event.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, the pretensioners and probably other parts of the vehicle seat belt system will need to be replaced. See *Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash* ⇨ *50*.

Do not sit on the outboard seat belt while entering or exiting the vehicle or at any time while sitting in the seat. Sitting on the seat belt can damage the webbing and hardware.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear seat belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a seat belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making seat belts effective is wearing them properly.

Safety System Check

Periodically check the seat belt reminder, seat belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), and seat belt anchorages to make sure they are all in working order. Look for any other loose or damaged seat belt system parts that might keep a seat belt system from performing properly. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn, frayed, or twisted seat belts may not protect you in a crash. Torn or frayed seat belts can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, have it replaced immediately. If a belt is twisted, it may be possible to untwist by reversing the latch plate on the webbing. If the twist cannot be corrected, ask your dealer to fix it.

Make sure the seat belt reminder light is working. See *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *95*.

Keep seat belts clean and dry. See *Seat Belt Care* ⇨ *49*.

Seat Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

Seat belts should be properly cared for and maintained.

Seat belt hardware should be kept dry and free of dust or debris. As necessary, exterior hard surfaces and seat belt webbing may be lightly cleaned with mild soap and water. Ensure there is not excessive dust or debris in the mechanism. If dust or debris exists in the system please see the dealer. Parts may need to be replaced to ensure proper functionality of the system.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye seat belt webbing. It may severely weaken the webbing. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean and rinse seat belt webbing only with mild soap and lukewarm water. Allow the webbing to dry.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the seat belt system in the vehicle. A damaged seat belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

or even death in a crash. To help make sure the seat belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of seat belts may not be necessary. But the seat belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer to have the seat belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the seat belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the seat belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *96*.

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver
- A frontal airbag for the front outboard passenger
- A knee airbag for the driver.
- A knee airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the front outboard passenger
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver
- A roof-rail airbag for the front outboard passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the front outboard passenger

All vehicle airbags have the word AIRBAG on the trim or on a label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the center of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the front outboard passenger.

For knee airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the lower part of the instrument panel.

For seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the side of the seatback or side of the seat closest to the door.

For roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the ceiling or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by seat belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ Warning

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your seat belt, even with airbags. Airbags are designed to work with seat belts, not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to inflate in every crash. In some crashes seat belts are the only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ *53*.

Wearing your seat belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are "supplemental restraints" to the seat belts. Everyone in

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the vehicle should wear a seat belt properly, whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ Warning

Because airbags inflate with great force and faster than the blink of an eye, anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to any airbag, as you would be if sitting on the edge of the seat or leaning forward. Seat belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear a seat belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. The seat belts and the front outboard passenger airbags are most effective when you are sitting well back and upright in the seat with both feet on the floor.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

⚠ Warning

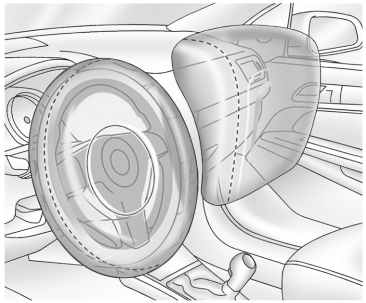
Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children* ⇨ *60* or *Infants and Young Children* ⇨ *61*.



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

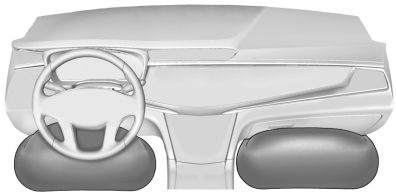
The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *96*.

Where Are the Airbags?



The driver frontal airbag is in the center of the steering wheel.

The front outboard passenger frontal airbag is in the passenger side instrument panel.



The driver knee airbag is below the steering column. The front outboard passenger knee airbag is below the glove box.



Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

The driver and front outboard passenger seat-mounted side impact airbags are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.



Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, front outboard passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.

⚠ Warning

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie-down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

This vehicle is equipped with airbags. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *50*. Airbags are designed to inflate if the impact exceeds the specific airbag system's deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. The vehicle has electronic sensors that help the airbag system determine the severity of the impact. Deployment thresholds can vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries, mainly to the driver's or front outboard passenger's head and chest.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should inflate is not based primarily on how fast the vehicle is traveling. It depends on what is hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds depending on whether the vehicle hits an object straight on or at an angle, and whether the object is fixed or moving, rigid or deformable, narrow or wide.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, the vehicle has advanced technology frontal airbags. Advanced technology frontal airbags adjust the restraint according to either crash severity or occupant interaction.

Knee airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal impacts. Knee airbags are not designed to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes depending on the location of the impact. These airbags may also inflate in some moderate to severe frontal impacts. Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not designed to inflate in rollovers or rear impacts. A seat-mounted side impact airbag is designed to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

Roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes depending on the location of the impact. In addition, these roof-rail airbags may inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Roof-rail airbags are not designed to inflate in rear impacts. Both roof-rail airbags may inflate when either side of the vehicle is struck, if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over on its side, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the vehicle damage or repair costs.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

For airbag locations, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *52*.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by seat belts by distributing the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's body.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help contain the head and chest of occupants in the outboard seating positions in the first and second rows. The rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of full or partial ejection in rollover events, although no system can prevent all such ejections.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ *53*.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to seat belts.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

After frontal, knee, and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize the airbags inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they inflate. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *52*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn on the interior lamps and hazard warning flashers, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. The feature may also activate, without airbag inflation, after an event that exceeds a predetermined

threshold. After turning the vehicle off and then on again, the fuel system will return to normal operation; the doors can be locked, the interior lamps can be turned off, and the hazard warning flashers can be turned off using the controls for those features. If any of these systems are damaged in the crash they may not operate as normal.

⚠ Warning

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the front outboard passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for the vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy* ⇨ *342* and *Event Data Recorders* ⇨ *343*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag system. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Passenger Sensing System

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator will light on the overhead console when the vehicle is started.



The symbols for on and off will be visible during the system check. When the system check is complete, either the symbol for on or off will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *96*.

The passenger sensing system turns off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag under certain conditions. No other airbag is affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front outboard passenger seat and seat belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag should be allowed to inflate or not.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in the correct child restraint for their weight and size.

Whenever possible, children aged 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag inflates.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger airbag(s), no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag(s) are off.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat, even if the airbag is off. If securing a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure child restraints in the rear seat. Consider using another vehicle to transport the child when a rear seat is not available.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag if:

- The front outboard passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A front outboard passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit as a reminder that the airbags are off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *96*.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front outboard passenger seat.

When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit as a reminder that the airbags are active.

For some children, including children in child restraints, and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in the vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a seat belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *96* for more information, including important safety information.

If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, if the system determines that an infant is present in a child restraint. If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.
3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and refer to *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)* ⇨ *72* or *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Seat)* ⇨ *74*.

   Make sure the seat belt retractor is locked by pulling the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor when installing the child restraint, even if the child restraint is equipped with a seat belt lock off. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.
5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

   Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *33*.
6. Restart the vehicle.

The passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the airbag for a child in a child restraint depending upon the child's size. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat, even if the on indicator is not lit.

If the Off Indicator Is Lit for an Adult-Sized Occupant



If a person of adult size is sitting in the front outboard passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat or that the child restraint locking feature is engaged. Use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.

3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. If the shoulder portion of the belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature will be engaged. This may unintentionally cause the passenger sensing system to turn the airbag off for some adult-sized occupants. If this happens, unbuckle the belt, let the belt go back all the way, and then buckle the belt again without pulling the belt out all the way.
6. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the on indicator is lit.

⚠ Warning

If the front outboard passenger airbag is turned off for an adult-sized occupant, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect that person in a crash, resulting in an increased risk of serious injury or even death. An adult-sized
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

occupant should not ride in the front outboard passenger seat, if the passenger airbag off indicator is lit.

Additional Factors Affecting System Operation

Seat belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Seat Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *59* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

The on indicator may be lit if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device, is put on an unoccupied seat. If this is not desired, remove the object from the seat.

⚠ Warning

Stowing articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system.

⚠ Warning

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end, or side sheet metal may keep the airbag system from working properly.

The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing, including improperly repairing or replacing, any parts of the following:

- Airbag system, including airbag modules, front or side impact sensors, sensing and diagnostic module, or airbag wiring
- Front seats, including stitching, seams or zippers
- Seat belts
- Steering wheel, instrument panel, overhead console, ceiling trim, or pillar garnish trim
- Inner door seals, including speakers

Your dealer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag modules and sensors, sensing and diagnostic module, and airbag wiring along with the proper replacement procedures.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery, or trim; or with GM covers, upholstery, or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort-enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *55*.

If the vehicle has rollover roof-rail airbags, see *Different Size Tires and Wheels* ⇨ *299* for additional important information.

If the vehicle must be modified because you have a disability and have questions about whether the modifications will affect the vehicle's airbag system, or if you have questions about whether the airbag system will be affected if the vehicle is modified for any other reason, see your dealer.

Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *96*.

Caution

If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag coverings, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *52*. See your dealer for service.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

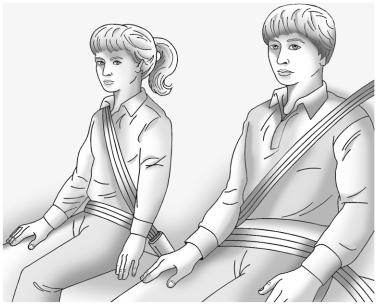
A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle. A damaged airbag system may not properly protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *96*.

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle seat belts. Refer to *How to Wear Seat Belts Properly* ⇨ *44*.

The manufacturer instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper seat belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

Q: What is the proper way to wear seat belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use seat belts properly.

⚠ Warning

Never allow more than one child to wear the same seat belt. The seat belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, they can be crushed together and seriously injured. A seat belt must be used by only one person at a time.



⚠ Warning

Never allow a child to wear the seat belt shoulder belt under both arms or behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.



Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints.

⚠ Warning

Children can be seriously injured or killed if the shoulder belt is worn behind their back, under their legs, or wrapped around their neck. The shoulder belt can tighten but cannot be loosened if it is locked. The shoulder belt locks when it is pulled all the way out of the retractor. It unlocks

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

when the shoulder belt is allowed to go all the way back into the retractor, but it cannot do this if it is wrapped around the child. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to improperly wear, or play with, the seat belts.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints. Neither the vehicle seat belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb)

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

force on a person's arms. An infant or child should be secured in an appropriate child restraint.



⚠ Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front outboard seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.



Child restraints are devices used to restrain, seat, or position children in the vehicle and are sometimes called child seats or car seats.

There are three basic types of child restraints:

- Forward-facing child restraints
- Rear-facing child restraints
- Belt-positioning booster seats

The proper child restraint for your child depends on their size, weight, and age, and also on whether the child restraint is compatible with the vehicle in which it will be used.

For each type of child restraint, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle and is designed by a genuine child restraint manufacturer.

The instruction manual that is provided with the child restraint states the weight and height limitations for that particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of child restraints available for children with special needs.

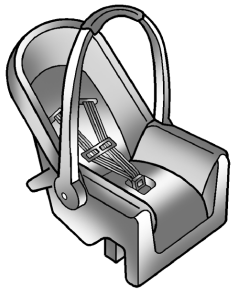
⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury in a crash, infants and toddlers should be secured in a rear-facing child restraint until age two, or until they reach the maximum height and weight limits of their child restraint.

⚠ Warning

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle seat belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in an appropriate child restraint.

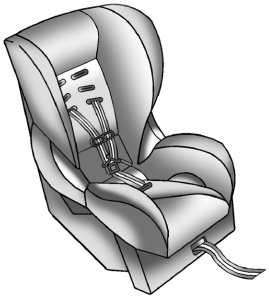
Child Restraint Systems



Rear-Facing Infant Restraint

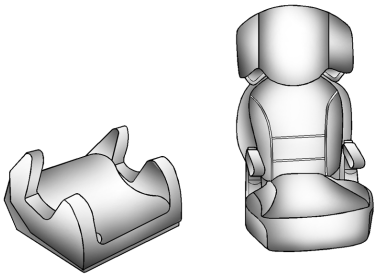
A rear-facing child restraint provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.



Forward-Facing Child Restraint

A forward-facing child restraint provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



Booster Seats

A belt-positioning booster seat is used for children who have outgrown their forward-facing child restraint. Boosters are designed to improve the fit of the vehicle seat belt system until the child is large enough for the vehicle seat belts to fit properly without a booster seat. See the seat belt fit test in *Older Children* ⇨ *60*.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle seat belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraints must be secured in vehicle seats by the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *66* for more information. Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the following:

- Instruction labels provided on the child restraint

- Instruction manual provided with the child restraint
- This vehicle owner's manual

The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

⚠ Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint secured in a rear seating position.

Whenever possible, children aged 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *55* for additional information.

When securing a child restraint with the seat belts in a rear seat position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others.

Do not install a child restraint in any rear seating position where it cannot be installed securely.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent seat belts or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the seat belt.

Adjust the seat in front of a child restraint to ensure proper installation according to the child restraint manual. Move the front seat forward to avoid contact between the child restraint and the seat or any accessories mounted to the seat.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint and secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

The LATCH system secures a child restraint during driving or in a crash. LATCH attachments on the child restraint are used to attach the child restraint to the anchors in the vehicle. This system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. LATCH-compatible rear-facing and forward-facing child seats can be properly installed using either the LATCH anchors or the vehicle's seat belts. Do not use both the seat belts and the LATCH anchorage system to secure a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint.

Booster seats use the vehicle's seat belts to secure the child and the booster seat. If the manufacturer recommends that the booster seat be secured with the LATCH system, this can be done as long as the booster seat can be positioned properly and there is no interference with the proper positioning of the lap-shoulder belt on the child.

Make sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the seat belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be installed using only the top tether.

For a forward-facing 5-pt harness child restraint where the combined weight of the child and restraint are up to 29.5 kg (65 lb), use either the lower LATCH anchorages with the top tether anchorage, or the seat belt with the top tether anchorage. Where the combined weight of the child and restraint are greater than 29.5 kg (65 lb), use the seat belt with the top tether anchorage only.

Recommended Methods for Attaching Child Restraints

Restraint Type	Combined Weight of the Child + Child Restraint	Use Only Approved Attachment Methods Shown with an X			
		LATCH – Lower Anchors Only	**Seat Belt Only**	**LATCH** – Lower Anchors and Top Tether Anchor	**Seat Belt and Top Tether Anchor**
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 29.5 kg (65 lb)	**X**	**X**		
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	Greater than 29.5 kg (65 lb)		**X**		
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 29.5 kg (65 lb)			**X**	**X**
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	Greater than 29.5 kg (65 lb)				**X**

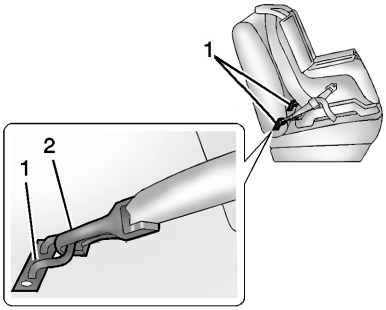
See *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)* ⇨ *72* or *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Seat)* ⇨ *74*.

Child restraints built after March 2014 are labeled with the maximum child weight, with which the LATCH system can be used for installing the child restraint.

The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in the vehicle.

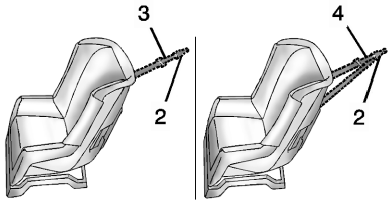
Not all vehicle seating positions have lower anchors. In this case, the seat belt must be used (with top tether where available) to secure the child restraint. See *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)* ⇨ *72* or *Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Seat)* ⇨ *74*.

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (1) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (2).

Top Tether Anchor

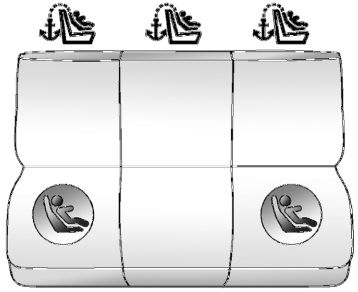


A top tether (3,4) is used to secure the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment hook (2) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in the event of a crash.

The child restraint may have a single tether (3) or a dual tether (4). Either will have a single attachment hook (2) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints with a top tether are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



Rear Seat

: Seating positions with top tether anchors.

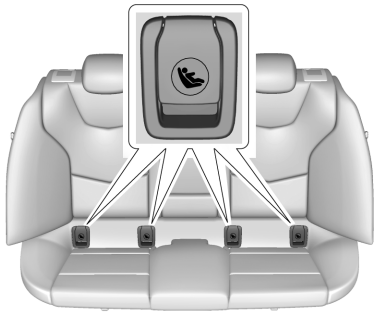
: Seating positions with two lower anchors.



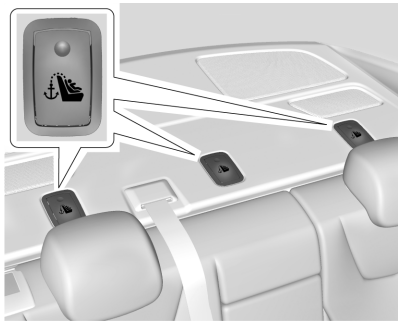
To assist in locating the lower anchors, each seating position with lower anchors has two labels, near the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.



To assist in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is on the cover.



The lower anchors are located under the labeled covers on the seat cushion near the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.



The top tether anchors are behind the rear seat, on the filler panel. Open the covers to access the anchors. Be sure to use an anchor located directly behind the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position. See *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *65* for additional information.

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ Warning

A child could be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly attached to the vehicle using either the LATCH anchors or the vehicle

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

seat belt. Follow the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured.

⚠ Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck. The shoulder belt can tighten but cannot be loosened if it is locked. The shoulder belt locks when it is pulled all the way out of the retractor. It unlocks when the shoulder belt is allowed to go all the way back into the (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

retractor, but it cannot do this if it is wrapped around a child's neck. If the shoulder belt is locked and tightened around a child's neck, the only way to loosen the belt is to cut it.

Buckle any unused seat belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, and tighten the belt behind the child restraint after the child restraint has been installed.

⚠ Warning

The power seats will work with the ignition off. Children could operate the power seats and be injured. Never leave children alone in the vehicle.

Caution

Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's seat belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled seat belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.

If you need to secure more than one child restraint in the rear seat, see *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *65*.

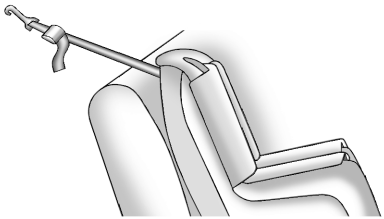
1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the seat belt. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, adjust the top tether to its full

length and attach it to the anchor. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:

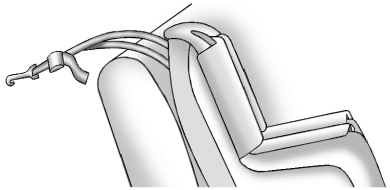
2.1. Find the top tether anchor.

2.2. Open the top tether anchor cover to expose the anchor.

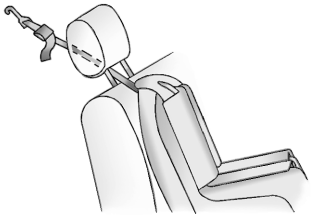
2.3. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



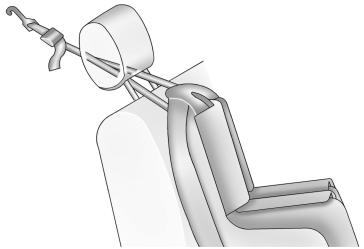
- If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the seatback.



- If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether over the seatback.



- If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint, adjust it accordingly to allow proper fitment. If you are using a single tether, route the tether in between the headrest or head restraint posts.



- If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint, adjust it accordingly to allow proper fitment. If you are using a dual tether, route the tether in between the headrest or head restraint posts.

3. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the LATCH path and attempt to move

it side to side and back and forth. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement for proper installation.

Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the LATCH system in the vehicle. A damaged LATCH system may not properly secure the child restraint, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the LATCH system is working properly after a crash, see your dealer to have the system inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, new LATCH system parts may be needed.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the LATCH system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Rear Seat)

When securing a child restraint with the seat belts in a rear seat position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *66* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a seat belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *66* for top tether anchor locations.

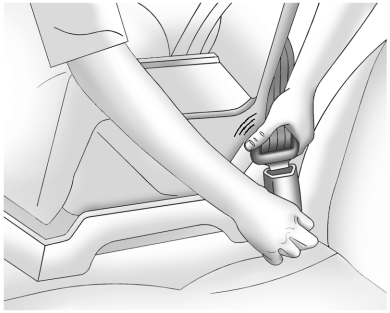
Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored. Refer to the instructions that came with the child restraint and see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *66*.

If the child restraint or vehicle seat position does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the seat belt to secure the child restraint. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint.

If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *65*.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.

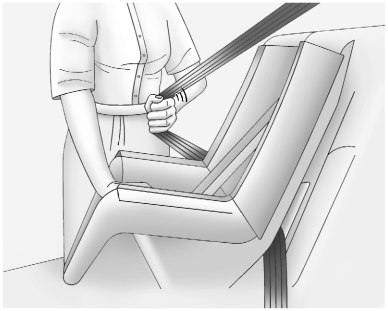
   If the head restraint interferes with the proper installation of the child restraint, see your dealer for assistance.
2. Pick up the latch plate and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle seat belt through or around the child restraint. Ensure the seat belt webbing is routed as directly as possible and is not caught on seat handles or plastic trim. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



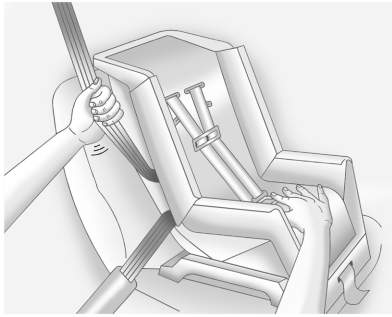
3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release pushbutton on the buckle, away from the child restraint, so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

   There must not be direct contact of the child restraint to the release pushbutton.



4. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 4 and 5.

6. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *66*.
7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the seat belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle seat belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Securing Child Restraints (With the Seat Belt in the Front Seat)

This vehicle has airbags.

A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *65*.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *55* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *96* for more information, including important safety information.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger airbag(s), no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag(s) are off.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag(s) are off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *55* for additional information.

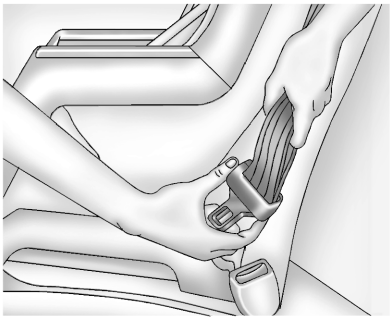
If the child restraint uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *66* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be anchored.

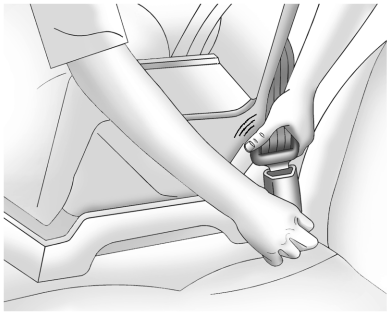
When using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position, follow the instructions that came with the child restraint and the following instructions:

1. Move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint. Move the seat upward or the seatback to an upright position, if needed, to get a tight installation of the child restraint. There must be finger clearance between the release pushbutton and the child restraint.

   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the off indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *96*.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle seat belt through or around the restraint. Ensure the seat belt webbing is routed as direct as possible and is not caught on seat handles or plastic trim. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

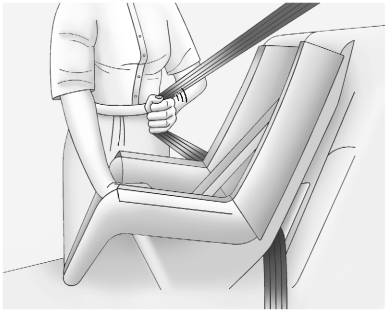


Tilt the latch plate to adjust the belt if needed.



4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

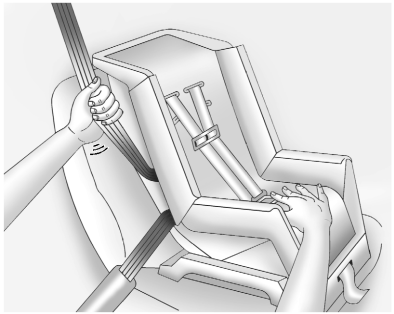
   Position the release pushbutton on the buckle, away from the child restraint, so that the seat belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



5. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.

   It may be necessary to slide the adjustable stop along the webbing toward the outboard anchor to fully tighten the seat belt around the child restraint. While a child restraint is installed, the adjustable stop should be

positioned on the portion of the webbing that does not interact with the child restraint.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor.

   There must be finger clearance between the release pushbutton and the child restraint. If there is not clearance between the buckle release pushbutton and the child restraint, move the seat upward and repeat prior installation steps. Otherwise secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

   When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions.

If the airbags are off, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, see “If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint ” under *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *55*.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle seat belt and let it return to the stowed position.

Storage

Storage Compartments
Storage Compartments 77
Glove Box 77
Cupholders 77
Center Console Storage 78
Umbrella Storage 78

Additional Storage Features
Cargo Tie-Downs 79
Safety Kit 79

Storage Compartments

⚠ Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

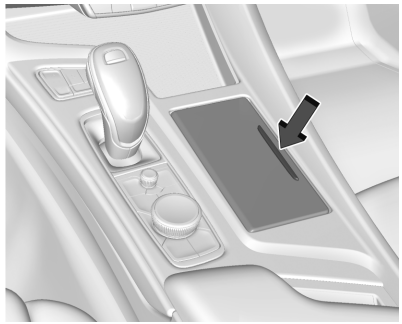
Glove Box



Pull the handle from the side to open the glove box. Close until it latches. Use the mechanical key in the remote key to lock or unlock. See *Keys* ⇨ *6*.

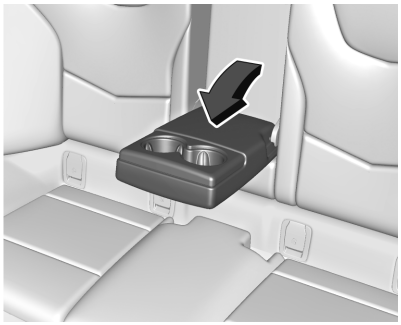
Cupholders

Cupholders in the center console have a retractable cover. Do not place items on the cover.



Press the button to open the cover.

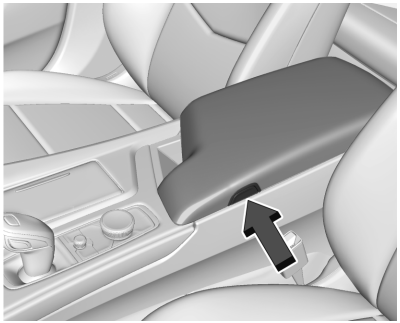
Rear Seat Cupholders



If equipped, pull down the rear seat armrest to use the cupholders.

Center Console Storage

If equipped, the SD card is used for navigation. Do not remove the card from the holder.



Press the button and lift to access the storage area. There is an accessory power outlet, two USB ports, and an SD card slot inside. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *84* or *USB Port* ⇨ *135*.

If equipped, there is a removable phone holder to store a phone and the cord while charging with a USB port. The holder has a hole for the charging cord.

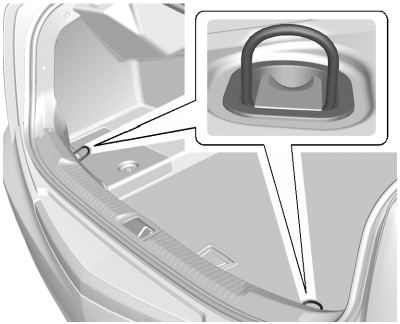
Umbrella Storage



Slide a compact umbrella no larger than 6 cm (2.36 in) in diameter into the opening on the driver or passenger door.

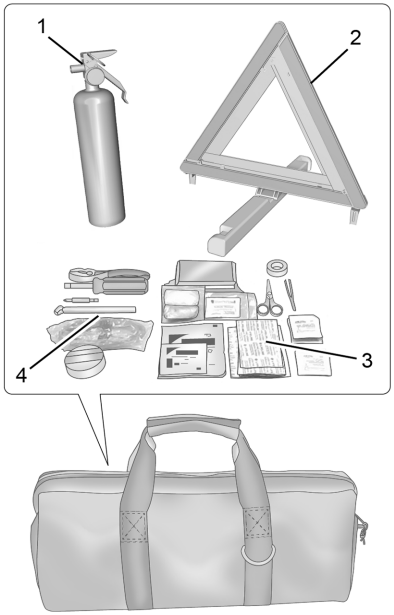
Additional Storage Features

Cargo Tie-Downs



The cargo tie-downs can be used to secure small loads inside the trunk.

Safety Kit



The safety kit is a freestanding bag in the cargo area.

The items stored in the safety kit bag include:

1. Fire Extinguisher
2. Warning Triangle
3. First Aid Kit
4. Highway Safety Kit

⚠ Warning

Perform fire extinguisher maintenance in intervals specified by its manufacturer. Periodically check:

- The internal pressure is still indicated by the green operating zone of the pressure gauge.
- The lead seal is not breached.
- The extinguisher validity is not expired.

If the fire extinguisher is put to use or if there is an issue with its operation, replace the extinguisher with a new one that meets current country regulations.

Lack of proper maintenance may lead to injury or death if the fire extinguisher does not function properly.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Instruments and Controls

Controls
Steering Wheel Adjustment 81
Heated Steering Wheel 81
Horn 82
Windshield Wiper/Washer 82
Compass 83
Clock 84
Power Outlets 84
Wireless Charging 84
Cigarette Lighter 86
Ashtrays 87

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 87
Instrument Cluster (Base Level) 87
Instrument Cluster (Uplevel) 90
Speedometer 93
Odometer 93
Trip Odometer 93
Tachometer 93
Fuel Gauge 94
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge (Base Level) 95
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge (Uplevel) 95
Seat Belt Reminders 95
Airbag Readiness Light 96
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 96
Charging System Light 97
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light) 97
Brake System Warning Light 99
Electric Parking Brake Light 99
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 99
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 100
Performance Shifting Light 100
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Light ... 100
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light 100
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) Disabled Light 101
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 101
Pedestrian Ahead Indicator 101
Traction Off Light 101
Traction Control System (TCS)/Electronic Stability Control Light 102
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 102
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 102
Driver Mode Control Light 103
Tire Pressure Light 104
Engine Oil Pressure Light 104
Low Fuel Warning Light 105
Security Light 105
High-Beam On Light 105
Lamps On Reminder 106
Cruise Control Light 106
Adaptive Cruise Control Light 106
Door Ajar Light 106

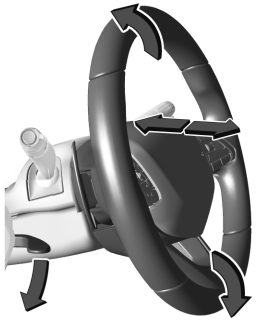
Information Displays
Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level) 106
Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel) 108
Head-Up Display (HUD) 111

Vehicle Messages
Vehicle Messages 114
Engine Power Messages 114
Vehicle Speed Messages 114

Universal Remote System
Universal Remote System Programming 115
Universal Remote System Operation ... 117

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Power Tilt and Telescoping Wheel



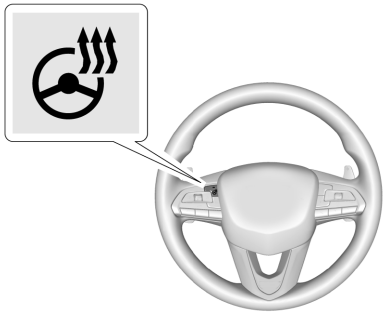
If equipped, the control is on the left side of the steering column.

- Push the control up or down to tilt the steering wheel up or down.
- Push the control forward or rearward to move the steering wheel toward the front or rear of the vehicle.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

To set the power tilt wheel memory position, see *Memory Seats* ⇨ *38*.

Heated Steering Wheel



: If equipped, press to turn the heated steering wheel on or off. An indicator light next to the button displays when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel takes about three minutes to be fully heated.

If equipped with a remote start heated steering wheel, the heated steering wheel and indicator will turn on automatically.

If equipped with auto heated seats, the heated steering wheel will turn on along with the heated seats when it is cold

outside. The heated steering wheel indicator light may not come on. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *40*.

Horn

Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

Windshield Wiper/Washer



With the ignition on or in accessory mode, move the windshield wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

HI : Use for fast wipes.

LO : Use for slow wipes.



INT : For intermittent wipes, move the lever up to INT, then turn the INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

If the windshield wipers are in use for a while when driving, the exterior lamps come on automatically if the exterior lamp control is in AUTO. See "Wiper-Activated Headlamps" later in this section.

OFF : Use to turn the wipers off.

1X : For a single wipe, briefly move the wiper lever down. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

: Pull the windshield wiper lever toward you to spray windshield washer fluid and activate the wipers. The wipers will continue until the lever is released or the maximum wash time is reached. When the windshield wiper lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windshield washer had been activated. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271* for information on filling the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ Warning

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

⚠ Warning

Before driving the vehicle, always clear snow and ice from the hood, windshield, washer nozzles, roof, and rear of the vehicle, including all lamps and windows. Reduced visibility from snow and ice buildup could lead to a crash.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades and windshield before using them. If frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *277*.

Wiper Parking

If the ignition is turned off while the wipers are on LO, HI, or INT, they will immediately stop.

If the windshield wiper lever is then moved to OFF before the driver door is opened or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windshield.

If the ignition is turned off while the wipers are performing wipes due to windshield washing, the wipers continue to run until they reach the base of the windshield.

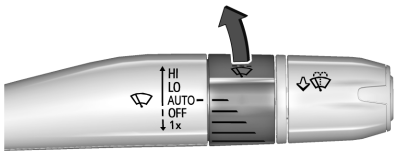
Rainsense

If equipped, there is a sensor near the top center of the windshield detects the amount of water on the windshield and controls the frequency of the windshield wiper.

To turn the Rainsense feature on or off, select Settings > Vehicle > Comfort and Convenience > Rainsense Wipers > Select ON or OFF.

Keep this area of the windshield clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

AUTO : When enabled, move the windshield wiper lever to AUTO. Turn the AUTO band on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity.



- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.
- Move the windshield wiper lever out of the AUTO position to deactivate Rainsense.

Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

If equipped with wiper arm assembly protection, when using an automatic car wash, move the windshield wiper lever to OFF. This disables the automatic Rainsense windshield wipers.

With Rainsense, if the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the wipers will automatically stop at the base of the windshield.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

Wiper-Activated Headlamps

This feature activates the headlamps and parking lamps after the windshield wipers have been in use for a while. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on the wiper speed. For this feature to work, the exterior lamp control must be in AUTO.

The wiper-activated headlamps immediately turn off when the ignition is turned to off, or the windshield wiper control is turned off.

Compass

The vehicle may have a compass display on the Driver Information Center (DIC). The compass receives its heading and other information from the Global Positioning System (GPS) antenna, StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC), and vehicle speed information.

The compass system is designed to operate for a certain number of miles or degrees of turn before needing a signal from the GPS satellites. When the compass display shows CAL, drive the vehicle for a short distance in an open area where it can receive a GPS signal. The compass system will automatically determine when a GPS signal is restored and provide a heading again.

Clock

Set the time and date using the infotainment system. See "Date/Time" under *Settings* ⇨ *164*.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle has two accessory power outlets:

- Inside the center console storage area.
- On the rear of the center floor console.

Lift the cover to access the accessory power outlet.

Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload a vehicle circuit breaker or adapter fuse. If overloaded, the circuit breaker will reset after all devices are disconnected or if Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is turned off and then back on. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *200*. Wait one minute to allow the circuit breaker to reset before reconnecting devices or turning RAP back on. If the problem continues, the issue could be within your device. Try another known good device to make sure the circuit breaker is operating properly. If this does not resolve your problem, see your dealer.

It is possible to replace the factory power outlet with a cigar lighter receptacle, if desired. This requires the factory installed circuit breaker to be replaced with a standard minifuse by the dealer. A minifuse will not reset and will have to be replace if blown.

Caution

Failure to replace the circuit breaker with the minifuse could overheat the cigar lighter and damage the vehicle.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *251*.

Caution

Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as cell phone charge cords.

Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 15 amps rating.

Wireless Charging

If equipped and enabled, the vehicle has wireless charging in the bin below the climate control system. The system operates at 145 kHz and wirelessly charges one Qi compatible smartphone. The power output of the system is capable of charging at a rate up to 3 amp (15 W), as requested by the compatible smartphone.

⚠ Warning

Wireless charging may affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

The vehicle must be on, in accessory mode, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active. The wireless charging feature may not correctly indicate charging when the vehicle is in RAP, during a Bluetooth phone

call, or when phone projection (e.g. Apple CarPlay / Android Auto) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *200*.

The operating temperature is −40 °C (−40 °F) to 85 °C (185 °F) for the charging system and 0 °C (32 °F) to 35 °C (95 °F) for the phone. A charging stopped alert may be displayed on the infotainment screen, if the wireless charger or smartphone are outside of normal operating temperature. Charging will automatically resume when a normal operating temperature is reached.

⚠ Warning

Remove all objects from the charger before charging your compatible smartphone. Objects, such as coins, keys, rings, paper clips, or cards, between the smartphone and charger may become very hot.

On the rare occasion that the charging system does not detect an object, and the object gets wedged between the smartphone and charger, remove the smartphone and allow the object to cool before removing it from the charger, to prevent burns.



To charge a compatible smartphone:

1. Confirm the smartphone is capable of wireless charging.
2. Remove all objects from the charging pad. The system may not charge if there are any objects between the smartphone and charger.
3. Place the smartphone face up against the rear of the charger.

   To maximize the charge rate, ensure the smartphone is fully seated and centered in the holder with nothing under it.

   A thick smartphone case may prevent the charger from working, or reduce the charging performance. See your dealer for additional information.
4. A green ⚡ will appear on the infotainment display, next to the phone icon. This indicates that the smartphone is detected.
5. If a smartphone is placed on the charger and ⚡ turns off or turns yellow, remove the smartphone and any objects from the pad. Turn the smartphone 180 degrees and wait a few seconds before placing/aligning it on the pad again.
6. If a smartphone is placed on the charger and ⚡ turns red, the charger and/or the smartphone is overheated. Remove the smartphone and any objects from the charger in order to cool the system.

The smartphone may become warm during charging. This is normal. In warmer temperatures, the speed of charging may be reduced.

For vehicles with wireless phone projection, the smartphone may overheat during wireless charging. The smartphone may slow down, stop charging, or shut down to protect the battery. The phone may need to be removed from its case to prevent overheating. The ⚡ may flash while the phone is cooling down enough for wireless

charging to automatically resume. This is normal. Individual phone performance may vary.

Software Acknowledgements

Certain Wireless Charging Module product from LG Electronics, Inc. ("LGE") contains the open source software detailed below. Refer to the indicated open source licenses (as are included following this notice) for the terms and conditions of their use.

OSS Notice Information

To obtain the source code that is contained in this product, please visit https://opensource.lge.com. In addition to the source code, all referred license terms, warranty disclaimers and copyright notices are available for download. LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com. This offer is valid for three (3) years from the date on which you purchased the product.

Freescale-WCT library

Copyright (c) 2012-2014 Freescale Semiconductor, Inc.. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the copyright holder nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Cigarette Lighter

There may be a cigarette lighter inside the center console storage area.

To use the cigarette lighter, push it in all the way, and let go. When it is ready, it will pop back out by itself.

Caution
Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating does not let the lighter back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating can occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating.

Ashtrays

There are front and rear ashtrays.

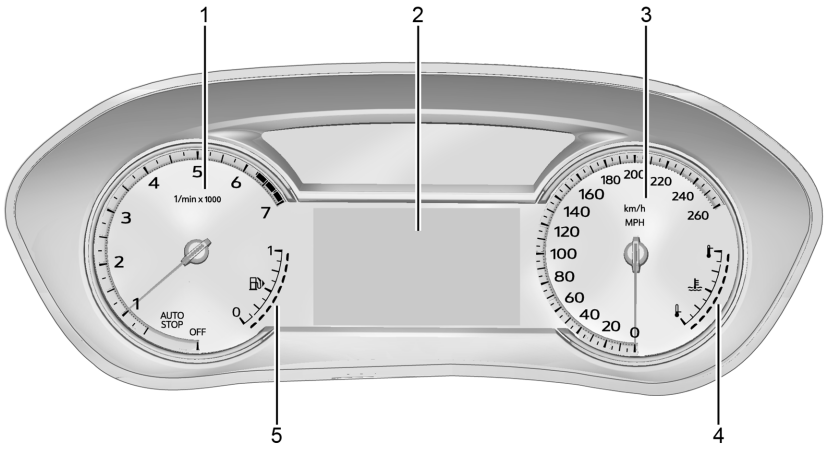
Caution
If papers, pins, or other flammable items are put in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage the vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working. When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Instrument Cluster (Base Level)

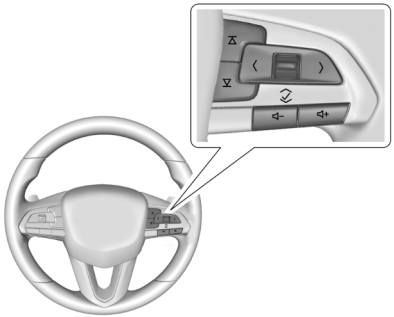


Base Level

1. *Tachometer* ⇨ *93*
2. *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*
3. *Speedometer* ⇨ *93*
4. *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge (Base Level)* ⇨ *95* or *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge (Uplevel)* ⇨ *95*
5. *Fuel Gauge* ⇨ *94*

Cluster Menu

There is an interactive display area in the center of the instrument cluster.



Use the right steering wheel control to open and scroll through the different items and displays.

Press < or > to access the cluster applications. Use the thumbwheel to scroll through the list of available applications. Not all applications will be available on all vehicles.

- Performance
- Info App. This is where the selected Driver Information Center (DIC) displays can be viewed. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.
- Audio
- Navigation
- Phone
- Options

Performance

If equipped, press the thumbwheel to enter the Performance menu. Scroll through the available items.

Friction Bubble : A four quadrant visual display, indicative of the four corners of the car, with a “bubble” showing where the most inertia is being exerted on the vehicle.

Performance Timer : Press the thumbwheel to enter the setup menu. Use the thumbwheel to scroll to select the desired speed segment, then press the thumbwheel to enter the submenu. Use the thumbwheel to confirm the speed segment selection or to reset the best time for that segment. On the next acceleration, the performance timer will record the time. Pressing the thumbwheel while the timer is running will cancel the timer if done before reaching the end of the segment.

Lap Timer (without PDR) : Press the thumbwheel when Lap Timer is displayed to start, stop, or reset the lap timer. Press the thumbwheel while the Lap Timer page is active to start the timer. If the lap timer is active, pressing the thumbwheel will stop the current lap timer and start a new lap. Pressing the thumbwheel within 10 seconds after completing the last lap (Stop Lap Timer option is displayed), the Lap Timer will stop. Press the thumbwheel after the lap timer is stopped to reset the timer, or to view the lap history. A maximum of 16 laps can be stored.

Lap Timer (with PDR) : The lap times recorded with the PDR system will automatically be displayed in this window. This only happens if a track has been selected in the PDR system and a video recording is started. See *Performance Data Recorder (PDR)* ⇨ *153*.

Oil Temperature : Shows the current oil temperature in either degrees Celsius (°C) or degrees Fahrenheit (°F).

Oil Pressure : Shows the current oil pressure in either kilopascal (kPa) or in pounds per square inch (psi).

Transmission Fluid Temperature :
If equipped, shows the temperature of the transmission fluid in either degrees Celsius (° C) or degrees Fahrenheit (°F).

eLSD : Displays the amount of rear differential coupling when the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (eLSD) is active and functioning during vehicle operation.
A reading of 1% is an open differential and 100% is locked. It is normal for the value to make small or large changes due to driving conditions and driver inputs. For the V-Series Blackwing models, the eLSD maintains some coupling even if the vehicle is stationary or not accelerating. Coupling values of 3% and up are typical. See *Limited-Slip Differential* ⇨ *219*.

Tire Temperature : If equipped, displays tire temperature status. Unknown may display if information is unavailable.

Tire temperature states:

- Cold — Drive with caution as tire performance may be degraded.
- Cool — Drive with caution as tire performance may be degraded.
- Normal — Tires are at normal driving temperature.
- Warm — Tires are ready for aggressive driving.
- Overheated — Tire temperature may be higher than optimal.

Audio

Browse for music, select from favorites, or change the audio source. Use the thumbwheel to change the station or go to the next or previous track.

Navigation

If there is no active route, press enter to access the Recents or Favorites list. If there is an active route, press the thumbwheel to cancel or resume route guidance, mute or unmute voice guidance, or access the Recents or Favorites list.

Phone

View recent calls or scroll through contacts when you are not on an active call. Mute the phone or switch to handset operation if you are on an active call.

Options

Use the thumbwheel to scroll through items in the Options menu.

Head-up Display (HUD) : If equipped, this feature allows for adjusting the angle of the HUD image and changing or turning off the Speed Limit Sign.

HUD Rotation (Uplevel): Press the thumbwheel while Adjust Rotation is highlighted to enter Adjust Mode. Scroll to adjust the angle of the HUD display. Press the thumbwheel to confirm and save the setting. This feature may only be available in P (Park).

Speed Sign: If equipped, press the thumbwheel while Speed Sign is highlighted to turn it on or off.

Units : Choose US or metric units by pressing the thumbwheel while the desired item is highlighted.

Info Page Options : Press the thumbwheel to select the items to be displayed in the Info app. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.

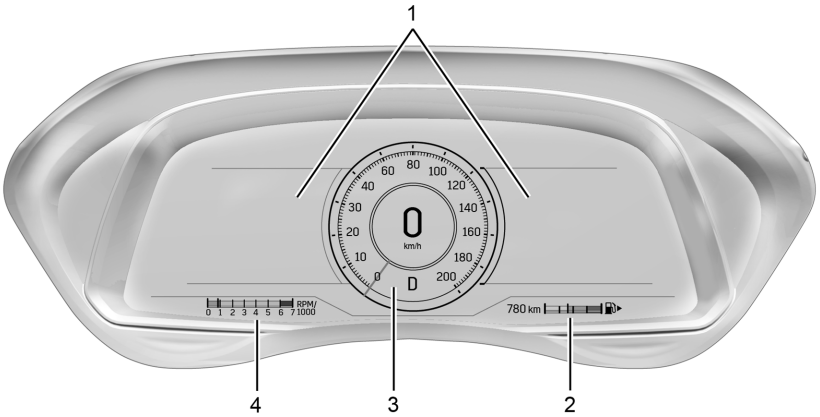
Display : Press the thumbwheel to enter the Display menu. Select to turn on or off the speedometer, temperature, time, fuel range, or, if equipped, compass or speed sign.

Speed Warning : The Speed Warning display allows the driver to set a speed that they do not want to exceed. To set the Speed Warning press the thumbwheel when Speed Warning is displayed. Use the thumbwheel to adjust the value and press to set the speed.

Once the speed is set, this feature can be turned off by pressing the thumbwheel while viewing this page. If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed with a chime.

Software Information : Displays open source software information.

Instrument Cluster (Uplevel)



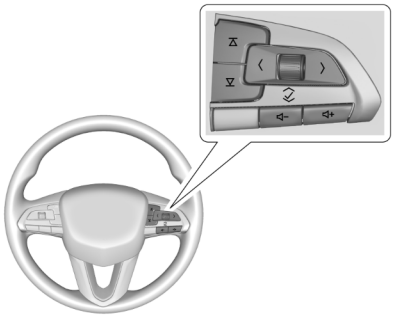
Tour Mode Shown, Other Modes Similar

1. *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*
2. *Fuel Gauge* ⇨ *94*
3. *Speedometer* ⇨ *93*
4. *Tachometer* ⇨ *93*

Cluster Menu

There is an interactive display area in the center of the instrument cluster.

Use the right steering wheel control to open and scroll through the different items and displays.



Press < or > to access the cluster applications. Use the thumbwheel to scroll ∧ or ∨ through the list of available features. Press the thumbwheel to select. Not all applications will be available on all vehicles.

- Info Tiles Selection/Trip Computer/ Maintenance/Driver Assistance: The selected Driver Information Center (DIC) displays can be viewed. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.
- Performance
- Audio
- Navigation
- Phone
- Options
- Simplify

Performance

If equipped, press the thumbwheel to enter the Performance menu. Scroll through the available items.

Performance Timer : Press the thumbwheel to enter the setup menu. Use the thumbwheel to scroll to select the desired speed segment, then press the thumbwheel to enter the submenu. Use the thumbwheel to confirm the speed segment selection or to reset the best time for that segment. On the next acceleration, the performance timer will record the time. Pressing the thumbwheel while the timer is running will cancel the timer if done before reaching the end of the segment.

Lap Timer (without PDR) : Press the thumbwheel when Lap Timer is displayed to start, stop, or reset the lap timer. Press the thumbwheel while the Lap Timer page is active to start the timer. If the lap timer is active, pressing the thumbwheel will stop the current lap timer and start a new lap. Pressing the thumbwheel within 10 seconds after completing the last lap (Stop Lap Timer option is displayed), the Lap Timer will stop. Press the thumbwheel after the lap timer is stopped to reset the timer, or to view the lap history. A maximum of 16 laps can be stored.

Lap Timer (with PDR) : The lap times recorded with the PDR system will automatically be displayed in this window. This only happens if a track has been selected in the PDR system and a video recording is started. See *Performance Data Recorder (PDR)* ⇨ *153*.

Friction Bubble : A four quadrant visual display, indicative of the four corners of the car, with a “bubble” showing where the most inertia is being exerted on the vehicle.

Launch Control : If equipped, the Launch Control display allows the driver to adjust the parameters of the Launch Control System. See *Track Events and Competitive Driving (V-Series and V-Series Blackwing)* ⇨ *183*.

Audio

Browse for music, select from favorites, or change the audio source. Use the thumbwheel to change the station or go to the next or previous track

Navigation

If there is an active route, press the thumbwheel to cancel or resume route guidance, or turn the voice prompts on or off.

Phone

View recent calls or scroll through contacts when you are not on an active call. Mute the phone or switch to handset operation if you are on an active call.

Options

Use the thumbwheel to scroll through items in the Options menu.

Display Themes

Press the thumbwheel to enter the Display menu. There are four instrument cluster display configurations to choose from. Sport, Tour, Stealth, and Track (if equipped). The style of the cluster will change depending on the theme selected.

Default is linked to Driver Mode. Other display themes can be set.

If in My Mode then those displays plus HUD (if equipped) can be set. My Mode is only selectable when in Link to Driver mode.

Stealth Mode is enabled when the Instrument Panel Illumination Control is set to the minimum level. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *122*.

- Sport: Displays Coolant Temperature, Fuel Gauge, Fuel Range, Compass, Driver Mode Control Light, Odometer, Speed, Tachometer, Electronic Transmission Range, Current Gear, Speed Limit, Info Area, and Interaction Area, and Cruise Control (if engaged).
- Tour: Displays Fuel Gauge, Fuel Range, Compass, Driver Mode Control Light, Odometer, Speed, Tachometer, Electronic Transmission Range, Current Gear, Peak Performance, Speed Limit, Info Area, and Interaction Area, and Cruise Control (if engaged).
- Stealth: Displays Fuel Gauge, Digital Speed, and Tachometer.
- Track: If equipped, displays Coolant Temperature, Fuel Gauge, Driver Mode Control Light, Speed, Tachometer, Electronic Transmission Range, Current Gear, Info Area, and Interactive Area.

Preset info tiles shown on each layout:

Sport : Time and Temperature, Oil Temperature, Tire Status, Oil Pressure

Track : Oil Pressure, Transmission Fluid Temperature, Tire Status, Oil Temperature

Tour : Time and Temperature

Stealth : None

Speed Warning

The Speed Warning display allows the driver to set a speed that they do not want to exceed. To set the Speed Warning, press the thumbwheel when Speed Warning is displayed, or press the thumbwheel on the main view to set the speed value. Scroll to adjust the value. Press the thumbwheel to set the speed. Once the speed is set, this feature can be turned off by pressing the thumbwheel while viewing this page. If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed with a chime.

Speed Sign

Shows sign information, which comes from a roadway database in the onboard navigation, if equipped.

Units

Press the thumbwheel while Units is displayed to enter the Units menu. Choose US or metric units by pressing the

thumbwheel while the desired item is highlighted. A selected mark will be displayed next to the selected item.

Tachometer

If equipped, the Tachometer allows the driver to choose between the traditional tachometer (linear gauge) or the numerical tachometer (shift lights with numerical Tachometer RPM) when Track theme is selected.

Tire Pressure

If the tire pressure readings need to be recalibrated at any time, this option initiates the Tire Pressure Relearn function. The selection of relearn opens a pop-up when the thumbwheel is pressed for five seconds.

Head-Up Display (HUD) Rotation

Press the thumbwheel while Adjust Rotation is highlighted to enter Adjust Mode. Scroll to adjust the angle of the HUD display. Press the thumbwheel to confirm and save the setting. See *Head-Up Display (HUD)* ⇨ *111*.

Traction & Stability

If equipped, displays the status of the Traction (TSC) and Stability (ESC) control systems. To turn the Traction Control System (TCS) on or off, choose Traction. If equipped, to turn StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) on or off, choose Stability. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *210*.

Software Licenses

Press the thumbwheel while Software Licenses is highlighted to display open source software information.

Reset To Defaults

Allows the driver to reset to default settings.

Simplify

Press the thumbwheel to enter the Simplify menu. Simplify Mode allows certain features of the instrument cluster to be hidden. These features include info tiles and interactive areas.

Using the thumbwheel < or >, except to acknowledge an alert, will exit Simplify Mode.

The selected features will stay hidden even after starting and restarting the vehicle, unless Simplify Mode is manually canceled.

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle speed in kilometers per hour (km/h).

This vehicle is equipped with an overspeed warning device. When the vehicle's speed reaches 120 km/h, a chime will sound. A message also displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either kilometers or miles.

Trip Odometer

The trip odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

For vehicles with the Stop/Start system, when the ignition is on, the tachometer indicates the vehicle status. When pointing to AUTO STOP (Base Level) or the cluster displays AUTO STOP text (Uplevel), the engine is off but the vehicle is on and can move. The engine could auto start at any time. When the indicator points to OFF, the vehicle is off.

The tachometer may vary by several hundred rpm, during Auto Stop mode, when the engine is shutting off and restarting.

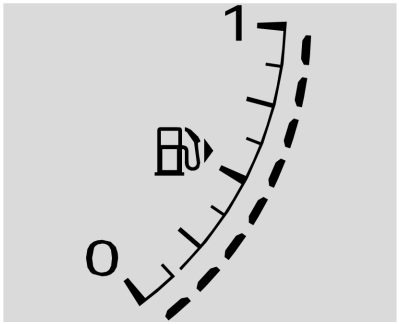
Uplevel

The redline of the tachometer adjusts dynamically based on engine temperature. The redline displays a lower indication when the vehicles odometer value is less than 805 kilometers (500 miles).

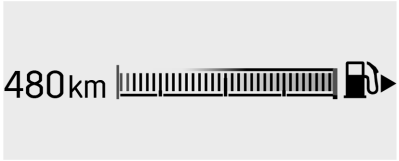
If equipped, the shift indicators are displayed on instrument cluster and Head-Up Display (HUD). The shift indicators are only operational when the automatic transmission is in Manual mode. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *206*. When the vehicle engine is less than 70°C (158°F) and the vehicle odometer value is less than 805 kilometers (500 miles) the shift indications are not displayed.

A strong visual indicator is displayed as the vehicle approaches the red line. Tour and Sport themes feature shift rings while the Track theme features shift lights accompanied by a numerical tachometer display.

Fuel Gauge



Base Level



Uplevel

When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel left in the tank.

There is an arrow near the fuel gauge pointing to the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

When the indicator nears empty, the low fuel light comes on. There still is a little fuel left, but the vehicle should be refueled soon.

The fuel gauge may:

- Take a little more, or less fuel to fill up than it indicates. For example, the gauge may have indicated the tank is half full, but it actually takes a little more, or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- Move a little while turning a corner, speeding up, or braking.
- Take a few seconds to stabilize after the ignition is turned on and goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

These are normal conditions, none of which indicate a problem with the fuel gauge.

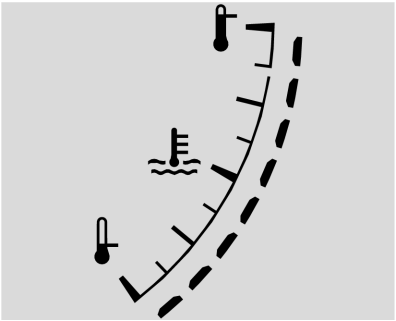
Fuel Range

The uplevel instrument cluster has a estimated fuel range located at the bottom center of the display. The fuel range is

displayed with the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refueling. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

When the estimated fuel range is low, the range shows LOW and a message may also display in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

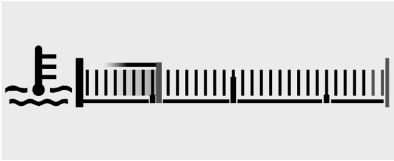
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge (Base Level)



This gauge measures the temperature of the vehicle's engine.

While driving under normal operating conditions, if the red LED is illuminated, the engine is too hot. Pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge (Uplevel)



Sport Mode Shown, Track Mode Similar

This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature.

If the gauge pointer moves into the red zone, the engine is too hot.

This reading indicates the same thing as the warning light. It means that the engine coolant has overheated. If the vehicle has been operating under normal driving conditions, pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *270* for more information.

Seat Belt Reminders

Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver seat belt reminder light on the instrument cluster.



When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the driver to fasten their seat belt.

Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver seat belt is buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

Front Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light

The vehicle may have a front passenger seat belt reminder light near the passenger airbag status indicator. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *55*.



When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind passengers to fasten their seat belt.

Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle continues several times if the front passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the front passenger seat belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt reminder light and chime may come on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the reminder light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. It is located in the instrument cluster. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), the passenger sensing system, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System* ⇨ *50*.



The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message may also come on.

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *55* for important safety information. The passenger airbag status indicator is in the overhead console.



When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light the symbols for on and off for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag.

If the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag are allowed to inflate.

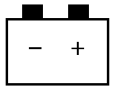
If the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, if there are no lights at all, or if the airbag readiness light is on, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service right away.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *96* for more information, including important safety information.

Charging System Light



The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. It should go out when the engine is started.

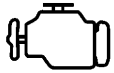
If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

When this light comes on, or is flashing, the Driver Information Center (DIC) also displays a message.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner. Find a safe place to stop the vehicle.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)

This light is part of the vehicle's emission control on-board diagnostic system. If this light is on while the engine is running, a malfunction has been detected and the vehicle may require service. The light should come on to show that it is working when the ignition is in Service Mode. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *197*.



Malfunctions are often indicated by the system before any problem is noticeable. Being aware of the light and seeking service promptly when it comes on may prevent damage.

Caution

If the vehicle is driven continually with this light on, the emission control system may not work as well, the fuel economy may be lower, and the vehicle may not

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

run smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

Modifications to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system, or the use of replacement tires that do not meet the original tire specifications, can cause this light to come on. This could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also affect the vehicle's ability to pass an Emissions Inspection/Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *253*.

If the light is flashing : A malfunction has been detected that could damage the emission control system and increase vehicle emissions. Diagnosis and service may be required.

To help prevent damage, reduce vehicle speed and avoid hard accelerations and uphill grades. If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as possible.

If the light continues to flash, find a safe place to park. Turn the vehicle off and wait at least 10 seconds before restarting the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous guidelines and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

If the light is on steady : A malfunction has been detected. Diagnosis and service may be required.

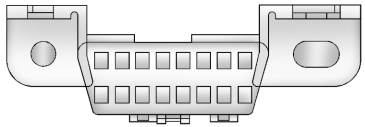
Check the following:

- If fuel has been added to the vehicle using the capless fuel funnel adapter, make sure that it has been removed. See "Filling the Tank with a Portable Gas Can" under *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *249*. The diagnostic system can detect if the adapter has been left installed in the vehicle, allowing fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the adapter removed may turn off the light.
- Poor fuel quality can cause inefficient engine operation and poor driveability, which may go away once the engine is warmed up. If this occurs, change the fuel brand. It may require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off. See *Recommended Fuel (LSY 2.0L L4 Engine)* ⇨ *248* or *Recommended Fuel (LGY 3.0L V6 and LT4 6.2L V8 Engines)* ⇨ *248*.

If the light remains on, see your dealer.

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

If the vehicle requires an Emissions Inspection/Maintenance test, the test equipment will likely connect to the vehicle's Data Link Connector (DLC).



The DLC is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. Connecting devices that are not used to perform an Emissions Inspection/Maintenance test or to service the vehicle may affect vehicle operation. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *251*. See your dealer if assistance is needed.

The vehicle may not pass inspection if:

- The light is on when the engine is running.

- The light does not come on when the ignition is in Service Mode.
- Critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed. If this happens, the vehicle would not be ready for inspection and might require several days of routine driving before the system is ready for inspection. This can happen if the 12-volt battery has recently been replaced or run down, or if the vehicle has been recently serviced.

See your dealer if the vehicle will not pass or cannot be made ready for the test.

Brake System Warning Light



This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on to show that the light is working. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light comes on and stays on, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away. This light may come on if the brake fluid is low. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *274*.

If the light comes on while driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. The brake system has electric brake boost. Vehicle speed may be limited when the brake system warning light comes on. The brake pedal might be harder to push, or the brake pedal may go closer to the floor. It could take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Transporting a Disabled Vehicle* ⇨ *309*.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Electric Parking Brake Light



This light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system. A message may also display in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

Service Electric Parking Brake Light



This light may come on briefly when the vehicle is turned on. If it does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light stays on or comes on while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). Take the vehicle to a dealer as soon as possible. In addition to the parking brake, other safety functions that utilize the EPB may also be degraded.
A message may also display in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *208*.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on to show that the light is working. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the ABS warning light stays on, or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. A chime may also sound when the light stays on.

If the ABS warning light is the only light on, the vehicle has regular brakes, but ABS is not functioning.

If both the ABS warning light and the brake system warning light are on, ABS is not functioning and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See your dealer for service.

See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *99*.

Performance Shifting Light



If equipped, this light may display green when Sport Mode is activated and certain driving conditions are met. Sport Mode detects when the vehicle is being driven in a competitive manner, and adjusts the shifting of the gears accordingly. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *212*.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Light

This light comes on when AVH is actively holding the vehicle. See *Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)* ⇨ *210*.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light



If equipped, the Lane Keep Assist Light may display the following colors:

- Blank: LKA is disabled.
- White: Appears when the vehicle starts. A steady white light indicates that LKA is not ready to assist.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

- Green: Appears when LKA is turned on and ready to assist. LKA will gently turn the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking.
- Amber: Appears when LKA is active. The light flashes amber as a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert to indicate that the lane marking has been unintentionally crossed. If the system detects you are steering intentionally (to pass or change lanes), the LDW alert may not display.

LKA will not assist or alert if the turn signal is active in the direction of lane departure, or if LKA detects that you are accelerating, braking, or actively steering. See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *246*.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) Disabled Light



This indicator displays when you turn off Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) or Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB).

This indicator will also display if AEB or FPB is unavailable due to malfunction, weather conditions, or if the windshield is not clean.

See *Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)* ⇨ *241*.

See *Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System* ⇨ *242*.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator



If equipped, this indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected ahead and amber when you are following a vehicle ahead much too closely.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *239*.

Pedestrian Ahead Indicator



If equipped, this indicator will display amber when a nearby pedestrian is detected in front of the vehicle.

See *Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System* ⇨ *242*.

Traction Off Light



This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on to show that the light is working. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

The traction off light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off. If StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is turned off, TCS is also turned off. To turn TCS and ESC off and on, see *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *210*.

If TCS is off, wheel slip during acceleration is not limited unless necessary to help protect the driveline from damage. Adjust driving accordingly.

Traction Control System (TCS)/ Electronic Stability Control Light



This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on to show that the light is working. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light is on and not flashing, the TCS and potentially the StabiliTrak/ESC system are not fully operational and may not assist in maintaining control. Adjust driving accordingly. If the condition persists, see your dealer as soon as possible. A Driver Information Center (DIC) message may display.

The light flashes when the TCS and/or the StabiliTrak/ESC system is actively working.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *210*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light



This light comes on briefly when the vehicle is turned on to show that the light is working. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

This light comes on when the StabiliTrak/ Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is turned off. If StabiliTrak/ESC is off, the Traction Control System (TCS) is also off. To turn ESC off and on, see *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *210*.

If ESC and TCS are off, the systems do not assist in controlling the vehicle. Adjust driving accordingly.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light



On some vehicles this light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by the dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light goes off. For vehicles with the reconfigurable cluster, this light may not come on when starting the vehicle.

Caution
The engine coolant temperature warning light indicates that the vehicle has overheated. Driving with this light on can (Continued)

Caution (Continued)

damage the engine and it may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *270*.

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on when the engine has overheated.

If this happens pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *270*.

Driver Mode Control Light



This light comes on when Sport Mode is selected.



This light comes on when Track Mode is selected. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *212*.



This light comes on when Snow/Ice Mode is selected.



This light comes on when V Mode is selected. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *212*.



This light comes on when My Mode is selected. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *212*.

Performance Traction Management Light

If equipped, when Performance Traction Management (PTM) is activated, one of the following lights display to show the current PTM mode. See *Competitive Driving Mode* ⇨ *217*.



This light comes on when Wet Mode is selected.



This light comes on when Dry Mode is selected.



This light comes on when Sport Mode is selected.



This light comes on when Race 1 Mode is selected.



This light comes on when Race 2 Mode is selected.

Tire Pressure Light



If equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the vehicle is started. It provides information about tire pressures and the TPMS.

When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires are significantly underinflated.

A Driver Information Center (DIC) tire pressure message may also display. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *290*.

When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on every time the vehicle is started. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *293*.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

Caution

Driving the vehicle with low engine oil pressure can damage the engine and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

If the engine oil pressure light comes on while driving:

1. Stop in a safe location and turn off the engine.
2. Check the oil level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
3. Add oil if the oil level is below the normal operating range.
4. Restart the vehicle. If the engine oil pressure light stays on for more than 10 seconds, turn the vehicle back off. Do not restart the vehicle. See your dealer for service.



This light should come on briefly when the engine starts. When the engine is off and the vehicle is on, the light should remain illuminated. If it does not come on under either condition, contact your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on when the engine is running, it may not have adequate oil pressure. The oil level may be low or there may be some other oil system problem. Turn the engine off when it is safe to do so and contact your dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light



A Low Fuel Warning Light near the fuel gauge comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on as a check to show it is working. It also comes on when the fuel gauge indicator nears empty. The light turns off when fuel is added. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced.

Security Light



The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See *Immobilizer Operation* ⇨ *23*.

High-Beam On Light



This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use. See *Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *119*.

IntelliBeam Light



This light comes on when the IntelliBeam system, if equipped, is enabled. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *118*.

Lamps On Reminder



This light comes on when the exterior lamps are in use, except when only the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) are active. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *118*.

Cruise Control Light



If equipped, the cruise control light is white when the cruise control is on and ready, and turns green when the cruise control is set and active.

The light turns off when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *219*.

Adaptive Cruise Control Light



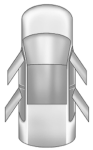
If equipped, this light is white when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is on and ready, and turns green when the ACC is set and active.

See *Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)* ⇨ *221*.

Door Ajar Light



Base Level



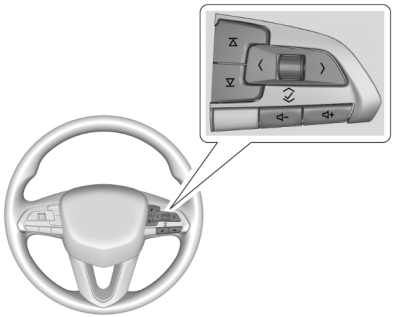
Uplevel

This light comes on when a door is open or not securely latched. Before driving, check that all doors are properly closed.

Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)

The DIC is displayed in the instrument cluster. It shows the status of many vehicle systems.



< or > : Press to move between the interactive display zones in the cluster. Press < to go back to the previous menu.

∧ or ∨ : Use the thumbwheel to scroll to the previous or next selection.

✓ : Press the thumbwheel to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.

Info Page Options

The info displays on the DIC can be turned on or off through the Options menu.

1. Press > to scroll to the Options menu. Use the thumbwheel to scroll to Info Pages and press the thumbwheel to select.
2. Scroll ∧ or ∨ to move through the list of possible info displays.
3. Press the thumbwheel while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item.

The info pages can also be turned on or off through the DIC Info Page Options.

DIC Information Displays

The following is the list of all possible DIC information displays. Some of the information displays may not be available for your particular vehicle.

While in the Info Page Options menu, the info pages can be restored to the default factory settings by pressing and holding on the left steering wheel controls and the thumbwheel on the right steering wheel controls at the same time.

Speed : Shows the vehicle speed in kilometers per hour (km/h).

Trip 1 or Trip 2 and Average Fuel Economy : The Trip display shows the current distance traveled, in kilometers (km), since the trip odometer was last reset. The trip odometer can be reset by pressing ✓ and selecting yes or no while this display is active.

The Average Fuel Economy display shows the approximate average liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy that the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change. The Average Fuel Economy can be reset by pressing ✓ and selecting yes or no while this display is active.

Fuel Range : Shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refueling. LOW will be displayed when the vehicle is low on fuel. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

Oil Life : Shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. If REMAINING OIL LIFE 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*.

The Oil Life display must be reset after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Do not reset the Oil Life display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *261*.

Air Filter Life : If equipped, Shows an estimate of the engine air filter's remaining useful life and the state of the system. Engine Air Filter Life 95% means 95% of the current air filter life remains. Messages will display based on the engine air filter life

and the state of the system. When the REPLACE AT NEXT OIL CHANGE message displays, the engine air filter should be replaced at the time of the next oil change. When the REPLACE SOON message displays, the engine air filter should be replaced at the earliest convenience.

The Air Filter Life display must be reset after the engine air filter replacement. To reset, see *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ *262*.

Brake Pad Life : If equipped, this displays an estimate of the remaining life of the front and rear brake pads. Messages will display based on brake pad wear and the state of the system. Reset the Brake Pad Life display after replacing the brake pads. See *Brake Pad Life System (If Equipped)* ⇨ *273*.

Tire Pressure : Shows the approximate pressures of all four tires. Tire pressure is displayed in kilopascal (kPa). If the pressure is low, the value for that tire is shown in amber. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *292* and *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *293*.

Fuel Economy : Displays average fuel economy, the best fuel economy over the selected distance, and a bar graph showing instantaneous fuel economy.

Average Speed : Displays the average vehicle speed of the vehicle in kilometers per hour (km/h). This average is based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset. Reset the average speed by pressing the thumbwheel while this display is active to show a confirmation window to select yes or no.

Timer : This display can be used as a timer. To start the timer, press the thumbwheel while this display is active. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To stop the timer, press the thumbwheel briefly while this display is active and the timer is running.

Press the thumbwheel while this display is active to reset the timer.

Follow Distance/Gap Setting : When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is not engaged, the current follow time to the vehicle ahead is displayed as a time value on this page. When ACC has been engaged, the display switches to the gap setting page. This page shows the current gap setting along with the vehicle ahead telltale.

Driver Assistance : If equipped, shows information for Lane Keep Assist (LKA) and Forward Collision Alert (FCA).

Battery Voltage : Shows the current battery voltage.

Coolant Temperature : Shows the engine coolant temperature in degrees Celsius (°C).

Oil Temperature : Shows the engine oil temperature in degrees Celsius (°C).

Engine Hours (Hourmeter) : Shows the total number of hours the engine has run. The display also shows the engine idle hours.

Transmission Fluid Temperature :
If equipped, Shows the temperature of the transmission fluid in degrees Celsius (°C).

Info Page Options : Scroll to choose which info pages appear on the DIC. Press the thumbwheel to select or deselect.

Blank Page : Allows for no information to be displayed in the cluster info display areas.

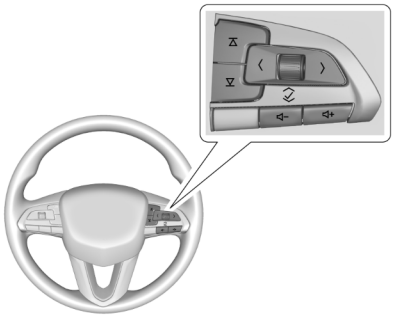
Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)

The DIC is displayed in the instrument cluster. It shows the status of many vehicle systems.

DIC information is broken down into two main zones:

Left Zone : Displays on the instrument cluster to the left of the speedometer.

Right Zone : Displays on the instrument cluster to the right of the speedometer.



< or > : Press to move left or right between the interactive display zones in the cluster. Press the thumbwheel to select.

∧ or ∨ : Use the thumbwheel to scroll up or down in a list. Press the thumbwheel to select.

DIC Info Tiles Selection

The following is the list of all possible DIC Info Tiles. Depending on the vehicle, some may not be available.

Left Zone

Battery Voltage : Displays the current battery voltage. The battery voltage can fluctuate while viewing this information on the DIC. This is normal.

Coolant Temperature : Displays the coolant temperature in degrees Celsius (°C).

eLSD : Displays the amount of rear differential coupling when the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (eLSD) is active and functioning during vehicle operation.
A reading of 1% is an open differential and 100% is locked. It is normal for the value to make small or large changes due to driving conditions and driver inputs. For the V-Series Blackwing models, the eLSD maintains some coupling even if the vehicle is stationary or not accelerating. Coupling values of 3% and up are typical. See *Limited-Slip Differential* ⇨ *219*.

Engine Boost : If equipped, displays engine manifold pressure relative to ambient air pressure. It will display boost pressure generated by the turbocharging system.

Instantaneous Fuel Economy/Economy Trend : Displays the current fuel economy in liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km). This number reflects only the approximate fuel economy and changes frequently as driving conditions change. This display cannot be reset.

When in tour mode, shows history of the Average Fuel Economy from the last 100 km. Each bar represents about 5 km of driving. When driving, the bars shift to reflect the most recent distance on the right side.

Lateral G-Force : If equipped, displays inertial forces being exerted on the vehicle in the lateral (side-to-side) direction as numerical value and as graphical depiction.

Oil Pressure : Shows the current oil pressure in kilopascal (kPa).

Oil Temperature : Shows the current oil temperature in degrees Celsius (°C).

Time & Temperature : Displays the current time and the current outside air temperature.

Tire Status : Shows individual tire pressures and overall temperature as either Cold, Cool, Normal, Warm, or Hot. Normal is typical for normal driving while Warm is typical for aggressive driving. Unknown displays when tire temperature information is unavailable.

Transmission Fluid Temperature :
If equipped, shows the temperature of the transmission fluid in degrees Celsius (°C).

Right Zone

Trip 1 or 2/Average Speed/Average Fuel Economy : Trip displays the current distance traveled, in kilometers (km), since the trip odometer was last reset. The trip odometer can be reset by pressing and holding the thumbwheel while this display is active.

Average Speed displays the average speed of the vehicle in kilometers per hour (km/h). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value. The average speed can be reset by pressing and holding the thumbwheel while this display is active.

Average Fuel Economy displays the approximate average liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. This number reflects only the current, approximate average fuel economy and changes as driving conditions change. The Average Fuel Economy can be reset by pressing and holding the thumbwheel while this display is active.

Fuel Economy : Displays the average fuel economy, the best fuel economy over the selected distance, and a bar graph showing instantaneous fuel economy. Pressing the thumbwheel opens a menu to change the selected distance or reset the current values.

Trip Timer/Fuel Used : This display can be used as a timer. To start/stop the timer, press the thumbwheel while this display is active and then select the start/stop the timer. The display shows the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To reset the timer to zero, press the thumbwheel to access the menu while this display is active.

Fuel Used displays the approximate liters (L) of fuel that have been used since last reset. The fuel used can be reset by pressing the thumbwheel and selecting Reset Fuel Used in the menu.

Current Drive Cycle : Displays information in relation to the current drive cycle including Distance Traveled, Average Fuel Economy, and the Total Time. They will reset after the drive cycle is completed.

Driver Assistance : If equipped, displays the status of all active safety systems.

Oil Life : Displays an estimate of the remaining useful oil life. If REMAINING OIL LIFE 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message appears on the display. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*.

The Oil Life display must be reset after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Do not reset the Oil Life display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *261*.

Air Filter Life : If equipped, shows an estimate of the engine air filter's remaining useful life and the state of the system. Engine Air Filter Life 95% means 95% of the current air filter life remains. Messages are displayed based on the engine air filter life and the state of the system. When the REPLACE AT NEXT OIL CHANGE message displays, the engine air filter should be replaced at the time of the next oil change.

When the REPLACE NOW message displays, the engine air filter should be replaced as soon as possible.

Engine Hours : Displays the total number of hours the engine has run. The display also shows the engine idle hours.

Lifetime Revs : The display shows total engine revolutions divided by 10,000.

Brake Pad Life : If equipped, this displays an estimate of the remaining life of the front and rear brake pads. Messages are displayed based on brake pad wear and the state of the system. Reset the Brake Pad Life display after replacing the brake pads. See *Brake Pad Life System (If Equipped)* ⇨ *273*.

Head-Up Display (HUD)

If equipped with HUD, certain vehicle information is projected through a lens on top of the instrument panel onto the windshield.

⚠ Warning

If the HUD image is too bright or too high in your field of view, it may take you more time to see things you need to (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

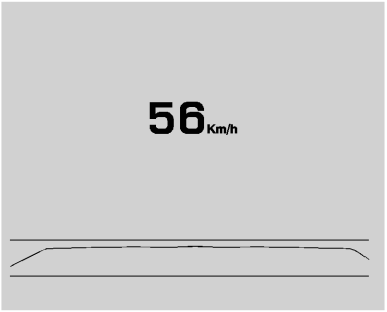
see when it is dark outside. Be sure to keep the HUD image dim and placed low in your field of view.

Caution

If you try to use the HUD image as a parking aid, you may misjudge the distance and damage your vehicle. Do not use the HUD image as a parking aid.

The HUD information can be displayed in various languages in some vehicles. The speedometer reading and other numerical values can be displayed in either English or metric units.

The language selection is changed through the radio and the units of measurement are changed through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Settings* ⇨ *164* and "Options" under *Instrument Cluster (Uplevel)* ⇨ *90* or *Instrument Cluster (Base Level)* ⇨ *87*.

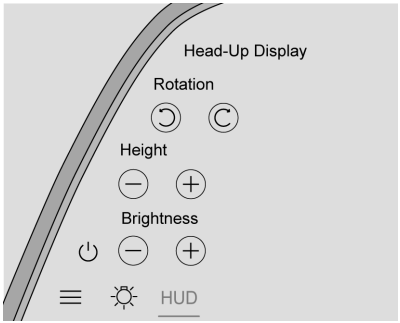


HUD Display on the Windshield

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the HUD may display the following vehicle information, messages, or alerts:

- Speed
- Audio
- Phone
- Navigation
- Performance
- Driver Assistance Features
- Vehicle Messages

Some vehicle messages or alerts displayed in the HUD may be cleared by using the steering wheel controls. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *114*.



The HUD control is on a touchscreen to the left of the instrument cluster. HUD controls are also available on the infotainment screen. See *Settings* ⇨ *164*.

To adjust the HUD image:

1. Adjust the driver seat.
2. Start the vehicle.
3. Select HUD on the touchscreen to the left of the instrument cluster.
4. Use the icons to adjust the HUD as desired.

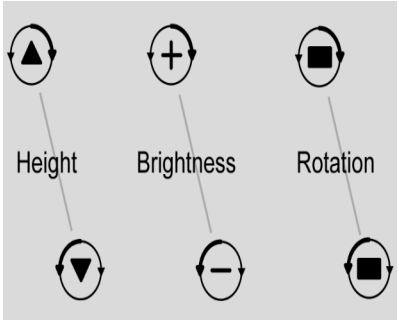
The HUD image will automatically dim and brighten to compensate for outside lighting. Adjust as needed.

The HUD image can temporarily light up depending on the angle and position of sunlight on the HUD display. This is normal.

Polarized sunglasses could make the HUD image harder to see.

Head-Up Display (HUD) Rotation Option

If equipped, this feature under the HUD Options menu of the infotainment screen allows for adjusting the HUD image. This feature may only be available in P (Park). See *Settings* ⇨ *164*.



Press the icons above and below to adjust the HUD display.

HUD Views

There are three views in the HUD. Track mode is available for V-Series only. Some vehicle information and vehicle messages or alerts are available in all views.



Speed View : If equipped, displays digital speed in English or metric units, speed limit, vehicle ahead indicator, Lane Departure Warning/Lane Keep Assist, and Adaptive Cruise Control and set speed.



Performance View : Displays digital speed, indicators from speed view, rpm reading, vehicle ahead indicator, Lane Departure Warning/Lane Keep Assist, and Adaptive Cruise Control and set speed.

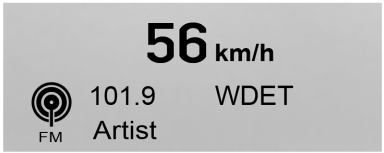


Track View : If equipped, displays digital speed, transmission positions, Shift Timing Light Position, and gear shift indicator.

The shift timing lights at the top of the display will appear with increases in engine rpm. The rows of lights get closer together as the shift point gets closer. Shift the transmission before the lights come together in the display. Shift immediately if the lights are flashing. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *206*.

Temporary Overlays

Infotainment: Audio, Phone, and Navigation are temporary overlays linked to cluster layouts.



Audio/Phone Overlay : Displays digital speed for Tour/Sport, current gear for Track, indicators from speed view, audio/phone information, vehicle ahead indicator, Lane Departure Warning/Lane Keep Assist, and Adaptive Cruise Control and set speed. The current radio station, media type, and incoming calls will be displayed.

All HUD views may briefly display audio information when the driver uses the steering wheel controls to adjust the audio settings appearing in the instrument cluster.

Incoming phone calls appearing in the instrument cluster may also display in any HUD view.



Navigation Overlay : If equipped, displays digital speed for Tour/Sport, current gear for Track, indicators from speed view, turn-by-turn navigation information, vehicle ahead indicator, Lane Departure Warning/ Lane Keep Assist, and Adaptive Cruise Control and set speed. The compass heading is displayed when navigation routing is not active.

Navigation turn-by-turn alerts shown in the instrument cluster may also be displayed in any HUD view.

Care of the HUD

Clean the inside of the windshield to remove any dirt or film that could reduce the sharpness or clarity of the HUD image.

Clean the HUD lens with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently, then dry it.

HUD Troubleshooting

If you cannot see the HUD image when the vehicle is on, ensure that:

- Nothing is covering the HUD lens.
- The HUD brightness setting is not too dim or too bright.
- The HUD is adjusted to the proper height.
- You are not wearing polarized sunglasses.
- The windshield and HUD lens are clean.

If you continue to experience problems with the HUD, contact your dealer.

The windshield is part of the HUD system. See *Windshield Replacement* ⇨ *277*.

Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC) indicate the status of the vehicle or some action that may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may appear one after another.

The messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing the thumbwheel. The messages that require immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed.

All messages should be taken seriously; clearing the message does not correct the problem.

If a SERVICE message appears, see your dealer.

Follow the instructions given in the messages. The system displays messages regarding the following topics:

- Service Messages
- Fluid Levels
- Vehicle Security
- Brakes
- Steering
- Ride Control Systems
- Advanced Driver Assistance Systems
- Cruise Control
- Lighting and Bulb Replacement
- Wiper/Washer Systems
- Doors and Windows
- Seat Belts
- Airbag Systems
- Engine and Transmission
- Tire Pressure
- Battery

Engine Power Messages

REDUCED ACCELERATION DRIVE WITH CARE

This message displays when the vehicle's propulsion power is reduced. A reduction in propulsion power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no observed reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. Under certain conditions the performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, or displays repeatedly, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Under certain operating conditions, propulsion will be disabled. Try restarting after the ignition has been off for two minutes.

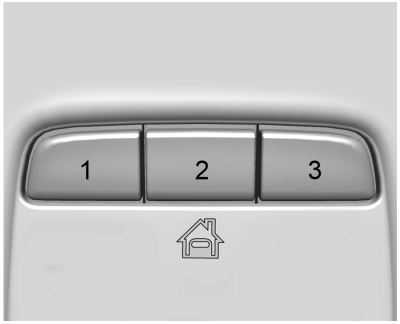
Vehicle Speed Messages

SPEED LIMITED TO XXX KM/H (MPH)

This message shows that the vehicle speed has been limited to the speed displayed. The limited speed is a protection for various propulsion and vehicle systems, such as lubrication, thermal, brakes, suspension, Teen Driver if equipped, or tires.

Universal Remote System

Universal Remote System Programming



If equipped, these buttons are in the overhead console.

This system can replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices. These instructions refer to a garage door opener, but can be used for other devices.

Do not use the Universal Remote system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Keep the original hand-held transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future programming. Erase the programming when vehicle ownership is terminated. See "Erasing Universal Remote System Buttons" later in this section.

To program a garage door opener, park outside directly in line with and facing the garage door opener receiver. Clear all people and objects near the garage door.

Make sure the hand-held transmitter has a new battery for quick and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

Programming the Universal Remote System

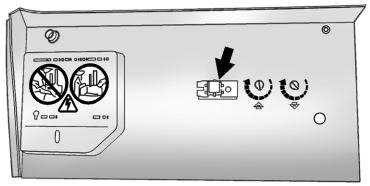
The Universal Remote system is compatible with radio-frequency devices operating between 433-434 MHz.

Programming involves time-sensitive actions and may time out, requiring the procedure to be repeated. Read these instructions completely before programming the Universal Remote system. It may help to have another person assist with the programming process.

1. Hold the end of the hand-held transmitter about 3 to 8 cm (1 to 3 in) away from the Universal Remote system buttons with the indicator light in view. The hand-held transmitter was supplied by the manufacturer of the garage door opener receiver.
2. At the same time, press and hold both the hand-held transmitter button and one of the three Universal Remote system buttons to be used to operate the garage door. Do not release either button until the indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash or continuous light. Then release both buttons.

   Some garage door openers may require substitution of Step 2 with the procedure under "Radio Signals for Some Gate Operators" later in this section.

3. Press and hold the newly programmed Universal Remote system button for five seconds while watching the indicator light and garage door activation.
   - If the indicator light stays on continuously or the garage door moves when the button is pressed, then programming is complete. There is no need to complete Steps 4–6.
   - If the indicator light does not come on or the garage door does not move, a second button press may be required. For a second time, press and hold the newly programmed button for five seconds. If the indicator light stays on continuously or the garage door moves when the button is pressed, then programming is complete. There is no need to complete Steps 4–6.
   - If the garage door does not move, continue with programming Steps 4–6.



Learn or Smart Button

4. After completing Steps 1–3, locate the Learn or Smart button inside garage on the garage door opener receiver. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.
5. Press and release the Learn or Smart button. Step 6 must be completed within 30 seconds of pressing this button.
6. Return to the vehicle and firmly press and hold the trained Universal Remote system button for two seconds and release. Repeat the “press/hold/release” sequence up to three times to complete the training process.

The Universal Remote system should now activate the garage door. Repeat the process for programming the remaining two buttons.

For questions or programming help, visit www.homelink.com/gm for self-help videos.

Radio Signals for Some Gate Operators

Some gate operators and radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to time out or quit after several seconds of transmission. This may not be long enough for the Universal Remote system to pick up the signal during programming.

If the programming did not work, replace Step 2 under “Programming the Universal Remote System” with the following:

Press and hold the Universal Remote system button while pressing and releasing the hand-held transmitter button every two seconds until the signal has been successfully accepted by the Universal Remote system. The Universal Remote system indicator light will flash slowly at first and then change to a rapid flash or continuous solid-light. Proceed with Step 3 under “Programming the Universal Remote System” to complete.

Universal Remote System Operation

Using the Universal Remote System

Press and hold the appropriate Universal Remote system button for at least one-half second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

Erasing Universal Remote System Buttons

Erase all programmed buttons when vehicle ownership is terminated.

To erase:

1. Press and hold the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. This should take about 10 seconds.
2. Release both buttons.

Reprogramming a Single Universal Remote System Button

To reprogram any of the system buttons:

1. Press and hold any one of the buttons. Do not release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, proceed with Step 1 under "Programming the Universal Remote System."

Lighting

Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 118
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 119
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 119
Flash-to-Pass 120
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 120
Automatic Headlamp System 120
Hazard Warning Flashers 121
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 121
Cornering Lamps 121

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 122
Courtesy Lamps 122
Dome Lamps 122
Reading Lamps 122

Lighting Features
Entry Lighting 123
Exit Lighting 123
Battery Load Management 124
Battery Power Protection 124
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 124

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls



The exterior lamp control is on the turn signal lever.

Turn the control to the following positions:

⏻ **:** Turns off the exterior lamps. The knob returns to the AUTO position after it is released. Turn to ⏻ again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

AUTO : Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

: Turns on the parking lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

: Turns on the headlamps together with the parking lamps and instrument panel lights.

IntelliBeam System

This system turns the vehicle's high-beam headlamps on and off according to surrounding traffic conditions.

The system turns the high-beam headlamps on when it is dark enough and there is no other traffic present.

This light Ⓐ comes on in the instrument cluster when the IntelliBeam system is enabled.

Turning On and Enabling IntelliBeam



To enable the IntelliBeam system, press on the turn signal lever when it is dark outside and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO or .

Driving with IntelliBeam

The system only activates the high beams when driving over 40 km/h (25 mph).

The blue high-beam on light appears on the instrument cluster when the high beams are on.

There is a sensor near the top center of the windshield that automatically controls the system. Keep this area of the windshield clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

The high-beam headlamps remain on, under the automatic control, until one of the following situations occurs:

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps.
- The system detects a preceding vehicle's taillamps.
- The outside light is bright enough that high-beam headlamps are not required.
- The vehicle's speed drops below 20 km/h (12 mph).
- The IntelliBeam system is disabled by the button on the turn signal lever. If this happens, press on the turn signal lever when the exterior lamp control is in the AUTO or position to reactivate the IntelliBeam system. The instrument cluster light will come on to indicate the IntelliBeam system is reactivated.

The high beams may not turn off automatically if the system cannot detect another vehicle's lamps because of any of the following:

- The other vehicle's lamps are missing, damaged, obstructed from view, or otherwise undetected.
- The other vehicle's lamps are covered with dirt, snow, and/or road spray.
- The other vehicle's lamps cannot be detected due to dense exhaust, smoke, fog, snow, road spray, mist, or other airborne obstructions.
- The vehicle's windshield is dirty, cracked, or obstructed by something that blocks the view of the light sensor.
- The vehicle is loaded such that the front end points upward, causing the light sensor to aim high and not detect headlamps and taillamps.
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.

The automatic high-beam headlamps may need to be disabled if any of the above conditions exist.

Exterior Lamps Off Reminder

A warning chime sounds if the driver door is opened while the ignition is off and the exterior lamps are on.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: Push the turn signal lever away from you and release, to turn the high beams on. To return to low beams, push the lever again or pull it toward you and release.



This indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster when the high-beam headlamps are on.

Flash-to-Pass

To flash the high beams, pull the turn signal lever toward you, and release.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day.

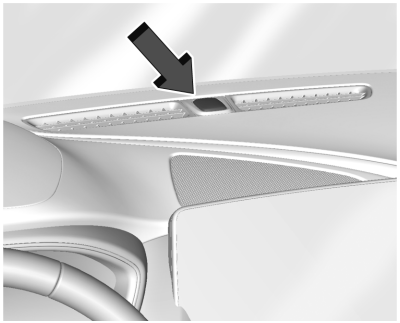
If equipped, the DRL will come on when all of the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO.
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.

The DRL turn off when the exterior lamp controls are turned to ≡OO≡ or the ignition is off.

Automatic Headlamp System

When the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



If equipped, the light sensor is on top of the instrument panel or on the windshield near the rearview mirror. Do not cover the sensor, otherwise the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

If the vehicle is started in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system comes on immediately. If it is light outside when the vehicle leaves the garage, there is a slight delay before the automatic headlamp system turns off the headlamps. During that delay, the instrument cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *122*.

When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps will turn off.

The automatic headlamp system turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

Lights On with Wipers

If the windshield wipers are activated in daylight with the engine on, and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO, the headlamps, parking lamps, and other exterior lamps come on. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. When the wipers are not operating, these lamps turn off. Move the exterior lamp control to ⏻ or ≡OO≡ to disable this feature.

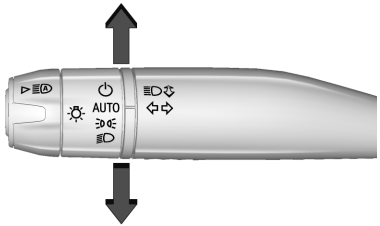
Hazard Warning Flashers



⚠ : Press this button to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Release the button for at least one second and press again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning flashers turn on automatically if the airbags deploy.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

An arrow on the instrument cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is completed. If the lever is briefly pressed and released, the turn signal flashes three times.

The turn and lane-change signal can be turned off manually by moving the lever back to its original position.

If after signaling a turn or lane change, the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal function may be inoperative. This vehicle may be equipped with LED lighting. For replacement of any LED lighting, contact your dealer.

Cornering Lamps

If equipped with cornering lamps, they automatically come on when all of the following occur:

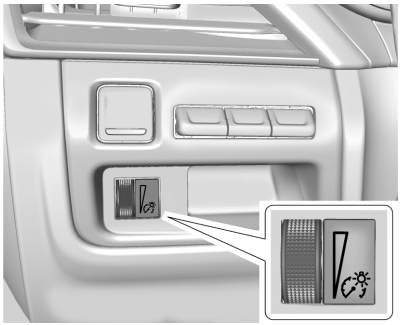
- The low-beam headlamps are on.
- The turn signals are activated or the steering wheel is at a turning angle.
- The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h (25 mph).

Reverse Parking Function

If equipped, when putting the vehicle in R (Reverse) and the headlights are on, the cornering lamps and reverse lamps illuminate. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *118*.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control



This feature adjusts the brightness of all illuminated controls.

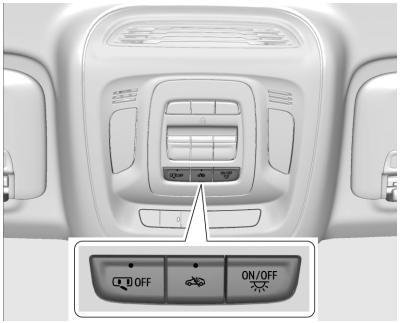
: Move the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the lights.

The thumbwheel is functional at night, or when the headlamps or parking lamps are ON.

Courtesy Lamps

The courtesy lamps come on when any door is opened, on the remote key is pressed, or when the vehicle is turned off. See *Dome Lamps* ⇨ *122*.

Dome Lamps



The dome lamp controls are in the overhead console.

The dome lamps come on when any door is opened, on the remote key is pressed, or when the vehicle is turned off.

To operate, press the following buttons:

OFF : Press to turn off the dome lamps. An indicator light on the button will turn on when the dome lamp override is activated. Press OFF again to deactivate this feature and the indicator light will turn off.

ON/OFF : Press to turn the dome lamps on or off manually.

Reading Lamps

There are front and rear reading lamps on the overhead console and over the rear passenger doors. These lamps come on when any door is opened, on the remote key is pressed, or when the vehicle is turned off.

Front Reading Lamps

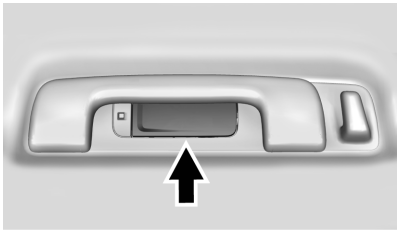
The front reading lamps are on the overhead console.



Press the lamp lenses to manually turn on or off the front reading lamps.

Rear Reading Lamps

The rear reading lamps are over the rear passenger doors.



Press the lamp lenses to manually turn on or off the rear reading lamps.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

The interior lamps turn on when pressing on the remote key or opening any doors, and the dome lamp control is not in the OFF position.

Some exterior lamps also turn on when pressing on the remote key or opening any doors. Low-Beam lamps will only turn on briefly at night, or in areas with limited lighting.

All lamps will gradually fade out after about 30 seconds.

Entry lighting can be disabled manually by closing all doors, pressing on the remote key, or starting the vehicle.

This feature can be changed. On the infotainment home page, select the Setting icon > Vehicle > Vehicle Locator Lights.

Approach Detection

If equipped, the entry lighting feature will automatically turn on when the remote key is detected within approximately 2 m (6 ft) of the vehicle.

If the vehicle has remained parked for an extended period of time with no remote key use or keyless access operation, approach detection will be disabled. To reactivate, press any button on the remote key or open and close all vehicle doors to re-enable the entry lighting feature on approach.

Exit Lighting

Some exterior lamps and interior lamps turn on when the driver door is opened after the vehicle is turned off.

The exterior and interior lamps remain on for a set amount of time, then automatically turn off.

The interior lights turn on when the vehicle is turned off.

The exterior lamps turn off immediately by turning the exterior lamp control off.

This feature can be changed. On the infotainment home screen, select Settings > Vehicle > Exit Lighting.

Battery Load Management

The vehicle has Electric Power Management (EPM), which estimates the battery's temperature and state of charge. It then adjusts the voltage for best performance and extended life of the battery.

When the battery's state of charge is low, the voltage is raised slightly to quickly bring the charge back up. When the state of charge is high, the voltage is lowered slightly to prevent overcharging. If the vehicle has a voltmeter gauge or a voltage display on the Driver Information Center (DIC), you may see the voltage move up or down. This is normal. If there is a problem, an alert will be displayed.

The battery can be discharged at idle if the electrical loads are very high. This is true for all vehicles. This is because the generator (alternator) may not be spinning fast enough at idle to produce all the power that is needed for very high electrical loads.

A high electrical load occurs when several of the following are on, such as: headlamps, high beams, fog lamps, rear window defogger, climate control fan at high speed, heated seats, engine cooling fans, and loads plugged into accessory power outlets.

EPM works to prevent excessive discharge of the battery. It does this by balancing the generator's output and the vehicle's electrical needs. It can increase engine idle speed to generate more power, whenever needed. It can temporarily reduce the power demands of some accessories.

Normally, these actions occur in steps or levels, without being noticeable. In rare cases at the highest levels of corrective action, this action may be noticeable to the driver. If so, a DIC message might be displayed. If a battery message is displayed, it is recommended that the driver reduce the electrical loads as much as possible. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.

Battery Power Protection

This feature helps prevent the battery from being drained, if the interior courtesy lamps or reading lamps are accidentally left on. If any of these lamps are left on, they automatically turn off after 10 minutes, if the ignition is off. The lamps will not come back on again until one of the following occurs:

- The ignition is turned on.
- The doors are closed and then re-opened.

Exterior Lighting Battery Saver

The exterior lamps turn off about 10 minutes after the vehicle is turned off, if the parking lamps or headlamps have been manually left on. This protects against draining the battery. To restart the 10-minute timer, turn the exterior lamp control to the ⏻ position and then back to the AUTO or ≡D position.

To keep the lamps on for more than 10 minutes, the vehicle must be on or in accessory mode.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Infotainment System

Introduction
Introduction 125
Overview 126
Steering Wheel Controls 127
Using the System 128
Software Updates 130

Radio
AM-FM Radio 130
Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio ... 132
Radio Data System (RDS) 133
Radio Reception 134
Multi-Band Antenna 134

Audio Players
Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices 134
USB Port 135
Bluetooth Audio 137

Navigation
Using the Navigation System 137
Maps 140
Navigation Symbols 141
Destination 141
Global Positioning System (GPS) 147
Vehicle Positioning 147
Problems with Route Guidance 147
If the System Needs Service 148
Map Data Updates 148
Database Coverage Explanations 148

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition 148

Performance Data Recorder (PDR)
Performance Data Recorder (PDR) 153

Phone
Bluetooth (Overview) 159
Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone) 159
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 163

Settings
Settings 164

Trademarks and License Agreements
Trademarks and License Agreements 167

Introduction

Read the following pages to become familiar with the features.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some features when driving. These features may become disabled on the infotainment home screen when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the instrument cluster and steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation, center stack controls, steering wheel controls, and infotainment display.

- Set up the audio by presetting favorite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single control or by using a single voice command.

See *Distracted Driving* ⇨ *180*.

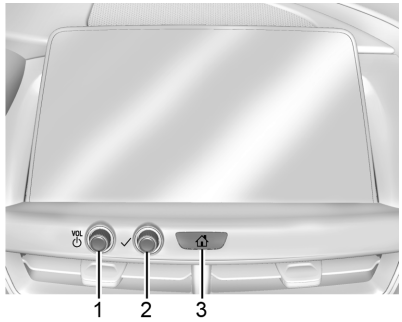
Active Noise Cancellation

If equipped, Active Noise Cancellation (ANC) reduces engine noise in the vehicle's interior. ANC requires the factory-installed audio system, radio, speakers, amplifier (if equipped), induction system, and exhaust system to work properly. Deactivation is required by your dealer if related aftermarket equipment is installed.

Overview

Infotainment System

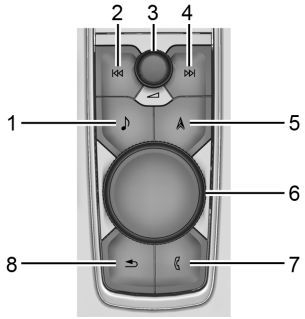
The infotainment system is controlled by using the infotainment display, controls on the center console, steering wheel controls, and voice recognition.



1. ⏻ (Power and Mute) Knob
   - Press to turn the power on.
   - Press and hold to display the power off screen or the option to display the power off screen.
   - Press to mute/unmute the system when on.
   - Turn to decrease or increase the volume.
2. ✓ Knob
   - Turn to highlight a feature. Press to activate the highlighted feature.
3. ⌂ (Home Page)
   - Press to go to the Home Page. See "Home Page" later in this section.

Press to exit Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. To enter back into Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, press and hold. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *163*.

Infotainment Controls on the Console with Navigation Shown, Radio without Navigation Similar



1. ♪ (Radio/AUX)
   - Press to open the "Now Playing" screen.

2. ⏮ (Seek)
   - Radio: Press and release to go to the previous station or channel. Press and hold to fast seek the next strongest previous station or channel. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *130*.
   - USB/Bluetooth: Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. Press and hold to quickly reverse through a track. Release to return to playing speed. See *USB Port* ⇨ *135* or *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *137*.
3. (Power/Volume) Knob
   - Press to turn the power on.
   - Press and hold when the system is on to turn the power off and display the time.
   - Press to mute/unmute the system when on.
   - Turn to decrease or increase the volume.
4. ⏭ (Seek)
   - Radio: Press and release to go to the next station or channel. Press and hold to fast seek the next strongest station or channel.
   - USB/Bluetooth: Press to seek the next track. Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release to return to playing speed. See *USB Port* ⇨ *135* or *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *137*.
5. (Navigation) or (Phone)
   - Press to access the navigation menu or press to access the phone menu.
6. Primary Knob
   - Turn to highlight a feature. Press to activate the highlighted feature.
   - If equipped, move right/left or up/down to change the highlighted area on the display screen.
7. (Phone) or (Home Page)
   - Press to access the phone menu or press to access the Home Page. See "Home Page" later in this section.
8. (Back)
   - Press to return to the previous display in a menu.

Home Page

The Home Page is where vehicle application icons are accessed. Some applications are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

Swipe left or right across the display to access the pages of icons.

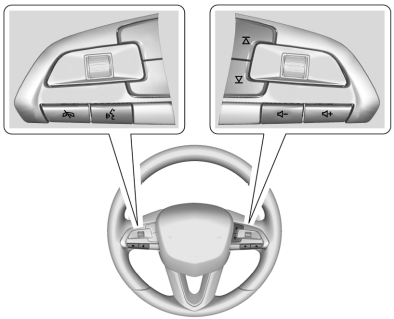
Managing Home Page Icons

1. Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the display toward the desired page.
5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.

Steering Wheel Controls

The infotainment steering wheel controls can be used to control the infotainment features displayed in the instrument cluster.

When in Valet Mode, if equipped, access to the infotainment functions is disabled. See "Valet Mode," under *Settings* ⇨ *164*.



: Press to answer an incoming call or start voice recognition. See *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *159* or *Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone)* ⇨ *159*.

: Press to decline an incoming call or end a current call. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

or : Press to go to the next or previous favorite when listening to the radio. Press to go to the next or previous track when listening to a media source.

+ or – : Press to increase or decrease the volume.

Using the System

Audio

Touch the Audio icon to display the active audio source page. Examples of available sources may include AM, FM, MyMedia, USB, AUX (if equipped), and Bluetooth.

Phone

Touch the Phone icon to display the Phone main page. See *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *159* or *Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone)* ⇨ *159*.

Nav

If equipped, touch the Nav icon to display the navigation map. See *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *137*.

Wi-Fi Hotspot

Touch the Wi-Fi Hotspot icon to display the Wi-Fi Hotspot information. See *Settings* ⇨ *164*.

Users

If equipped, touch the Users icon to sign in or create a new user profile, and follow the on-screen instructions.

Only four user profiles can be active at one time in the vehicle. It may be necessary to remove a profile from the menu before creating or signing into an existing profile. The removed profile can be logged into at a later time.

Settings

Touch the Settings icon to display the Settings menu. See *Settings* ⇨ *164*.

Apple CarPlay

Touch the Apple CarPlay icon to activate Apple CarPlay, if equipped, after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *163*.

Android Auto

Touch the Android Auto icon to activate Android Auto, if equipped, after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *163*.

Climate

Touch the Climate icon to display the Climate main page. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *173*.

Shortcut Tray

The shortcut tray is near the bottom of the display. It shows up to four applications.

Infotainment Display Features

Infotainment display features show on the display when available. When a feature is unavailable, it may gray out. When a feature is touched, it may highlight.

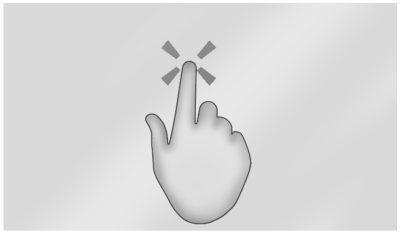
Haptic Feedback

If equipped, haptic feedback is a pulse that occurs when an icon or option is touched on the display or when controls below the display are pressed.

Infotainment Gestures

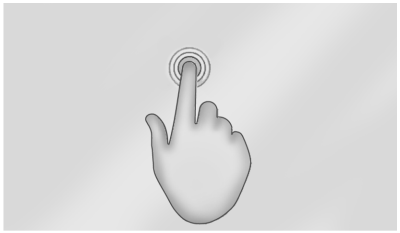
Use the following finger gestures to control the infotainment system.

Touch/Tap



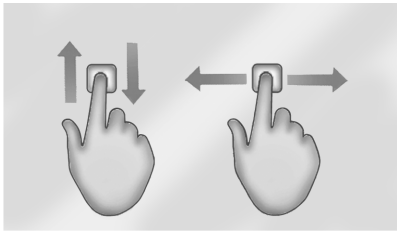
Touch/tap is used to select an icon or option, activate an application, or change the location inside a map.

Touch and Hold



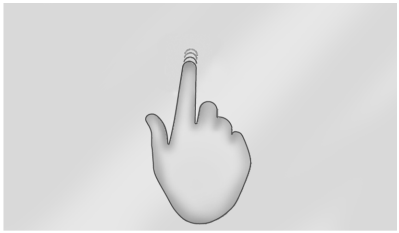
Touch and hold can be used to start another gesture, or to move or delete an application.

Drag



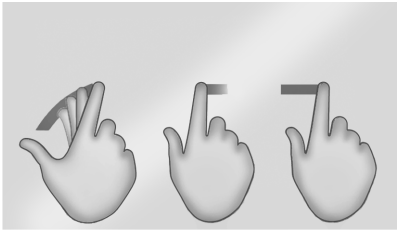
Drag is used to move applications on the Home Page, or to pan the map. To drag the item, it must be held and moved along the display to the new location. This can be done up, down, right, or left. This feature is only available when vehicle is parked and not in motion.

Nudge



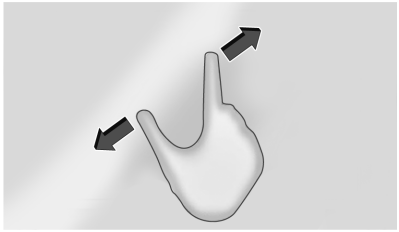
Nudge is used to move items a short distance on a list or a map. To nudge, hold and move the selected item up or down to a new location.

Fling or Swipe



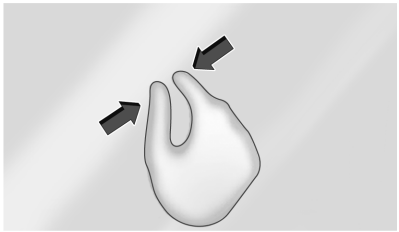
Fling or swipe is used to scroll through a list, pan the map, or change page views. Do this by placing a finger on the display then moving it rapidly up and down or right and left.

Spread



Spread is used to zoom in on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb together on the display, then move them apart.

Pinch



Pinch is used to zoom out on a map, certain images, or a web page. Place finger and thumb apart on the display, then move them together.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfiber cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfiber cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfiber cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfiber cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Software Updates

Over-the-Air Software Updates

If equipped, see “Updates” under *Settings* ⇨ *164* for details on software updates.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

Press ♪ on the console controls or touch the Audio icon on the Home Page to display the active audio source page. Choose from

the three most recently used sources listed at the left side of the display or touch the More option to display a list of available sources. Examples of available sources may include AM, FM, DAB (if equipped), MyMedia, USB, AUX (if equipped), and Bluetooth.

Infotainment System Sound Menu

From any of the audio source main pages, touch Sound to display the following:

Equalizer : Touch to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, and Surround (if equipped) using the options on the infotainment display.

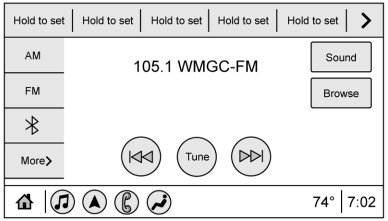
Fade/Balance : Touch to adjust by using the controls on the infotainment display or by tapping/dragging the crosshair.

Sound Mode (If Equipped)

- Bose Centerpoint surround sound systems have four sound modes:
  - Normal: Adjusts the audio to provide the best sound for all seating positions.
  - Driver: Adjusts the audio to provide the best sound for the driver.
  - Rear: Adjusts the audio to provide the best sound for the rear seat occupants.
  - Centerpoint: Turns on Bose Centerpoint surround technology. This setting creates a surround sound from nearly any audio source: existing stereo and MP3 players. For more information on Bose Centerpoint surround technology, see your dealer.
- AKG surround sound systems have two sound modes:
  - Normal: Adjusts the audio to provide the best sound for all seating positions.
  - Rear: Adjusts the audio to provide the best sound for the rear seat occupants.

Finding a Station

Seeking a Station



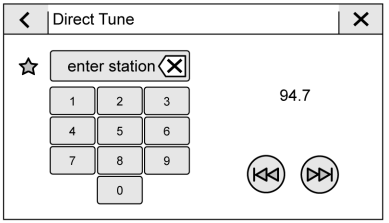
From the AM, FM, or DAB option, press ⏭ or ⏮ on the center stack to search for the previous or next strong station.

Browsing Stations

Touch the Browse option to list all available stations. Navigate up and down through all stations by scrolling the list. Touch the station you want to listen to. Touch ☆ to save the station as a favorite.

If equipped, touch Update Station List to update the active stations in your area.

Direct Tune



Access Direct Tune by touching the Tune icon on the infotainment display to bring up the keypad. Navigate through all frequencies using the arrows on the right side of the Direct Tune display. Directly enter a station using the keypad. When a new station is entered, the information about that station displays on the right side. This information will update with each new valid frequency. Touch ☆ to save the station as a favorite.

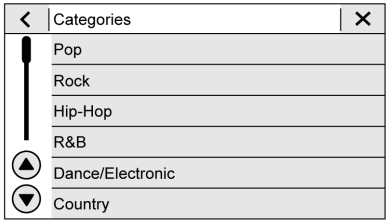
The keypad will gray out entries that do not contribute to a valid frequency and will automatically place a decimal point within the frequency number.

Touch (X) to delete one number at a time. Touch and hold (X) to delete all numbers.

A valid AM, FM, DAB station will automatically tune to the new frequency but not close the Direct Tune display. Touch the Back icon on the infotainment display or touch ✕ to exit out of Direct Tune.

The tune arrows on the right side of the Direct Tune display will tune through the complete station or channel list one station step at a time per touch. A touch and hold advances through stations quickly.

FM Categories



From the FM display, touch Categories at the top of the Browse menu to access the categories list. The list contains names associated with the FM stations. Touch a category name to display a list of stations for that category. Touching a station from the list will tune the radio to that station.

Storing Radio Station Presets

Favorites show in the area at the top of the display.

AM or FM : Press and hold a preset to store the current station as a favorite. Touch a saved favorite to recall a favorite station.

Favorites can also be stored by touching ☆ in a station list. This will highlight indicating that it is now saved as a favorite.

The number of favorites displayed is automatically adjusted by default, but can be manually adjusted in Settings in the System tab under Favorites and then Set Number of Audio Favorites. It can also be adjusted in Settings in the Apps tab under Audio and then Set Number of Audio Favorites.

Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio

If equipped, Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) Radio is a digital broadcast system that provides CD level audio quality along with supporting radio program station information (e.g., station name, artist, song) on the infotainment display. Unlike AM/FM, the DAB signal is less likely to be impacted by interference during normal operation. However, the reception quality of DAB can be reduced if the signal is blocked by natural obstacles or buildings. If the DAB signal is unclear, reception is interrupted completely.

Playing the Radio

From the Home screen, touch the Audio icon to display the Now Playing screen for the active audio source. Touch the DAB source button (e.g., AM, FM, DAB) to change the source.

Finding a Station

Seeking a Station

From the DAB screen, touch the back or forward buttons to search for the previous or next strong station.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Tune

Touch on the infotainment display to enter the Tune screen. Enter a DAB station number using the alpha-numeric keypad (e.g., 5A).

Touch the ☆ to save the station as a favorite.

After entering a valid DAB station, the radio will automatically tune to the new station but not close the Tune screen. Alternatively, touch the Go button or a DAB station in the list to begin playing the station. The tune page will close and return to the Now Playing screen.

DAB Now Playing Screen

While tuned to a DAB station, your display may include relevant information such as station label, text information regarding artist and song, and a station logo. This information is provided by the DAB broadcaster and may not always be available in your listening region.

Storing DAB Radio Station Favorites

Saved favorite stations will show at the bottom of the Now Playing screen.

DAB favorites can be stored by pressing and holding a favorite slot while listening to that station.

DAB Linking

If equipped, your radio may support DAB to DAB Linking and DAB to FM Linking.

DAB to DAB Linking supports the automatic switching of your now playing DAB station to another DAB station with the same content. This happens if the Now Playing DAB station reception weakens and a DAB station with the same content and better reception can be received.

DAB to FM Linking supports the automatic switching of your now playing DAB station to another station on the FM band with the same content. This happens if the Now Playing DAB station reception weakens and an alternate FM station with the same content and better reception can be received.

DAB linking settings can be turned on or off in the Settings menu.

DAB Announcements

If equipped, DAB announcements represent a grouping of broadcast announcements defined by category. Examples include news, emergency, weather, sports, finance, etc. Desired announcement types can be selected by the user through the DAB Announcement screen. Emergency announcements are always enabled and cannot be disabled.

Selected announcements will be automatically received by the radio, when available. Your radio will provide a pop-up window to notify you that a pending announcement will begin playing. You can choose to listen to or dismiss the announcement.

DAB announcement settings can be managed in the Audio Settings menu.

Radio Data System (RDS)

RDS relies on receiving specific RDS information from radio stations and only works when the information is available. It is possible that a radio station could broadcast information that causes the radio to work improperly.

In addition, RDS features are region and country of sale specific. This means specific RDS content may not be available in your listening area or in the country you operate the vehicle.

To turn RDS features on or off, select Settings > Apps> Audio> RDS> Select ON or OFF.

The following core and region specific RDS features may be supported by radio broadcasters in your listening area:

Core RDS features

- Display radio station call letters
- Display messages from radio stations
- Provide radio station category information (when available)

Region Specific RDS features

- Support Traffic Program (TP) Alerts
- Support Alternate Frequency (AF) Switching
- Support Region Switching

Radio Reception

Unplug electronic devices from the accessory power outlets if there is interference or static in the radio.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB)

If equipped, Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a universal broadcast system that indicates stations by the radio program name on the infotainment display. The DAB signal produces a constant volume and is not affected by interference from nearby frequencies. The reception quality of DAB improves if the signal is reflected by natural obstacles or buildings. If the DAB signal is unclear, reception is interrupted completely.

Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

Multi-Band Antenna

The multi-band roof antenna may be used for radio, navigation, and other communication systems, depending on the equipped options. To ensure clear reception, keep the antenna clear of obstructions, such as snow and ice. If the vehicle has a sunroof, and it is open, or a roof loaded with cargo, reception may be affected.

Audio Players

Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices

When using media devices such as USB and mobile devices, consider the source. Untrusted media devices could contain files that affect system operation or performance and should be avoided.

USB Port

Audio stored on a USB device may be listened to.

Depending on your vehicle, it may be equipped with two USB ports in the center console under the armrest and another two on the center stack. These ports are for data and charging. There may also be two USB ports at the rear of the center console and a USB port on each side of the third row seats for charging only.

Caution

To avoid vehicle damage, unplug all accessories and disconnect all accessory cables from the vehicle when not in use. Accessory cables left plugged into the vehicle, unconnected to a device, could be damaged or cause an electrical short if the unconnected end comes in contact with liquids or another power source such as the accessory power outlet.

Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage device can be connected to the USB port.

Audio extensions supported by the USB may include:

- MP3
- AAC
- OGG
- 3GP

USB MP3 Player and USB Devices

The USB MP3 players and USB devices connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).

To play a USB device:

1. Connect the USB.
2. Touch Audio from the Home Page.
3. Select USB device.

Use the following when playing an active USB source:

▷ : Touch to play the current media source.

❙❙ : Touch to pause playback of the current media source.

⏮ :

- Touch to seek the beginning of the current or previous track.
- Touch and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏭ :

- Touch to seek the next track.
- Touch and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

Shuffle : Touch the shuffle icon to play music in random order.

USB Sound Menu

See “Infotainment System Sound Menu” under *AM-FM Radio ⇨ 130*.

USB Browse Menu

When a list of songs, albums, artists, or other types of media displays, the up and down arrows and A-Z appear on the left side. Select A-Z to view a display that will show all letters of the alphabet and select the letter to go to.

Touch the up and down arrows to move the list up and down.

Touch Browse and the following may display:

Playlists:

1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
2. Touch a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.

3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Supported playlist extensions are m3u and pls.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
2. Touch an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch All Songs or touch an album and then touch a song from the list.

Songs:

1. Touch to display a list of all songs on the USB.
2. To begin playback, touch a song from the list.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Touch the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Touch a genre to view a list of artists.
3. Touch an artist to view albums by that artist.
4. Touch an album to view songs on the album.
5. Touch a song to start playback.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the USB.
2. Touch a Composer to view a list of albums by that composer.
3. Touch an album or All Songs to view a list of songs.
4. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Folders:

1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.
2. Touch a folder to view a list of all files.
3. Touch a file from the list to begin playback.

Podcasts : Touch to view the podcasts on the connected Apple device and get a list of podcast episodes.

Audiobooks:

1. Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the Apple device.
2. Touch an audiobook to get a list of chapters.
3. Touch the chapter from the list to begin playback.

File System and Naming

File systems supported by the USB may include:

- FAT32
- NTFS
- HFS+

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Media Playback and Mute

USB playback will be paused if the system is muted. If the steering wheel mute control is pressed again, playback will resume.

If the source is changed while in mute, playback resumes and audio will unmute.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Bluetooth Audio

Music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. See *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *159* or *Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone)* ⇨ *159* for help pairing a device.

Volume and song selection may be controlled by using the infotainment controls or the mobile device. If Bluetooth is selected and no volume is present, check the volume setting on the infotainment system.

Music can be launched by touching Bluetooth from the recent sources list on the left of the display or by touching the More option and then touching the Bluetooth device.

To play music via Bluetooth:

1. Power on the device, and pair to connect the device.
2. Once paired, touch Audio from the Home Page, then touch Bluetooth from the recent sources list on the left of the display.

Bluetooth Sound Menu

See "Infotainment System Sound Menu" under *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *130*.

Manage Bluetooth Devices

From the Home Page:

1. Touch Audio.
2. Touch Devices to add or delete devices.

When touching Bluetooth, the radio may not be able to launch the audio player on the connected device to start playing. When the vehicle is not moving, use the mobile device to begin playback.

All devices launch audio differently. When selecting Bluetooth as a source, the radio may show as paused on the display. Press play on the device or touch ▷ on the vehicle display to begin playback.

Browse functionality will be provided where supported by the Bluetooth device. This media content will not be part of the MyMedia source mode.

Some smartphones support sending Bluetooth music information to display on the radio. When the radio receives this information, it will check to see if any is available and display it. For more information about supported Bluetooth features, see your dealer.

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

If equipped, launch the Nav application by touching the Nav icon on the Home Page or on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the infotainment display.

When the Nav application is launched for the first time, a product walkthrough is available. Use of the feature requires the Terms and Conditions and the Privacy statement to be confirmed. If available and signed into a profile, it is also suggested to enable and confirm Predictive Navigation.

Predictive Navigation (If Equipped)

If Predictive Navigation is available and confirmed, this feature learns preferences by remembering where the vehicle has been. It uses the locations and navigation history to personalize routes and results.

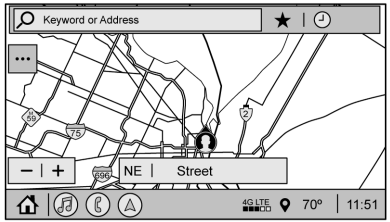
Predictive Navigation may learn elements such as:

- Personalized routes based on preferred streets.
- Search results that provide best matches at the top of the list.
- Predictive traffic.

- Local map content updating.

Predictive Navigation can also be enabled or disabled at a later time by touching ··· (Options). While in Options, touch Settings, then Map and Navigation Settings, and then Predictive Navigation.

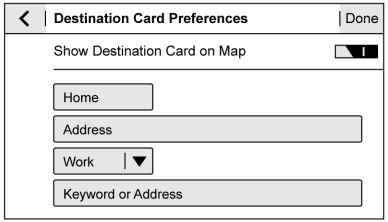
Navigation Map View



After opening the Nav application for the first time, the application will always open in full map view displaying the vehicle's current location. When the vehicle is stopped, the search bar will appear along the top of the navigation map view. Manually close the search bar by touching ✕. When the vehicle is moving, the 🔍 (Search) icon will replace the search bar to maximize the full map view.

Destination Card Preferences

From the Nav application, set up Home and Work addresses to enable one-touch navigation. To set up Home and Work addresses, touch ··· and select Settings, then Map and Navigation Settings, and then Destination Card Preferences. Show Destination Card on Map should be on by default. Select and enter Home and/or Work address and save.



If the vehicle's system is not signed into a customized profile, the current location icon uses a generic symbol. Once signed into a customized profile, the current location symbol will show a customized icon. See *Navigation Symbols* ⇨ *141*.

Map and Navigation Settings

Touch ··· while in the map view to display options. The following may display:

- 3D Heading Up, 2D Heading Up, 2D North Up
- Show on Map
- Traffic Events (available with Connected Navigation)
- Settings
- Edit Destination (if a route has been set)
- Avoid on Route (if a route has been set)

Touch Settings to view Map and Navigation Settings. The following may display:

- Destination Card Preferences
- Map Preferences
- Route Preferences
- Navigation Voice Control
- Traffic Preferences
- Alert Preferences
- Fuel Grade Preferences
- Manage History
- Predictive Navigation: See "Predictive Navigation (If Equipped)" previously in this section.
- About

To exit a list, touch ✕ in the top right corner to return to the main map view.

Make sure to set up preferences before setting a destination and starting active guidance.

Map Preferences

Touch to choose between basic map feature configurations:

Map Colors

- Auto – Touch to automatically change modes based on lighting conditions.
- Day (Light)
- Night (Dark)

3D Landmarks (Default is On) : Touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will display all 3D Landmarks on the map depending on the zoom level.

3D Buildings (Default is Off) : Touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will display all of the possible 3D building shapes on the map depending on the zoom level.

Show Terrain in 3D (Default is Off) : If equipped, touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will display terrain information on the map in 3D view.

Auto-Zoom (Default is On) : Touch On or Off. When turned on, the system will automatically adjust the zoom level when the vehicle is approaching a turn. After the turn is completed, the system automatically brings the zoom back to the originally set level. If the vehicle is approaching a turn with the next turn occurring shortly after, the Auto-Zoom will remain on until both turns are completed.

Route Preferences

Touch to access the Route Preferences. The choices are:

- Preferred Route – Choose from two different route options: Fastest or Eco-Friendly.
  - Fastest would be the route with the shortest drive time.
  - Eco-Friendly would be the most fuel-efficient route.
- Avoid on Route – Choose any of the road features to avoid while on route:
  - Highways
  - Unpaved Roads
  - Ferries
  - Carpool Lanes
  - Toll Roads
  - Tunnels
  - Country Borders

Navigation Voice Control

Touch to access the voice control setting display.

- Navigation Volume – To adjust the volume level, touch the up and down arrows. If the voice guidance prompt is being heard, volume can also be adjusted using the knob on the center stack or the volume switch on the steering wheel.
- Navigation Voice Prompt Level During a Call. Options available are:
  - Full Prompt (Selected by default)
  - Tone Only
  - None

Traffic Events (If Equipped)

This feature provides a list of events that are on the route or nearby. Touch ••• and then select Traffic Events. A connected Navigation service plan is required.

Traffic Preferences (If Equipped)

While in Map View, touch •••, then Settings and then Map and Navigation Settings to access Traffic Preferences. When Show Traffic on Map is turned on, the feature

provides an overview of the traffic flow using different coded colors. The following options are available for rerouting:

- Auto Reroute to Better Route – The system will automatically reroute if the system detects there is a traffic issue ahead.
- Ask Before Rerouting (Default) – If the system detects there is a traffic issue ahead, it will display a pop-up with details about the issue. Choose to reroute or cancel the alert.
- Never Search for Better Route – The system will not check for a better route until one of the above options is selected.

Alert Preferences

Set alerts on or off during both inactive and active guidance views. The following alerts may be available:

- Road Safety Alerts – Touch to display upcoming School Zones.
- Traffic Camera Alerts

Manage History

Touch Manage History to access the History options:

- Clear Recent Destinations – Touch ⊗ to clear the recent destinations.
- Clear Search History – Touch ⊗ to clear the search history.

About

Touch to display software information, such as:

- Telenav Terms and Conditions
- Telenav Privacy Statement
- Navigation Version

Maps

The Navigation application requires a map database to run. It is stored on an SD card that is connected to the infotainment system. If the map database is not available, a missing SD card error message will be displayed.

SD Card Error Messages

The SD card only works for one unique vehicle. The SD card must pass authentication verification to be used for that specific vehicle. If the SD card has a switch that can be set to read-only mode, ensure that it is in the upward position and not in read-only.

Potential error scenarios and messages include:

- The SD card has initialized for the first time: "Once initialized, this SD card can only be used for navigation in this vehicle."
- The SD card is not working properly: "SD card is not functioning properly. (Error Code)."

  See your dealer if this message appears.
- The SD card is not paired with the existing system: "This SD card is not valid in this vehicle for navigation. See Owner's Manual for more detail or visit your dealer. (Error Code)."
- The SD card has been removed from the slot: "SD card has been removed. (Error Code)."

  Make sure the SD card is in the slot. If it was removed and inserted and you still receive an error code, see your dealer.

Touch Confirm to resume after the initialization error message. For the other messages, touch OK to return to the Home Page.

Navigation Symbols

Following are the most common symbols that may appear in the Nav application.



This indicates the vehicle's current location and direction on the map.



This is the vehicle's current location icon during inactive guidance mode. Once a user profile is created, the current location icon can be customized.

This icon indicates the vehicle's current location and direction on the map.



The destination pin marks the location of the final destination. Touch the pin to view the destination address or to add it or remove it from the Favorites list. Hide the information by touching the pin one more time. It will automatically time out if no action is taken.



If equipped, smart Points of Interest (POIs) are places of interest for parking and gas stations.



The progress bar provides an overview of the route progress and may show traffic and incidents along the way. As the route proceeds, the vehicle icon moves up the bar.

Touch the icon to zoom out on the map and view the entire route. Touch it again to return to the previous view.

View the drive time by touching the estimated time of arrival (ETA).

Current Location

When the vehicle is parked and not in a Navigation session, the user icon is centered on the map view, highlighting the current location.

Destination

Receiving Destination Directions from Different Sources

Destinations can be received or transferred from different sources to the Nav application for route guidance. If equipped, some of these sources may include:

- Navigation from search results.
- An address from the Contacts list.
- An application on the smartphone that can send destinations to the vehicle.

Waypoints

Add up to five waypoints, which are additional destinations, along the route. To add an additional stop or waypoint:

1. From active guidance, touch .
2. Search for the destination using One-Box, Voice search, or the Quick Category icons.
3. Choose search results Along Route, Nearby, or Near Destination.
4. Choose the desired waypoint and touch Add to Trip or replace the current destination by touching New Destination.

Route options are not available for waypoints.

Arriving at a Waypoint

When approaching a waypoint, the system will display a Destination Arrival view. To continue on to the next destination touch the Drive to message on the infotainment display.

If the vehicle passes the waypoint or gets out of the current route, the system will automatically reroute back to this waypoint. At the same time, it will show a Drive to icon along with the next waypoint address so the current waypoint can be skipped and guidance can resume to the next waypoint or destination.

Editing a Waypoint

When waypoints are added during active guidance, the system allows a stop to be deleted or the order to be changed. To edit a waypoint:

1. Touch .
2. Touch Edit Destinations.
   - Modify destination order by touching and holding the arrow until it is highlighted. Drag to move the waypoint up or down the list.
   - Delete a waypoint by touching . A pop-up will appear to confirm waypoint removal. Once the request is confirmed, the system will remove the address from the destinations list. Touch X on the top right corner so the system can recalculate the route.

     If there is only one address in the destinations list, the system will disable the move and delete functions. The system will not allow the final destination to be deleted.

Map Information

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for map information. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Places of Interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, gas stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments.

If the vehicle does not have an applicable service plan, the map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after production. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

Zoom Control

The zoom control display is shown on the map view. A few ways to zoom in or out are:

- Touch + or – to zoom in or out on the map.
- Double tap with one finger to zoom in or single tap with two fingers to zoom out on the map.

- Use the index finger and thumb to zoom out by pinching and then zoom in by spreading those two fingers on the map.

Map Gestures and Map Scale

Use the following gestures on the infotainment display to adjust the map scale and display options.

- Pinch to zoom in or out.
- Pan the map.
- Use two fingers to tilt down and change from 2D to 3D. Tilt up to change back to 2D.
- Rotate the map.

See *Using the System* ⇨ *128*.

Mute

When in active guidance, the audio prompts while using navigation can be muted. Touch the speaker icon on the right side of the upper bar. A slash will appear on the speaker to indicate voice guidance is muted.

Active Guidance View

When a destination is chosen and a navigation session is active, the navigation system enters into an Active Guidance View (AGV).

Map Orientation

Touch ··· on the map to access map orientation settings. Map orientation is 3D Heading Up by default.

Available settings are:

- 3D Heading Up (Default): 3D map with the vehicle pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will always head up and the map will rotate around it.
- 2D Heading Up: 2D map with the vehicle pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will always head up and the map will rotate around it.
- 2D North Up: 2D map with North pointing up. In this mode, the current location icon will shift as the vehicle turns left and right.

Touch the icon to change the map type. The icon and label will also update accordingly.

Depending on the zoom level of the 2D Heading Up and 3D Heading Up maps, the system may automatically switch to the 2D North Up map.

When in AGV, the entire route can be viewed in 2D North Up by touching the traffic bar. The map will zoom out and readjust to display the full route. When in 2D North Up Route View, the Recenter icon will appear in the middle of the display. Touch either the Recenter icon or the traffic bar again to return to the previous view, either 2D or 3D.

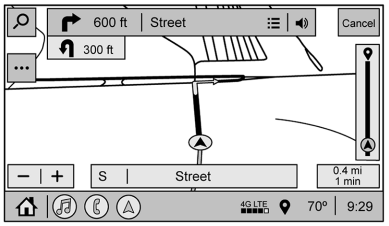
Lane Guidance

The map will display the lane information for the upcoming maneuver if it is available.

Junction View

When a vehicle is on the highway and approaching the exit, an image displays the lane that the vehicle must stay in to complete the next maneuver.

Quick-Turn View



When the vehicle is approaching a turn with the next turn following in quick succession, a quick-turn list appears below the primary turn indicator. An audio prompt will announce the quick turn.

Auto-Zoom

When approaching a maneuver, the map will automatically zoom in to show both the vehicle icon and the upcoming maneuver to give a better view of the maneuver. Once the maneuver is complete, the system will zoom back to the previous zoom level.

Touch ··· on the map to access Settings, then touch Map Preferences to access Auto-Zoom. This feature can be enabled or disabled.

Directions

Touch the menu option next to the next turn street name to display Directions.

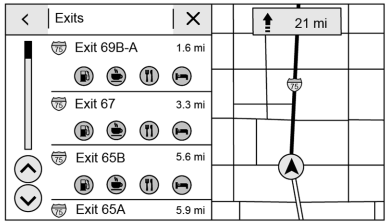
Directions displays the turns and directions from the current location to the final destination.

Editing Directions

Directions can be edited by choosing ✎, which expands the list to fill the display and enters the Edit Mode. While in Edit Mode, an unwanted route segment can be removed from the route by touching 🗑 next to the segment. A pop-up appears to confirm segment removal.

When the route segment has been removed, all segments are replaced by an activity indicator while the new route is recalculated. When the recalculation is complete, the activity indicator is replaced with the new route segments.

Highway Exits List



Touch ⅄ to open the Exit list. This icon displays next to the current street name near the bottom of the display. The icon only appears when on a highway with defined exits.

While traveling on roads with designated exits, an Exit list may be available. The Exit list displays the exit number, distance to the exit from the current vehicle position, and convenience stops that may be available, such as gas, coffee, food, and lodging.

Next Maneuver Menu

When in Active Guidance, the Next Maneuver Turn Arrow, Street Name, and Maneuver Distance are shown in the Next Maneuver at the top of the display overlaying the map. ETA, Distance to Destination, and Traffic Indicator are displayed in a panel pinned on the right of the display.

Navigation Next Turn Maneuver Alert

If the Navigation application is not open when a near maneuver prompt is given, it is shown as an alert. Touch the alert to go to the main navigation view or touch ✕ to dismiss the alert.

Repeat Voice Guidance



This symbol indicates the next guidance maneuver. Touch it to repeat the last spoken guidance instruction.

Incident Alert (If Equipped)

During active guidance, if the system determines that there is an incident ahead but there is not a better route, the system will play a tone and show a Quick Notice. This will only show once per incident.

Incident Reports (If Equipped)

Incident report icons, along with traffic flow data, display on the map during both active and inactive guidance.

End Route

Touch Cancel at the top right corner to end active guidance and return to inactive guidance. If active guidance is canceled before the destination has been reached, a pop-up option to Resume Trip will appear.

Resume Trip

The trip can be resumed if it was canceled by touching the Resume Trip pop-up option. If the system has determined that the destination has been reached, either because the arrival view displayed or the destination has been passed, the Resume Trip option will not appear.

Favorites

The navigation favorites can have contacts, addresses, or POIs that have been saved through the favorite icon on the details view.

Accessing Favorites

In the Nav application, view the Favorites list by touching ☆ in the search bar along the top of the Nav map view. If the search bar is closed, touch 🔍 and select ☆.

Saving Favorites

Favorites can be added from a number of the system's applications. Touch the favorites icon to save content as a favorite.

Renaming Navigation Favorites

1. Touch the Settings icon on the Home Page and touch the System tab.
2. Touch Favorites to access the Manage Favorites option.
3. Touch a saved Navigation favorite to access the edit icon. Touch the edit icon to rename the favorite.
4. Touch Save to store the renamed favorite.

Recents

Touch 🕘 to access a list of recent destinations.

Recenter Position Icon

Touch the Recenter Position arrow in the middle of the map view to reset the map to the current location.

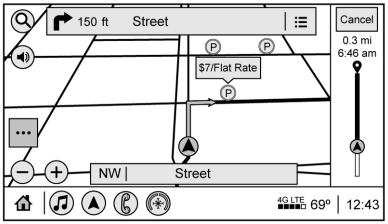
Last Parked Location

The Last Parked Location is the last location the vehicle engine was turned off. That location is displayed in the first row of the Recents list. Touching the last Parked Location shows the Address Details view to either save the address or drive to it. The Last Parked Location can be deleted by entering the Edit display. Once the Last Parked Location is deleted, it no longer appears in the Recents list, unless the vehicle is started at that location again.

Show POI Icons

To see the POI categories, touch Options, then touch Show on Map. Up to eight categories of icons can be selected.

Smart POI Icons on Map (If Equipped)



The smart POI icons such as fuel stations and parking may appear based on time, location, driver search behavior, driving conditions, and vehicle conditions.

Touch a smart POI icon to open the corresponding details:

- Left side: Name and address of the POI.
- Right side: + ETE (Estimated Time Enroute.)

Smart Fuel Station Icons

Fuel station prices are shown if available for nearby stations when the vehicle is low on fuel.

Smart Parking Icons

When reaching a densely populated destination and the system determines that parking may be limited, the system will attempt to display nearby parking destinations with pricing information, if available.

Report an Issue Using POI Details (If Equipped)

In the POI details page, a POI issue can be reported if the data is not accurate or the address is incorrect. Touch Report an Issue near the bottom of the display to access the issue selection page. Touch one of the predefined issues on the selection page, then touch Send. The system will send the information for analysis.

Search

Touch Search on the infotainment display to open the search display. It has a search field entry box, quick category icon shortcuts, recents icon, favorites icon, and keyboard.

Auto Complete

Enter a partial location in the field entry box on the search display. Auto complete will attempt to complete the destination based on what is being entered. Touch the suggested item to search.

Search While in Motion with No Front Seat Passenger Present

The search display will not allow changes or text input with the keyboard when the vehicle is in motion. As a result, a display showing three rows of the most commonly used categories appears. Touching the search box will activate speech recognition.

Search While in Motion with Front Seat Passenger Present

If the system detects that the front seat passenger is present with both driver and passenger seat belts buckled, touching the search icon will display an alert message that allows the passenger to search for a destination as if the vehicle were stopped.

Connected Navigation

Connected Navigation is a subscription service that enables certain capabilities within the navigation system, such as Traffic, Smart Search/Routing, and Predictive

Navigation capabilities. The system will show an alert when the subscription is expiring and will ask to renew the plan.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

If equipped, the position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears in the status bar.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ *147* and *If the System Needs Service* ⇨ *148*.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is traveling on winding roads or long, straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is traveling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tire chains are installed on the vehicle.
- The tires are replaced or worn.
- The tire pressure for the tires is incorrect.
- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery has been disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.

- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.
- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps* ⇨ *140*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstructions.

If the System Needs Service

If the navigation system needs service, see your dealer.

Map Data Updates

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced. The map data is updated periodically, provided that the map information has changed and the vehicle has a relevant service plan.

See your dealer for details on ordering, purchasing, and installing a new or replacement SD card. Features are subject to change.

If the vehicle is equipped with Connected Navigation, which is a subscription service that enables certain features of the navigation system, such as Traffic, Smart Search/Routing, and Predictive Navigation, then the system will download the latest map data from the cloud.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others. If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates* ⇨ *148*.

Voice Recognition

If equipped, voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio, and mobile device applications. This feature can be started by pressing on the steering wheel or by touching on the infotainment display with the navigation application.

However, not all features within these areas are supported by voice commands. Generally, only complex tasks that require multiple manual interactions to complete are supported by voice commands.

For example, tasks that take more than one or two touches, such as a song or artist to play from a media device, would be supported by voice commands. Other tasks, like adjusting the volume or seeking up or down, are audio features that are easily performed by touching one or two options, and are not supported by voice commands.

In general there are flexible ways to speak commands for completing the tasks.

Try stating a One-Shot command, such as "Directions to address <number, street, city, country>." Another example of a One-Shot Destination Entry command is, "Directions to Place of Interest at <hotel>." If these commands do not work, try saying, "Take me to Place of Interest" or "Find address" and the system will walk you through by asking additional questions.

Using Voice Recognition

Voice recognition becomes available once the system has been initialized. This begins when the ignition is turned on. Initialization may take a few moments.

1. Press on the steering wheel controls to activate voice recognition.
2. The audio system mutes and the system plays a prompt.
3. Clearly speak one of the commands described in this section.

   A voice recognition system prompt can be interrupted while it is playing by pressing again.

   For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, to speak the command without waiting for the prompt to complete and press again.

Once voice recognition is started, both the infotainment display and instrument cluster show the selections and visual dialog content. These displays can be turned on or off in the Tutorial Mode under *Settings* ⇨ *164*.

There are three voice prompt modes supported:

- Informative verbal prompts: This type of prompt will provide more information regarding the supported actions.
- Short prompts: This type of prompt will provide simple instructions about what can be stated.
- Auto informative prompts: This type of prompt plays during the first few speech sessions, then automatically switches to the short prompt after some experience has been gained through using the system.

If a command is not spoken, the voice recognition system says a help prompt.

Prompts and Infotainment Displays

While a voice recognition session is active, there may be corresponding options showing on the displays. A selection can be made by manually touching the option, or by speaking the number for the option to select. Manual interaction in the voice recognition session is permitted. Interaction during a voice session may be completed entirely using voice commands while some manual commands may expedite a task. If a selection is made using a manual control, the voice recognition dialog will progress in the same way as if the selection were made using a voice command. Once the system completes the task, or the session is terminated, the voice recognition dialog stops.

An example of this type of manual intervention is touching an entry of a displayed number list instead of speaking the number associated with the entry desired.

Canceling Voice Recognition

- Touch or say "Cancel" or "Exit" to terminate the voice recognition session and show the display where voice recognition was initiated.
- Press on the steering wheel controls to terminate the voice recognition session and show the display where voice recognition was initiated.

Natural Language Commands

Most languages do not support natural language commands in sentence form. For those languages, use direct commands like the examples shown on the display.

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

Voice recognition can understand commands that are naturally stated in sentence form or direct commands that state the application and the task.

For best results:

- Listen for the prompt before saying a command or reply.
- Speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow.
- Use direct commands without a lot of extra words. For example, "Call <name> at work," "Play" followed by the artist or song name, or "Tune" followed by the radio station number.
- Navigation destinations can be made in a single command using keywords. A few examples are: "I want directions to an address," "I need to find a Place of Interest or (POI)," or "Find contact." The system responds by requesting more details. For other POIs, say the name of a category like "Restaurants," "Shopping Malls," or "Hospitals."
- Navigating to a destination outside of the current country takes more than one command. The first command is to tell the system where the navigation will take place, such as an Address, Intersection, POI, or Contact. If Address or Intersection is selected, the second command is to say, "Change Country." Once the system responds, say the country before saying the rest of the address and/or intersection.

  If POI is asked for, say "Change Location," then "Change Country."

Direct commands might be more clearly understood by the system. An example of a direct command would be "Call <number>." Examples of these direct commands are displayed on most of the screens while a voice session is active. If "Phone" or "Phone Commands" is spoken, the system understands that a phone call is requested and will respond with questions until enough details are gathered to make a call. If a cell phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example "Call <name> at work."

Using Voice Recognition for List Options

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt will ask to confirm or select an option from that list.

When a display contains a list, there may be options that are available but not displayed. The list on a voice recognition screen functions the same as a list on other displays. Scrolling or flinging can be used to help display other entries from the list.

Manually scrolling or paging the list on a display during a voice recognition session suspends the current voice recognition event and plays the prompt "Please select manually or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to try again."

If manual selection takes more than 15 seconds, the session terminates and prompts that it has timed out. The display returns to the display where voice recognition was initiated.

The Back Command

Say "Back" or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to go to the previous display.

If in voice recognition, and "Back" is spoken all the way back to the starting display, and then "Back" is spoken one more time, the voice recognition session will cancel.

Help

Say "Help" on any voice recognition display and the help prompt for the display is played.

Touching while the help prompt is playing will terminate the prompt. Doing this will stop the help prompt so that a voice command can be used.

Voice Recognition for the Radio

If browsing the audio sources when voice is touched, the voice recognition commands for AM, FM, and DAB (if equipped) are available.

"Switch to AM" : Switch bands to AM and tune to the last AM radio station.

"Switch to FM" : Switch bands to FM and tune to the last FM radio station.

"Switch to DAB" : Switch bands to DAB and tune to the last DAB radio station.

"Tune to <AM frequency> AM" : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like "nine fifty").

"Tune to <FM frequency> FM" : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like "one oh one point one").

"Tune to <DAB station name> DAB" : Tune to the radio station name.

Voice Recognition for Audio MyMedia

The available voice recognition commands for [browsing] MyMedia are:

"Play Artist" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific artist name.

"Play Artist <artist name>" : Begin playback of a specific artist.

"Play Album" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific album name.

"Play Album <album name>" : Begin playback of a specific album.

"Play Song" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific song name.

"Play Song <song name>" : Begin playback of a specific song, if available.

"Play Genre" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific genre.

"Play Genre <genre name>" : Begin playback of a specific genre.

"Play Playlist" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific playlist name.

"Play Playlist <playlist name>" : Begin playback of a specific playlist.

"Play <device name>" : Play music from a specific device identified by name. The device name is the name displayed when the device is first selected as an audio source.

"Play Chapter" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

"Play Chapter <chapter name>" : Begin playback of a specific chapter.

"Play Audiobook" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific audiobook.

"Play Audiobook <audiobook name>" : Begin playback of a specific audiobook.

"Play Episode" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific name.

"Play Episode <episode name>" : Begin playback of a specific episode.

"Play Podcast" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific podcast.

"Play Podcast <podcast name>" : Begin playback of a specific podcast.

"My Media" : Begin a dialog to enter the desired media content.

Handling Large Amounts of Media Content

It is expected that large amounts of media content will be brought into the vehicle. It may be necessary to handle large amounts of media content in a different way than smaller amounts of media. The system may limit the options of voice recognition by not allowing selection of files by voice at the highest level if the number of files exceeds the maximum limit.

Changes to voice commands due to media content limits are:

- Files including other individual files of all media types such as songs, audiobook chapters, podcast episodes, and videos.
- Album type folders including types such as albums and audiobooks.

There are no restrictions if the number of files and albums is fewer than 12,000. When the number of files connected to the system is between 12,000 and 24,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like "Play <song name>."

The restriction is that the command "Play Song" must be spoken first; the system will then ask for the song name. The reply command would be to say the name of the song to play.

Similar limits exist for album content. If there are more than 12,000 albums, but fewer than 24,000, the content cannot be accessed directly with one command like, "Play <album name>." The command "Play Album" must first be spoken; the system will then ask for the album name. The reply would be to say the name of the album to play.

Once the number of files has exceeded approximately 24,000, there is no support for accessing the songs directly through voice commands. There will still be access to the media content by using commands for playlists, artists, and genres.

The access commands for playlists, artists, and genres are prohibited after the number of this type of media exceeds 12,000.

The system will provide feedback the first time voice recognition is initiated if it has become apparent that any of these limits are reached during a device initializing process.

Voice recognition performance will degrade to some extent based on many factors when adding large amounts of data to recognize. If so, accessing songs through playlists or artist name may work better.

Voice Recognition for Navigation (If Equipped)

"Navigation" : Begin a dialog to enter specific destination information.

"Navigation Commands" : Begin a dialog to enter specific destination information.

"Address" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination address, which includes the entire address consisting of the house number, street name, city, and country.

"Place of Interest" : Begin a dialog to enter a destination Place of Interest category or major brand name.

The name must be precisely spoken. Nicknames or short names for the businesses will not likely be found. Lesser

known businesses might have to be located by category, such as fast food, hotels, or banks.

"Navigate to Contact" : Begin a dialog to enter a specific destination contact name.

"Cancel Route" : End route guidance.

"Take Me Home" : Create a route to a stored home location.

Voice Recognition for the Phone

"Call <contact name>" : Initiate a call to a stored contact. The command may include location if the contact has location numbers stored.

"Call <contact> At Home," "At Work," "On Mobile," or "On Other" : Initiate a call to a stored contact and location at home, at work, on mobile device, or on another phone.

"Call <cell phone number>" : Initiate a call to a cell phone number of seven digits, 10 digits, or three digit emergency numbers.

"Pair Phone" : Begin the Bluetooth pairing process. Follow the instructions on the infotainment display.

"Redial" : Initiate a call to the last dialed number.

"Switch Phone" : Select a different connected cell phone for outgoing calls.

"Voice Keypad" : Begin a dialog to enter special numbers like international numbers. The numbers can be entered in groups of digits with each group of digits being repeated back by the system. If the group of digits is not correct, the command "Delete" will remove the last group of digits and allow them to be re-entered. Once the entire number has been entered, the command "Call" will start dialing the number.

Phone Assistant Voice Recognition

Press and hold on the steering wheel controls to pass through and launch Google phone assistant or Siri.

For the low radio, whether connected by Bluetooth or phone projection, the only available voice recognition is either Siri (iPhone) or the Google Assistant (Android).

Performance Data Recorder (PDR)

If equipped, the PDR icon displays on the infotainment home screen.

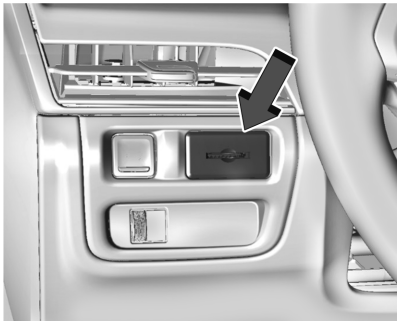
Important Information

Read before using PDR. All or some of the information may apply to your country:

- Use of the Performance Data Recorder (PDR System) may be prohibited or legally restricted in certain countries and situations. It is your own responsibility to ensure compliance with applicable laws and regulations, including but not limited to privacy laws, laws related to camera surveillance and recordings, road traffic and security laws, and laws on the protection of publicity and personality rights.
- You are solely liable for operation of your vehicle and use of the PDR System, including all related legal responsibilities. Use of the PDR System may be prohibited or legally restricted in certain countries and situations. Vehicles equipped with the PDR System are intended for use on private tracks only and may under local laws and regulations be restricted or completely excluded from use in areas accessible by the public, such as public roads. It is your own responsibility to ensure compliance with applicable laws and regulations, including but not limited to privacy laws, laws related to camera

surveillance and recordings, road traffic and security laws, and laws on the protection of publicity and personality rights. You may need a permit, license, or other approval from local authorities in order to comply with applicable laws and regulations.

- Do not use the PDR System if this could distract your attention from traffic or entail other risks.
- Do not rely exclusively on camera footage for steering the vehicle.
- Comply with any notice and consent requirements before capturing and/or recording the voices or images of other persons or collecting other personal data with the PDR System.
- Notify other drivers of your vehicle of the above rules and require them to comply with them.
- General Motors does not accept any responsibility or liability in connection with an impermissible use of the PDR System.
- Please note that law enforcement authorities may have the right to seize video recordings and use them as evidence of criminal/driving offences against you or third parties.
- The PDR System captures and records any sound perceivable within the vehicle, including any conversations among vehicle occupants. Hidden recording of conversations may be an offence under certain jurisdictions. Therefore, all vehicle users and occupants must be informed about ongoing audio recording upon activation of the PDR System.



The PDR records video, audio, and vehicle data. This data is stored on a removable SD card located to the left of the steering wheel.

The recorded data is not stored anywhere else and is only accessible from the SD card.

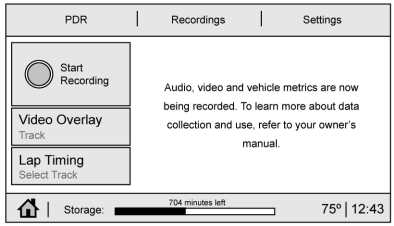
To optimize PDR performance, it is recommended that the SD card is formatted on a regular basis. Back up all recordings on the SD card prior to formatting. Formatting the SD card will delete all saved recordings.

If a system error code is seen on the display, such as "System Error Code ####", please check the health of the SD card. It may need to be reformatted or replaced. If the issue persists, please see your dealer.

To begin, insert an exFAT formatted SD card, Class 10 required, 16 GB or larger recommended, into the SD card reader located to the left of the steering wheel.

Touch the PDR icon to access the PDR menu. The options displayed are:

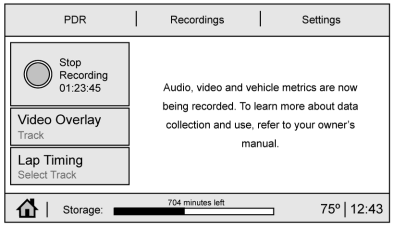
Start Recording



If the system is unable to begin recording, the Start Recording button is grayed out.

Touch Start Recording to begin recording. After recording begins, this button changes to Stop Recording. Touch to stop the recording session.

The recording must be stopped and the file closed before removing the SD card, or the recording cannot be reviewed.

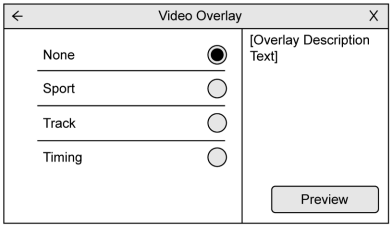


The elapsed time will show when recording.

The following errors or warnings may be displayed while recording:

- Storage Full
- No Storage Available
- System Error
- SD Card Error
- SD Card Speed Insufficient
- GPS Accuracy Warning
- SD Card Write Protected

Video Overlay



Touch Video Overlay to display the menu screen.

Touching preview provides a live preview of the overlay selected.

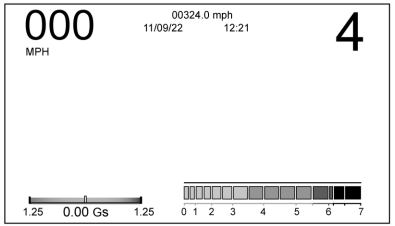
Select one:

- None
- Sport
- Track
- Timing

None:

No vehicle data displays on top of the recorded video. Vehicle data is still available with the video when accessed in the toolbox software. See www.cadillac.com to download Toolbox Software.

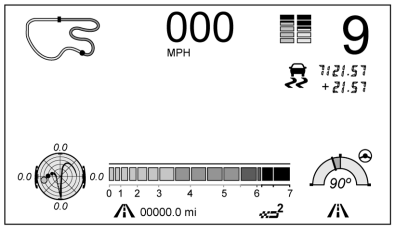
Sport:



Displays these vehicle metrics:

- Vehicle Speed: Up to three digits are displayed in km/h or MPH depending on vehicle settings.
- Engine Revolutions Per Minute (rpm): The horizontal bar shows current rpm. As the rpm increases, the backfill follows.
- Transmission State (Current Gear): Transmissions display 1, 2, etc.
- Lateral G-Force Graphic: Left and Right G-Forces are displayed. The graphic fills to the left or the right depending on the measure value. The measured G-Force displays as a number at the top of the graphic.
- Event Odometer: This displays the distance driven since the recording began.

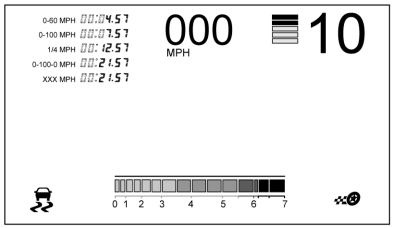
Track:



Displays these vehicle metrics:

- Vehicle Speed: Same as Sport.
- GPS Tracking Map: Shows the vehicle's current position relative to a known route.
- Engine Revolutions Per Minute (rpm): The horizontal bar shows current rpm. As the rpm increases, the backfill follows.
- Transmission State (Current Gear): Same as Sport.
- Friction Bubble Graphic: Lateral and longitudinal G-Forces are displayed as a dot within a bubble. A red dot displays when the vehicle starts braking and turns green when the vehicle accelerates. The dot is white when the vehicle is not moving. A white dot is the default.
- Brake and Throttle Graphic: Displays the percentage value of brake and throttle pedal position from 0–100%.
- Steering Angle: The graphic fills from the center to the left or right depending on the direction of steering. The numerical steering angle displays below the graphic.
- Active Handling Active Indicator: The graphic only displays if the active handling systems are activated.
- Performance Traction Management (PTM) Mode: Displays the current PTM mode. The options are Wet, Dry, Sport 1, Sport 2, or Race.
- Current Lap Time: Displays the elapsed lap time if the finish line is defined and the vehicle has crossed the defined finish line at least once.
- Event Odometer: This displays the distance driven since the recording began.
- Drive Mode: Displays the vehicle's current drive mode.

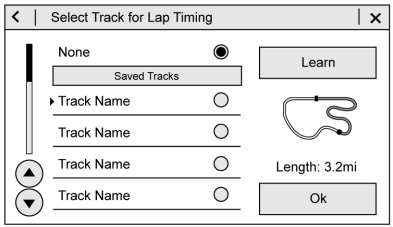
Timing:



Displays these vehicle metrics:

- Vehicle Speed: Same as Sport.
- Engine Revolutions Per Minute (rpm): Same as Sport.
- Transmission State (Current Gear): Same as Sport.
- 0–100 km/h (0–60 mph), 0–200 km/h (0–100 mph), 400 m (1/4 th mi), and 0–200–0 km/h (0–100–0 mph): The timer starts recording as soon as the vehicle accelerates. As the vehicle passes each speed and distance milestone, it is displayed on the overlay.
- Throttle Position: Displays the percentage of throttle applied from 0–100%.
- Active Handling Active Indicator: The graphic only displays if the active handling systems are activated.

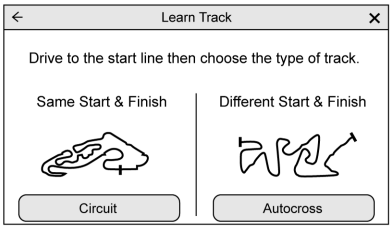
Lap Timing



Touch Lap Timing on the PDR tab to display the track selection screen.

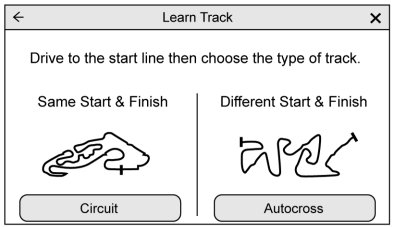
- Select Custom Track, then Learn to create a new custom track for lap timing.
- Select Custom Track, then Relearn if a custom track has already been defined and is available on the storage device.
- Only one track can be learned during each recording session. To learn a new track, end the current recording and start a new one.

Custom Track Learning - Circuit



- Select Circuit, when at the starting line, as the track type. The starting line is located at the current vehicle position.
- Circuit track learning will complete automatically when the vehicle crosses the start/finish line.
- After the Learning Process is complete, press Continue to go back to the Home Screen or Relearn to attempt to learn again.
- Touching X in the upper right corner will exit the track learning process.

Custom Track Learning - Autocross

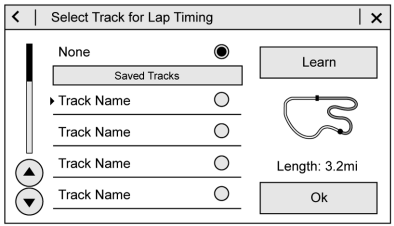


- Select Autocross, when at the starting line, as the track type. The starting line is located at the current vehicle position.
- Drive along the course and press Finish when the vehicle has reached the Finish Line.
- After the Learning Process is complete, press Continue to go back to the Home Screen or Relearn to attempt to learn again.
- Touching X in the upper right corner will exit the track learning process.

Lap Timing - Saved Tracks

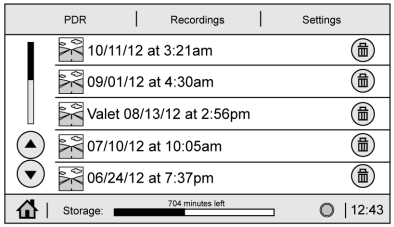
- Saved tracks will be named by the PDR as custom.gpx.

- Saved tracks can be renamed by placing the SD card in a computer and overwriting the time/date name to a user-friendly name. Do not change or delete the file extension (.gpx).



To begin timing an existing track, scroll to the desired track and select OK. The PDR tab will be displayed.

Recordings

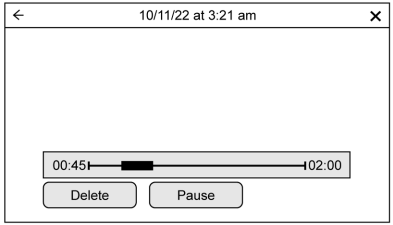


Touch the Recordings tab. The recordings will be displayed with the most recent on top. Select the recording to start playback.

Recordings may be deleted by selecting the trash can. Select yes to delete or no to cancel.

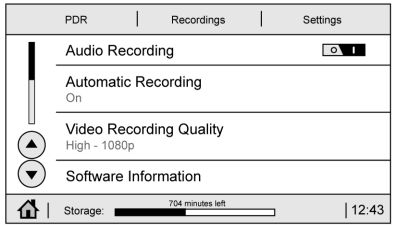
Video Playback is not allowed while the vehicle is moving.

Tap on the screen while the video is playing to display the video playback controls.



Video Scrubber : Changes the position and playback. The length of the bar corresponds to the time of the video. Advance or rewind the video by dragging along the bar.

Settings



Touch the Settings tab to view the Settings menu.

- Audio Recording - Select on or off to record audio with the recorded video.
- Automatic Recording - When on, the PDR will automatically begin recording whenever the vehicle is in the Run Power Mode. Configurations include:
  - Automatic Recording Video Quality
  - While in Valet Mode only
  - Whether to allow recording overwrite when the storage is full
- Video Quality - Low (480p), or High (1080p). Higher quality will result in larger recording files.
- Software Information - Displays PDR Software Information and Version numbers.

- SD Card Information - Size, Remaining Memory, Format, and Speed.

Toolbox

See www.cadillac.com to download Toolbox Software.

Phone

Bluetooth (Overview)

The Bluetooth-capable system can interact with many mobile devices, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the device's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the mobile device. Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries.
  If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.
- Pair mobile device(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all mobile devices. See "Pairing" later in this section.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable mobile device with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while the ignition is on or in accessory mode. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m (30 ft). Not all mobile devices support all functions and not all mobile devices work with the Bluetooth system. See your dealer for more information about compatible mobile devices.

Controls

Use the controls on the center stack and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

: Press to answer incoming calls and start voice recognition on your connected Bluetooth mobile device.

: Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Overview* ⇨ *126*.

Audio System

When using the Bluetooth mobile device system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. The volume level while on a mobile device call can be adjusted by pressing the steering wheel controls or the volume control on the center stack. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The volume cannot be lowered beyond a certain level.

Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone)

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile device must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be

used. See the mobile device manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the device.

Pairing Information

- If no mobile device has been connected, the Phone main page on the infotainment display will show the Connect Phone option. Touch this option to connect. Another way to connect is to touch the Phones tab at the top right of the display and then touch Add Phone.
- A Bluetooth smartphone with music capability can be paired to the vehicle as a smartphone and a music player at the same time.
- Up to 10 devices can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the cell phone changes or the cell phone is deleted from the system.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired cell phone that is set to First to Connect. If there is no cell phone set to First to Connect, it will link to the cell phone which was used last. To link to a different paired cell phone, see "Linking to a Different Phone" later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Make sure Bluetooth has been enabled on the cell phone before the pairing process is started.
2. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
3. Touch Phones at the top of the infotainment display. There is also a Connect Phones option in the middle of the Phone display which will shortcut to the Phone List menu.
4. Touch Add Phone.
5. Select the vehicle name shown on the infotainment display from your cell phone's Bluetooth Settings list.
6. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to confirm the six-digit code showing on the infotainment display and touch Pair. The code on the cell phone and infotainment display will need to be acknowledged for a successful pair.
7. Start the pairing process on the cell phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the cell phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process. Once the cell phone is paired, it will show under Connected.
8. If the vehicle name does not appear on your cell phone, there are a few ways to start the pairing process over:
   - Turn the cell phone off and then back on.
   - Go back to the beginning of the Phone menus on the infotainment display and restart the pairing process.
   - Reset the cell phone, but this step should be done as a last effort.
9. If the cell phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, touch Always Accept and Allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
10. Repeat Steps 1–8 to pair additional cell phones.

First to Connect Paired Phones

If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired cell phone that is set as First to Connect. To enable a paired cell phone as the First to Connect phone:

1. Make sure the cell phone is turned on.

2. Touch Settings, then touch System.
3. Touch Phones to access all paired and all connected cell phones and mobile devices.
4. Touch the information icon or pencil icon to the right of the cell phone to open the cell phone's settings menu.
5. Touch the First to Connect option, to enable the setting for that device.

Cell phones and mobile devices can be added, removed, connected, and disconnected. A sub-menu will display whenever a request is made to add or manage cell phones and mobile devices.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.

Disconnecting a Connected Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the information icon or the pencil icon next to the connected cell phone or mobile device to show the cell phone's or mobile device's information display.
4. Touch Disconnect.

Deleting a Paired Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the information icon or the pencil icon next to the connected cell phone to display the cell phone's or mobile device's information display.
4. Touch Forget Device.

Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different cell phone, the new cell phone must be in the vehicle and paired to the Bluetooth system.

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page or the phone icon on the shortcut tray near the bottom of the display.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch the new cell phone to link to from the not connected phone list. See "First to Connect Paired Phones" previously in this section.

Switching to Handset or Handsfree Mode

To switch between handset or handsfree mode:

- While the active call is hands-free, touch the Handset option to switch to the handset mode.

  The mute icon will not be available or functional while Handset mode is active.
- While the active call is on the handset, touch the Handset option to switch to the hands-free mode.

Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal cell phone contact information for all cell phones that support the Phone Book feature. Become familiar with the cell phone settings and operation. Verify the cell phone supports this feature.

The Contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the cell phone.

The Recents menu accesses the recents call list from your cell phone.

To make a call using the Contacts menu:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.

2. Touch Contacts.
3. The Contacts list can be searched by using the first character. Touch A-Z on the infotainment display to scroll through the list of names.

   Touch the name to call.
4. Touch the desired contact number to call.

To make a call using the Recents menu:

1. Touch Phone on the Home Page.
2. Touch Recents.
3. Touch the name or number to call.

Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call by dialing the numbers:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter a phone number.
3. Touch on the infotainment display to start dialing the number.

Searching Contacts Using the Keypad

To search for contacts using the keypad:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter partial phone numbers or contact names using the digits on the keypad to search.

   Results will show on the right side of the display. Touch one to place a call.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Accepting a Call

There are two ways to accept a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Answer on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

There are two ways to decline a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth cell phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

Accepting a Call

Press to answer, then touch Switch on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

Press to decline, then touch Ignore on the infotainment display

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, touch Phone on the Home Page to display Call View. While in Call View, touch the call information of the call on hold to change calls.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth cell phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

To start a three-way call while in a current call:

1. In the Call View, touch Add Call to add another call.
2. Initiate the second call by selecting from Recents, Contacts, or Keypad.
3. When the second call is active, touch the merge icon to conference the three-way call together.

Ending a Call

- Press on the steering wheel controls.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

- Touch on the infotainment display, next to a call, to end only that call.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system. Use the Keypad to enter the number.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

If equipped, Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. If available, the Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons will change from gray to color on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

For Wired Phone Projection

1. Download the Android Auto app to your smartphone from the Google Play store for phones running Android 9 and below. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the factory-provided phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, it is highly recommended to use the device's factory-provided USB cable, which should be replaced after significant wear to maintain connection quality. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.
3. When the phone is first connected to activate Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, accept the terms and conditions on both the infotainment system and the phone.
4. Follow the instructions on the phone.

The Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons on the Home Page will illuminate depending on the smartphone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, touch the Android Auto or Apple CarPlay icon on the Home Page to launch.

Press on the center stack to return to the Home Page.

For Wireless Phone Projection (If Equipped)

If available for your region, verify your phone is wireless compatible by visiting the Android Auto or Apple CarPlay support page.

1. Download the Android Auto app to your smartphone from the Google Play store for phones running Android 9 and below. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. For first time connection, there are two ways to set up wireless projection:
   - Connect your Android phone or Apple iPhone by using the factory-provided phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, it is highly recommended to use the device's factory-provided USB cable, which should be replaced after significant wear to maintain connection quality. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.
   - Connecting the phone over Bluetooth. See *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *159* or *Bluetooth (Pairing and Using a Phone)* ⇨ *159*.
3. Make sure Wi-Fi and Bluetooth is turned on the phone for wireless projection to work.
4. When the phone is first connected to activate Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, agree to the terms and conditions on both the infotainment system and the phone.
5. Follow the instructions on the phone.

The Android Auto and Apple CarPlay icons on the Home Page will illuminate depending on the smartphone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch

upon wireless connection. If not, touch the Android Auto or Apple CarPlay icon on the Home Page to launch.

Wireless CarPlay and/or Wireless Android Auto may experience occasional service disruption due to outside Wi-Fi interference.

To disconnect the phones wireless projection:

1. Select Settings from the Home Page.
2. Select Phone.
3. Select ℹ or the pencil icon next to the phone to be disconnected.
4. Select Disconnect.
5. Select Disconnect Phone.

Press ⌂ on the center stack to return to the Home Page.

Features are subject to change. For further information on how to set up Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle, see your dealer.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. Apple CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Data plan rates apply. For Android Auto support and to see if your phone is compatible, see https://support.google.com/androidauto. For Apple CarPlay support and to see if your phone is compatible, see www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Android Auto, Android, Google, Google Play, and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Press ⌂ on the center stack to exit Android Auto or Apple CarPlay. To enter back into Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, press and hold ⌂ on the center stack.

Apple CarPlay can be disabled from the infotainment system. To do this, select Home>Settings>System>Phones and then Phone Options on the phone card. Use the On/Off toggled to turn off Apple CarPlay for that phone.

Settings

Refer to the User Terms and Privacy Statement for important details. To view, touch the Settings icon on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

The settings menu may be organized into four categories. Select the desired category by touching System, Apps, Vehicle, or Personal.

To access the personalization menus:

1. Touch Settings on the Home Page on the infotainment display.
2. Touch the desired category to display a list of available options.
3. Touch to select the desired feature setting.
4. Touch the options on the infotainment display to disable or enable a feature.
5. Touch ✕ to go to the top level of the Settings menu.

System

The menu may contain the following:

Time / Date

Allows setting of the clock.

Language

Allows setting of the display language used on the infotainment display. It may also use the selected language for voice recognition and audio feedback.

Phones

Allows connecting to a different cell phone or mobile device source, disconnect a cell phone or media device, or delete a cell phone or media device.

Wi-Fi Networks

Shows connected and available Wi-Fi networks.

If a 4G LTE data package is not active on the vehicle, the infotainment system can be connected to an external protected Wi-Fi network, such as a mobile device or home hotspot, to utilize connected services.

Wi-Fi Hotspot

Allows adjustment of different Wi-Fi features.

Privacy

Allows adjustment of the infotainment privacy settings.

Display

Allows adjustment of the infotainment display.

Sounds

Allows adjustment of the infotainment system sounds.

Voice

Allows adjustment of the infotainment voice recognition features.

Favorites

Allows adjustment of the infotainment favorite settings.

Updates

If equipped, the vehicle can download and install select software updates over a wireless connection. The system will prompt for certain updates to be downloaded and installed. There is also an option to check for updates manually.

To manually check for updates, touch Settings on the Home Page and select the System tab. Go to the Vehicle Software section and touch Updates. Follow the on-screen prompts. The steps to check for, download, and install updates may vary by vehicle.

The vehicle can be used normally during the software download. Once the download is complete, there may be a prompt to accept the installation of the update upon the next ignition cycle or the next time the vehicle is shifted into P (Park). For most updates, the vehicle will be disabled and cannot be driven during the installation. The system will deliver messages indicating success or error during and after the download and installation processes.

Downloading Over-the-Air vehicle software updates requires Internet connectivity, which can be accessed through the vehicle's built-in 4G LTE connection, if equipped and active. If required, data plans are provided by a third party. Optionally, a secure Wi-Fi hotspot such as a compatible mobile device hotspot, home hotspot, or public hotspot can be used. Applicable data rates may apply.

To connect the infotainment system to a secured mobile device hotspot, home hotspot, or public hotspot, touch Settings on the Home Page, select the System tab, followed by Wi-Fi Networks. Select the appropriate Wi-Fi network, and follow the on-screen prompts. Download speeds may vary.

On most compatible mobile devices, activation of the Wi-Fi hotspot is in the Settings menu under Mobile Network Sharing, Personal Hotspot, Mobile Hotspot, or similar.

Availability of Over-the-Air software updates varies by vehicle and country. Features are subject to change. For more information on this feature, see your dealer.

Preferences

Allows the infotainment system to disable or enable the download of new updates in the background.

About

Shows the infotainment system software information.

Running Applications

Shows a complete list of applications that are currently running on the infotainment system.

Return to Factory Settings

Allows resetting the infotainment system settings in the vehicle.

Apps

The menu may contain the following:

Android Auto

Allows interacting directly with a mobile device on the infotainment display. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *163*.

Apple CarPlay

Allows interacting directly with your mobile device on the infotainment display. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *163*.

Audio

Allows adjustment of different audio settings.

Climate

Allows adjustment of different climate settings.

Navigation

Allows adjustment of different navigation settings.

See *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *137*.

Phone

Allows adjustment of different phone settings.

Vehicle

The menu may contain the following:

Rear Seat Reminder

Allows for a chime and a message when the rear door has been opened before or during operation of the vehicle.

Driver Mode Customization

See “Driver Mode Customization” in *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *212*.

Climate and Air Quality

Allows adjustment of different climate settings.

Collision/Detection Systems

Allows adjustment of different driver assistance system settings.

Comfort and Convenience

Allows adjustment of different comfort and convenience settings.

Lighting

Allows adjustment of different lighting settings.

Power Door Locks

Allows adjustment of different door lock settings.

Remote Lock, Unlock, and Start

Allows adjustment of different remote lock settings.

Seating Position

Allows adjustment of different seat settings.

Valet Mode

This will lock the infotainment system and steering wheel controls. It may also limit access to vehicle storage locations, if equipped.

To enable valet mode:

1. Enter a four-digit code on the keypad.
2. Select Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
3. Re-enter the four-digit code.

Touch Lock or Unlock to lock or unlock the system. Touch Back to go back to the previous menu.

Personal

If equipped, this menu allows adjustment of different user profile settings. See "Users" in *Using the System* ⇨ *128* for information on setting up user profiles.

The menu may contain the following:

Name

Touch to edit your user name that will be displayed in the vehicle.

Vehicle Account Information

Touch to view the vehicle account information and to change the account password.

An "unverified user account" pop-up will display until the account information verification process has been completed on the Internet. Check your registered e-mail account for an activation e-mail to complete the verification process.

Profile Picture

Touch to choose or change your profile picture.

Profile Identifiers

Touch to have the vehicle recognize the identifier you choose.

Touch Vehicle Key 1 and/or Vehicle Key 2.

If the remote key is lost or stolen, see your dealer.

Security

Touch to have your profile secured with a PIN.

Touch No or Yes.

Vehicle Name

Touch to edit your vehicle name.

Vehicle Account

Touch to view the vehicle account information and to change the account password.

Delete Profile

Touch to remove the profile from the vehicle.

Touch Remove or Cancel.

Trademarks and License Agreements

Made for iPhone

"Made for iPhone," means that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPhone, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPhone may affect wireless

performance. iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.



TouchSense Technology and TouchSense System 1000 Series Licensed from Immersion Corporation. TouchSense System 1000 protected under one or more of the U.S. Patents at the following address www.immersion.com/patent-marking.html and other patents pending.

Bose

Bose AudioPilot and Bose Centerpoint surround are registered trademarks of Bose Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

DTS

Manufactured under license under U.S.Patent Nos: 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending.

For DTS patents, see https://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS, and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS 2.0 Channel is a trademark of DTS, Inc. ©DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Dolby

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

BDA

"Blu-ray Disc, Blu-ray, Blu-ray 3D, BD-Live, BONUSVIEW, BDXL, AVCREC, and the logos are trademarks of the Blu-ray Disc Association."

AVCHD

AVCHD and the AVCHD logo are trademarks of Panasonic Corporation and Sony Corporation.

AVCREC

Blu-ray Disc, Blu-ray, Blu-ray 3D, BD-Live, BONUSVIEW, BDXL, AVCREC, and the logos are trademarks of the Blu-ray Disc Association.

Java

Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Cinavia

Cinavia Notice: This product uses Cinavia technology to limit the use of unauthorized copies of some commercially-produced film and videos and their soundtracks. When a prohibited use of an unauthorized copy is detected, a message will be displayed or copying will be interrupted.

More information about Cinavia technology is provided at the Cinavia Online Consumer Information Center at https://www.cinavia.com. To request additional information about Cinavia by mail, send a postcard with your mailing address to: Cinavia Consumer Information Center, P.O. Box 86851, San Diego, CA, 92138, USA.

This product incorporates proprietary technology under license from Verance Corporation and is protected by U.S. Patent 7,369,677 and other U.S. and worldwide patents issued and pending as well as copyright and trade secret protection for certain aspects of such technology. Cinavia is a trademark of Verance Corporation.

Copyright 2004-2010 Verance Corporation. All rights reserved by Verance. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Map End User License Agreement

END USER TERMS

The Map Data Disc ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this "End User License Agreement") and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE North America, LLC ("HERE") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only: You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, noncommercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used, and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty

This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS" AND BOSCH (AND THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY BOSCH (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSORS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Disclaimer of Liability

HERE AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories, and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations. Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims, and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and be treated in accordance with such Notice:



Maps for Life

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

NAME:

HERE North America, LLC

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2014 HERE North America, LLC. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Unicode

Copyright © 1991-2010 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in https://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Free Type Project

Portions of this software are copyright © 2010 The FreeType Project (https://www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

Open Source SW

Further information concerning the OSS licenses is shown in the infotainment display.

QNX

Portions of this software are copyright © 2008-2011, QNX Software Systems. All rights reserved.

Part C – EULA

Copyright 2011, Software Systems GmbH & Co. KG. All Rights Reserved.

The product you have purchased ("Product") contains Software (Runtime Configuration No. 505962; "Software") which is distributed by or on behalf of the Product manufacturer "Manufacturer") under license from Software Systems Co. ("QSSC"). You may only use the Software in the Product and in compliance with the license terms below.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, QSSC hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in the Product for the purpose intended by the Manufacturer. If permitted by the Manufacturer, or by applicable law, you may make one backup copy of the Software as part of the Product software. QSSC and its licensors reserve all license+C31 rights not expressly granted herein, and retain all right, title and interest in and to all copies of the Software, including all intellectual property rights therein. Unless required by applicable law, you may not reproduce, distribute, transfer, de-compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to unbundle, reverse engineer, modify or create derivative works of, the Software. You agree: (1) not to remove, cover or alter any proprietary notices, labels or marks in or on the Software, and to ensure that all copies bear any notice contained on the original;

and (2) not to export the Product or the Software in contravention of applicable export control laws.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, QSSC AND ITS LICENSORS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY WARRANTIES OR OTHER PROVISIONS OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) THAT DIFFER FROM THIS LICENSE ARE OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) ALONE AND NOT BY QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS. YOU ASSUME ANY RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE UNDER THIS LICENSE.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW (SUCH AS IN THE CASE OF DELIBERATE OR GROSSLY NEGLIGENT ACTS), IN NO EVENT SHALL QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS BE LIABLE TO YOU UNDER ANY LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER IN TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT OR OTHERWISE, FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER ARISING AS A RESULT OF THIS LICENSE OR OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, PRODUCT FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES), EVEN IF QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Linotype

Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype Corp. registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions in the name of Linotype Corp. or its licensee Linotype GmbH.

Usage in text form of each of the Licensed Trademarks is:

The trademark attribution requirements for the Licensed Trademarks may be viewed at https://www.linotype.com/2061-19414/trademarks.html.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 173

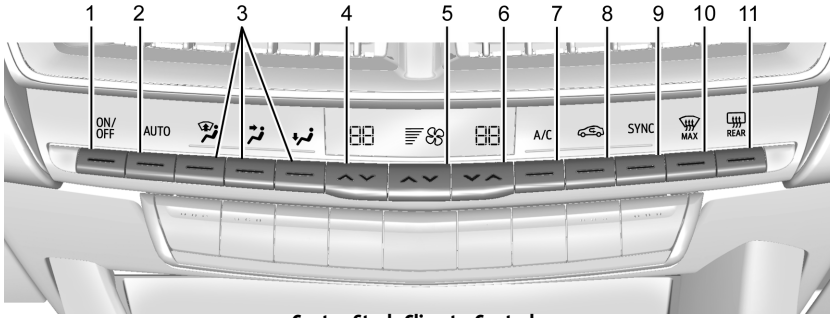
Air Vents
Air Vents 177

Maintenance
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 177
Service 177

Climate Control Systems

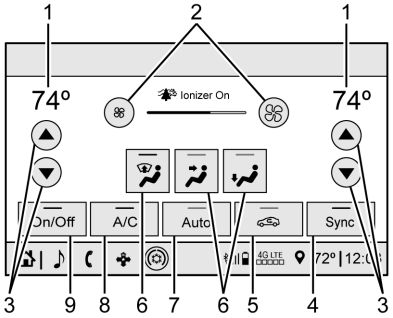
Dual Automatic Climate Control System

The climate control buttons on the center stack and on the climate control display are used to adjust the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



Center Stack Climate Controls

1. ON/OFF (Power)
2. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
3. Air Delivery Mode Control
4. Driver Temperature Controls
5. Fan Control
6. Passenger Temperature Controls
7. A/C (Air Conditioning)
8. Recirculation
9. SYNC (Synchronized Temperature)
10. Defrost
11. Rear Window Defogger

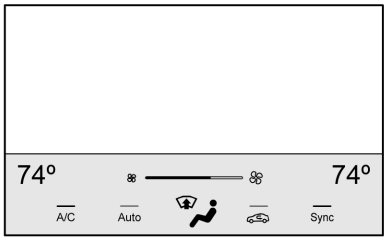


Climate Control Display

1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Displays
2. Fan Control
3. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
4. Sync (Synchronized Temperature)
5. Recirculation
6. Air Delivery Mode Control
7. Auto (Automatic Operation)
8. A/C (Air Conditioning)
9. On/Off (Power)

The fan, air delivery mode, air conditioning, driver and passenger temperatures, recirculation, and Sync settings can be controlled by touching CLIMATE on the infotainment Home Page or the climate button in the climate control display application tray. A selection can then be made on the front climate control page displayed. See the infotainment manual.

Climate Control Status Display



The climate control status display appears briefly when the center stack climate controls are adjusted.

Climate Control Influence on Fuel Economy

The climate control system depends on other vehicle systems for heat and power input. Certain climate control settings can lead to higher fuel usage.

The following climate control settings use more fuel:

- MAX air conditioning mode
- Defrost mode
- Extreme temperature settings, such as 15° C (60° F) or 32° C (90° F)
- High fan speed settings

To help reduce fuel usage:

- Use the full automatic control as described under “Automatic Operation.”
- Select a temperature setting that is higher in hot weather and lower in cold weather.
- Turn off the air conditioning when it is not needed.
- Only use defrost to clear the windows.

Automatic Operation

To place the system in automatic mode:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the driver and passenger temperature.

To find your comfort setting, start with 22 °C (72 °F) and allow the system time to stabilize. Then adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather.

The recirculation light will not come on when automatically controlled. Press to manually select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

Do not cover the solar sensor on the top of the instrument panel near the windshield. This sensor regulates air temperature based on sun load. See “Sensors” later in this section.

Manual Operation

ON/OFF : Press to turn the climate control system on or off. When the system is off, outside air will be prevented from entering the vehicle. When the system is on, a button is pressed, or knob is turned, the climate control system will turn on and deliver airflow per the current setting.

▲ ▼ **:** Press the fan controls on the center stack or the climate control display to increase or decrease the fan speed. Press and hold the controls to adjust speed more quickly.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

Driver and Passenger Temperature Control : The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Press △ / ▽ to increase or decrease the temperature.

SYNC : Press to link the passenger and rear climate temperature settings, if equipped, to the driver setting. The SYNC indicator light will turn on. When the passenger or rear climate temperature settings are adjusted, the SYNC indicator light is off.

The driver side or passenger side temperature display shows the temperature setting increasing or decreasing.

Air Delivery Mode Control : Press , , or to change the direction of the airflow. An indicator light comes on in the selected mode button. All three buttons or any combination of the three buttons can be used to select the air delivery mode.

Changing the mode cancels the automatic operation and the system goes into manual mode. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

: This mode clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield, outboard panel outlets, and side window vents. The system automatically forces outside air into the vehicle and the air conditioning compressor will run, unless the outside temperature is close to freezing.

: Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

: Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some to the windshield, side window outlets, outboard panel outlets, and second row floor outlets.

: Press to clear the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield, outboard panel outlets, and the side window outlets. The air conditioning compressor also comes on, unless the outside temperature is below freezing.

Do not drive the vehicle until all windows are clear.

See *Air Vents* ⇨ *177*.

A/C : Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. An indicator light comes on to show that the air conditioning is enabled. If the fan is turned off, the air conditioner will not run. The A/C light will stay on even if the outside temperatures are below freezing.

: Press to turn on recirculation. An indicator light comes on. Air is recirculated to quickly cool the inside of the vehicle. It can also be used to help reduce outside air and odors that enter the vehicle. The air conditioning compressor also comes on when this mode is activated.

Ionizer : If equipped with an ionizer, this feature helps to clean the air inside the vehicle and remove contaminants such as pollen, odors, and dust. If the climate control system is on and the ionizer is enabled, the ionizer status indicator will be lit on the climate control display. To turn the Ionizer off or on, select Settings > Climate and Air Quality > Ionizer > Select ON or OFF.

Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

REAR **:** Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window defogger is on.

The rear window defogger only works when the vehicle is on. The defogger can be turned off by turning the vehicle off or to accessory mode.

Caution

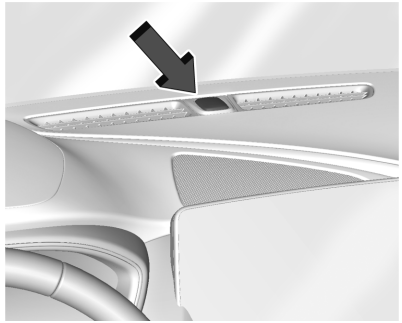
Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window can damage the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not clear the inside rear window with sharp objects.

Heated Mirror : If equipped with heated outside mirrors, the mirrors heat to help clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror when the rear window defog button is pressed. See *Heated Mirrors* ⇨ *26*.

Remote Start Climate Control Operation : If equipped with remote start, the climate control system may run when the vehicle is started remotely. The rear defog may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear defog indicator light does not come on during a remote start.

If equipped, the heated seats will turn on if it is cold outside or the ventilated seats will turn on if it is hot outside. The heated and ventilated seat indicator lights may not come on during a remote start. If equipped, the heated steering wheel will come on in a remote start if it is cold outside. The heated steering wheel indicator light may not come on.

Sensors



The solar sensor, located in the defrost grille in the middle of the instrument panel, monitors the solar heat. Do not cover the solar sensor or the system will not work properly.

There is also an exterior temperature sensor behind the front grille. This sensor reads the outside air temperature and helps maintain the temperature inside the vehicle. Any cover on the front of the vehicle could cause a false reading in the displayed temperature.

The climate control system uses the information from these sensors to maintain comfort settings by adjusting the outlet temperature, fan speed, and air delivery mode. The system may also supply cooler air to the side of the vehicle facing the sun. The recirculation mode will also be used as needed to maintain cool outlet temperatures.

Afterblow Feature

If equipped, under certain conditions, the fan may stay on or may turn on and off several times after you turn off and lock the vehicle. This is normal.

Air Vents

Adjustable air vents are in the center and on the sides of the instrument panel, and on the rear of the center console storage.

Move the slider knobs to change the direction of or to close off the airflow.

Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from air inlets at the base of the windshield that could block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Clear snow off the hood to improve visibility and help decrease moisture drawn into the vehicle.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside of the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.
- Do not attach any devices to the air vent slats. This restricts airflow and may cause damage to the air vents.

Maintenance

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter reduces dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air that is pulled into the vehicle. The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*.

See your dealer regarding replacement of the filter.

Service

All vehicles have a label underhood that identifies the refrigerant used in the vehicle. The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. The air conditioning evaporator should never be repaired or replaced by one from a salvage vehicle. It should only be replaced by a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.

During service, all refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and may also

create unsafe conditions based on inhalation, combustion, frostbite, or other health-based concerns.

The air conditioning system requires periodic maintenance. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 180
Distracted Driving 180
Defensive Driving 181
Control of a Vehicle 181
Braking 181
Steering 181
Off-Road Recovery 182
Loss of Control 183
Track Events and Competitive Driving (V-Series and V-Series Blackwing) 183
Driving on Wet Roads 192
Hill and Mountain Roads 193
If the Vehicle Is Stuck 193
Vehicle Load Limits 194

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Break-In 197
Composite Materials 197
Ignition Positions 197
Starting the Engine 199
Stop/Start System 199
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 200
Shifting Into Park 200
Shifting out of Park 201
Parking over Things That Burn 201
Active Fuel Management 201
Extended Parking 202

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 202
Running the Vehicle While Parked 202

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 203
Manual Mode 206

Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 208

Brakes
Electric Brake Boost 208
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 208
Electric Parking Brake 208
Brake Assist 209
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 210
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) 210

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 210
Driver Mode Control 212
Competitive Driving Mode 217
Limited-Slip Differential 219

Cruise Control
Cruise Control 219
Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced) 221

Advanced Driver Assistance Systems
Advanced Driver Assistance Systems 230
Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing 231
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 231
Surround Vision System 232
Park Assist 233
Automatic Parking Assist (APA) 235
Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) 236
Rear Pedestrian Alert 237
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System 238
Assistance Systems for Driving 238
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 239
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) . . . 241
Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System 242
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 244
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 244
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 246

Fuel
Top Tier Fuel 248
Recommended Fuel (LSY 2.0L L4 Engine) 248
Recommended Fuel (LGY 3.0L V6 and LT4 6.2L V8 Engines) 248
Prohibited Fuels 249

Fuel Additives 249
Filling the Tank 249
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 250

Trailer Towing
General Towing Information 251

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 251

Driving Information

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible:

- Set the climate controls to the desired temperature after the engine is started, or turn them off when not required.
- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Distracted Driving

Distraction comes in many forms and can take your focus from the task of driving. Exercise good judgment and do not let other activities divert your attention away from the road. Many local governments have enacted laws regarding driver distraction. Become familiar with the local laws in your area.

To avoid distracted driving, keep your eyes on the road, keep your hands on the steering wheel, and focus your attention on driving.

- Do not use a phone in demanding driving situations. Use a hands-free method to place or receive necessary phone calls.
- Watch the road. Do not read, take notes, or look up information on phones or other electronic devices.
- Designate a front seat passenger to handle potential distractions.
- Become familiar with vehicle features before driving, such as programming favorite radio stations and adjusting climate control and seat settings. Program all trip information into any navigation device prior to driving.

- Wait until the vehicle is parked to retrieve items that have fallen to the floor.
- Stop or park the vehicle to tend to children.
- Keep pets in an appropriate carrier or restraint.
- Avoid stressful conversations while driving, whether with a passenger or on a cell phone.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Refer to the infotainment section for more information on using that system and the navigation system, if equipped, including pairing and using a cell phone.

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means to always expect the unexpected. The first step in driving defensively is to wear a seat belt. See *Seat Belts ⇨ 43*.

- Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they may do and be ready.
- Allow enough following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

Control of a Vehicle

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

Braking

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average driver reaction time is about three-quarters of a second. In that time, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h (60 mph) travels 20 m (66 ft), which could be a lot of distance in an emergency.

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

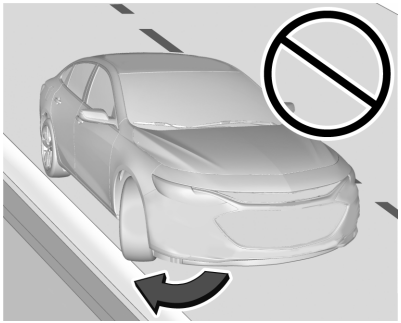
- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If the engine ever stops or a brake fault occurs, the brakes may lose power assist. More effort will be required to stop the vehicle and it can take longer to stop.

Steering

Caution

To avoid damage to the steering system, do not drive over curbs, parking barriers, or similar objects at speeds greater than 3 km/h (1 mph). Use care when driving over other objects such as lane dividers and speed bumps. Damage caused by misuse of the vehicle is not covered by the vehicle warranty.



Variable Effort Steering

The vehicle has a steering system that varies the amount of effort required to steer the vehicle in relation to the speed of the vehicle.

The amount of steering effort required is less at slower speeds to make the vehicle more maneuverable and easier to park. At faster speeds, the steering effort increases to provide a sport-like feel to the steering. This provides maximum control and stability.

Electric Power Steering

The vehicle is equipped with an electric power steering system, which reduces the amount of effort needed to steer the vehicle. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If the vehicle experiences a system malfunction and loses power steering, greater steering effort may be required. Power steering assist also may be reduced if you turn the steering wheel as far as it can turn and hold it there with force for an extended period of time.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

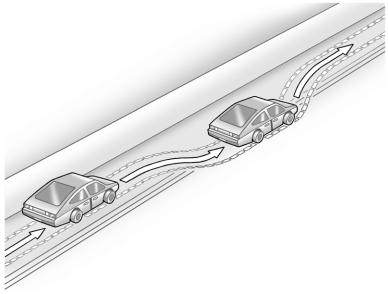
Curve Tips

- Take curves at a reasonable speed.
- Reduce speed before entering a curve.
- Maintain a reasonable steady speed through the curve.
- Wait until the vehicle is out of the curve before accelerating gently into the straightaway.

Steering in Emergencies

- There are some situations when steering around a problem may be more effective than braking.
- Holding both sides of the steering wheel allows you to turn 180 degrees without removing a hand.
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) allows steering while braking.

Off-Road Recovery



The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving. Follow these tips:

1. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer the vehicle so that it straddles the edge of the pavement.

2. Turn the steering wheel about one-eighth of a turn, until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge.
3. Turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Loss of Control

Skidding

There are three types of skids that correspond to the vehicle's three control systems:

- Braking Skid — wheels are not rolling.
- Steering or Cornering Skid — too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force.
- Acceleration Skid — too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Antilock brakes help to avoid only the braking skid.

Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not exceeding those conditions. But skids are always possible.

If the vehicle starts to skid, follow these suggestions:

- Ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and steer the way you want the vehicle to go. The vehicle may straighten out, but if it skids again from oversteer, be ready to correct another skid if it occurs.
- Slow down and adjust your driving according to weather conditions. Stopping distance may be longer and vehicle control may be affected when traction is reduced by water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material on the road. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.
- Try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide.

Track Events and Competitive Driving (V-Series and V-Series Blackwing)

Before any track event, there are three features that should be turned off:

- Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB). See *Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)* ⇨ *241*.
- Lane Keep Assist. See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *246*.
- Adaptive Cruise Control. See *Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)* ⇨ *221*.

⚠ Danger

High-performance features are intended for use only on closed tracks by experienced and qualified drivers and should not be used on public roads. High-speed driving, aggressive cornering, hard braking, and other high-performance driving can be dangerous. Improper driver inputs for the conditions may result in loss of control of the vehicle, which could injure or kill you or others. Always drive safely.

Track events and competitive driving may affect the vehicle warranty. See the warranty manual before using the vehicle for competitive driving.

⚠ Warning

Some of the adjustments and procedures specified in this section may require specialized skill, training, and equipment.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Failure to perform these procedures properly could cause malfunction, potentially resulting in death, personal injury, or damage to the vehicle or property. Do not attempt to perform these adjustments or procedures unless properly qualified.

⚠ Warning

Prior to each track event and again before returning to public roads, tighten the wheel nuts with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification. Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off, resulting in a crash. See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *331* for wheel nut torque specifications.

Caution

If the vehicle is used for track events and competitive driving, the engine may use more oil than it would with normal use.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Low oil levels can damage the engine. Check the oil level often and maintain the proper level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.

Seat Belts

Lap-Shoulder Belt

If equipped, the driver seat belt has an Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR). This feature is useful in performance driving scenarios where the driver wants to be held in the seat more tightly to take advantage of the aggressive bolstering of the seat.

1. Move the seat 8-10 cm (3-4 in) rearward from the normal driving position.
2. Pull the driver shoulder belt out as far as it will go, until it stops, to set the lock. While holding the shoulder belt in this position, buckle the belt.

   When the shoulder belt is released, the retractor will make a ratchet sound when it retracts. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.
3. Adjust the belt, and then move the seat forward 8-10 cm (3-4 in) to the desired driving position. This will secure the belt. The belt fit should be tight, but not uncomfortable.

   To unlatch the belt, press the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

Axle Fluid

Axles must have 2400 km (1500 mi) before being used in track driving.

The front, if equipped with AWD, and rear axle fluid temperatures may be higher than when driving in severe conditions. Drain and refill with new fluid after the first racing or competitive driving event, and then after every 24 hours of racing or competitive driving. See your dealer for the correct fluid.

Caution

During a first time track or racing event, high axle temperatures can occur. Damage could be caused to the axle and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not drive as long or as fast the first time the vehicle is driven on the track or raced.

- The axle lubricant should be replaced with new lubricant.
- On vehicles without a differential cooler, additional cooling capacity is required for continuous competitive driving. The V-Series Blackwing has a differential cooler, so no additional cooling capacity is necessary.

Engine Oil

Caution

If the vehicle is used for track events and competitive driving, the engine may use more oil than it would with normal use. Low oil levels can damage the engine. Check the oil level often and maintain the proper level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.

Check the oil level often during track events and competitive driving, and keep the oil level at or near the upper mark. See "Checking the Engine Oil" in *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.

LT4 Only

Racing or track use may cause additional oil consumption, and also cause the engine oil to degrade faster than the oil life monitor prediction. Frequently inspect the oil level during track use, and change the oil after the oil life monitor expires, or nine hours of total track time, whichever comes first.

Fuel

Use premium unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 98 RON at a track event. Unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 95 RON may be used, but performance will be degraded. See *Prohibited Fuels* ⇨ *249*.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

Have the transmission fluid set to the full oil level prior to track usage. Transmission fluid should be changed after every 15 hours of track usage. Any transmission level set or change should be performed at your dealer.

Brakes

Battery Disconnect

Disconnect the battery before servicing the hydraulic brake system. It is critical to disconnect the battery before bleeding the system, replacing the pads, or any other work. The battery must be disconnected to prevent the brake master cylinder from pressurizing the hydraulic system during its automated self diagnostic tests that may occur when a door is opened or the remote key is present.

⚠ Warning

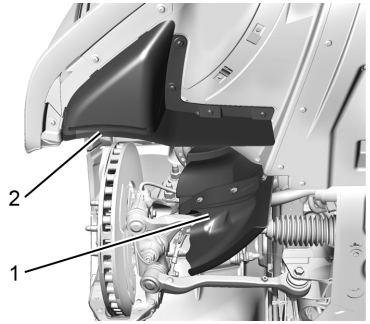
To avoid personal injury and/or vehicle damage, always disconnect the battery before performing service work on the hydraulic brake system. Bleeding the brake system with the battery connected can lead to excessive pressurization of the system during automatic diagnostic tests or diagnosis of a leak or air in the braking system. A Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) may set and vehicle speed may be limited.

Brake Cooling (V-Series Blackwing)

Prior to any track event, high speed driving event, or competitive driving, complete the following:

1. Ensure all the brake cooling parts are correctly secured and installed.
2. Inspect and replace any deflectors that have damage.
3. Inspect for blockage in the front brake cooling duct prior to every event.
4. Remove front tire deflector (if equipped).

If improved brake cooling is desired on vehicles with cast-iron brakes (RPO JGH), install the ball joint protector front shields, remove both upper and lower rear rotor shields, and install the rear lower control arm cooling deflectors, per the instructions included with the brake cooling kit. These parts are for track use only. After track events, reinstall the original front and rear rotor shields and remove the rear lower control arm cooling deflectors.



Right Side Front Shown, Left Side Front Similar

1. Front Lower Control Arm Deflector
2. Remove – Front Tire Deflector



3. Front Brake Cooling Duct

Brake Pad Wear Sensors

If equipped, the brake pad wear sensors need to be removed from the brake calipers prior to any track or racing event. The original sensors can be reinstalled if significant brake pad wear is not observed. Refer to *Brake Pad Life System (If Equipped)* ⇨ *273*. If the sensors are not reinstalled after the track event, install brake pad wear sensor plugs. See your dealer.

The V-Series Blackwing is equipped with brake pad wear sensors which are track capable and should not be disabled for track and racing. A message will display in the Driver Information Center (DIC) when the brake pads show excessive wear.

Brake Fluid

Replace existing brake fluid with a qualified DOT 4 high performance brake fluid from a sealed container. Brake fluid with a dry boiling point >310 °C (590 °F) is qualified. If high performance brake fluid is used, replace it with GM approved brake fluid before driving on public roads. If high performance brake fluid is in the vehicle and the age of the brake fluid is over a month old or unknown, replace the brake fluid before track events and competitive driving. Do not use silicone or DOT 5 brake fluids.

It is critical to disconnect the battery before bleeding the system, replacing the pads, or any other work. The battery must be disconnected to prevent the brake master cylinder from pressurizing the hydraulic system during its automated self diagnostic tests that can possibly occur when a door is opened or the remote key is present.

Check the fluid level before each competitive driving event.

Brake System Flushing & Bleeding

The J55 brake system requires specific processes for bleeding and fluid flushing. These can be found in the service manual.

Properly bleeding the brake system is required for proper operation of the hydraulic brake system.

Brake Leak Detection

The hydraulic braking system has advanced diagnostic capability to help detect hydraulic leaks, trapped air, and other performance issues. These diagnostics are active when the hydraulic system is powered. In order to avoid inadvertently setting a leak Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC), disconnect the battery before servicing the brake system.

If the vehicle sets a DTC related to a brake system leak, the Brake System Warning Light will come on and vehicle speed may be limited to 100 kph (62 mph). Any time a leak DTC is set, the vehicle should be inspected carefully for evidence of a leak and should be repaired immediately. See your dealer.

Brake Fade Warning Assist

The Brake Fade Warning Assist system monitors the performance of the brake system. If the system detects brake fade, or if the brake fluid is near the boiling point, the driver will be alerted.

The Brake Fade Warning Assist system is designed for use with the factory-installed brake pads or GM approved replacement pads. If the brake pads on the vehicle need to be replaced, use GM approved brake pads. If this is not done, the brake fade warning system may not function properly.

Stage 1 : The DIC displays a "Reduce Braking to Avoid Overheating" message, a chime sounds and brake pedal effort and travel is increased. When the message displays, the driver should back up braking points and reduce brake usage in order to reduce brake temperature. This will allow for continued lapping with no speed limitations.

Stage 2 : The DIC displays a Brakes Overheated Service Now message, a chime sounds, and brake pedal effort and travel is further increased. This code indicates that the brake fluid temperature is excessive and is about to boil. The system limits vehicle speed to 100 km/h (62 mph). The driver should immediately start a cool down lap if on the track. If this message displays, the vehicle needs to be serviced. The brake system needs to cool down, and the brake fluid must be immediately flushed with DOT 4 for street use, or to a qualified DOT 4 race fluid for track use. Boiled brake fluid is compromised and must be replaced.

Brake Burnishing

New brake pads must be burnished before racing or other competitive driving.

Caution
These procedures are specific to the V-Series with performance brake linings package. This procedure should not be run on other models as damage may result.

Caution
The new vehicle break-in period should be completed before performing the brake burnishing procedure or damage may occur to the powertrain/engine. See *New Vehicle Break-In* ⇨ *197*.

Caution

Brake pedal fade will occur during any track burnish procedure and can cause brake pedal travel and force to increase. This could extend stopping distance until the brakes are fully burnished.

When performed as instructed, these procedures will not damage the brakes. During the burnishing procedure, the brake pads will smoke and produce an odor. The braking force and pedal travel may increase. After the procedure is complete, the brake pads may appear white at the rotor contact.

Perform these procedures in a safe manner and in compliance with all local and state ordinances/laws regarding motor vehicle operation. Perform the procedures only on dry pavement.

As with all high performance brake systems, some amount of brake squeal is normal.

Street High Performance Brake Burnishing Procedure

This section is for the V-Series Blackwing with J57 carbon ceramic brake rotors only.

This procedure should only be run on a track or other non-public area, and only on dry pavement.

Caution

Brake fade will occur during this track burnish procedure and can cause brake pedal travel and force to increase. This could extend stopping distance until the brakes are fully burnished.

1. From a stop, accelerate as rapidly as possible without activating traction control to a speed of 100 km/h (60 mph).
2. Using the G-Force Gauge in the HUD display, use enough pedal force to completely stop the vehicle in four to five seconds. (~0.7g Decel level to stop the vehicle in a straight line). If ABS activates, braking is too hard.
3. Repeat the first two steps 20 consecutive times, this should take about five minutes.
4. After completing the 20 stops, cool the brakes by driving for 8 km (5 mi) at 100 km/h (60 mph).

Alternative Closed Course Brake Burnishing Procedure

This brake burnish procedure should only be run on vehicles with a factory equipped brake system.

This procedure should only be run on a track and only on dry pavement. Brake pedal fade will occur during this track burnish procedure and can cause brake pedal travel and force to increase. This could extend stopping distance until the brakes are fully burnished.

1. Start track lapping at lower speeds and lower braking efforts for three minutes of driving. Allow for increased braking distances due to reduced brake output.
2. After Step 1, increase speed and braking effort for the next six minutes of lapping, gradually ending up at 90% effort. Continue to allow for increased braking distance due to reduced brake output.
3. Cool the brakes by lapping with minimal light braking for six minutes.

Wheel Alignment

Wheel alignment suggested specs for track use:

Road Course (V-Series)

- Front: -2.0 deg camber, 0.2 deg total toe
- Rear: -1.7 deg camber, 0.2 deg total toe

Road Course (V-Series Blackwing)

- Front: -2.5 deg camber, 0.1 deg total toe
- Rear: -1.5 deg camber, 0.1 deg total toe

Tire Inflation Pressure Guidelines

Tire inflation pressures affect vehicle handling and tire life, and should be adjusted for various types of tracks/courses.

Inspect the tires prior to every track/course session. Track/course driving will reduce the tire tread life.

To maximize tire life, drive 800 km (500 mi) prior to racetrack driving or complete the minimum track running that will increase the tire pressures by 35 kPa (5 psi). After this, immediately let the tires cool to cold pressures.

Tire Inflation Pressure High Speed

See *Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation* ⇨ *291*.

Tire Inflation Pressure for Track Driving

For driving on a race course, if the vehicle is equipped with 275/35ZR19 (100Y) and 305/30ZR19 (102Y) tires, set the cold (stationary) tire pressures to 28 psi. During track sessions, set the tire pressures at 35 to 38 psi for hot tires. If pressures exceed 38 psi, adjust the pressures down to 35 to 38 psi. Return the tires to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure when track driving has ended.

Driving and Operating

⚠ Warning

Operating the vehicle at high speeds can be dangerous. Improper tire inflation pressure can put additional strain on the tires and can cause a sudden failure. Make sure the tires are in excellent condition, and use the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load and track/course.

⚠ Warning

Tracks/courses put high loads on tires operating at high speed, which can lead to tire failure if not inflated properly. Always limit vehicle cargo to the driver plus one passenger with no additional cargo.

⚠ Warning

Track/course loads wear tires both on the tread and internal to the tire. When driven in track/course conditions, even if tread is not worn down to the treadwear indicator, tires must be replaced after the equivalent of two tanks of fuel or approximately 160 km (100 mi).

Custom Launch Control (If Equipped)

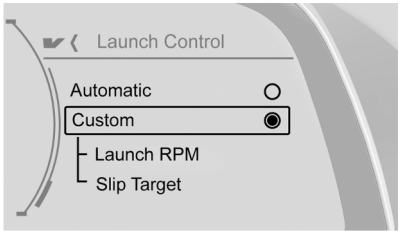
Custom Launch Control allows the following parameters for Launch Control to be modified:

- Launch RPM
- Slip Target (5%–15%)
- Surface Type

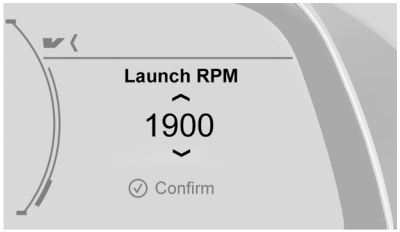
To adjust the Launch RPM, all of these conditions must be met:

- The vehicle must be in Track Mode. See "Track Mode" under *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *212*.
- Performance Traction Management (PTM) Mode must be enabled. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *212*.
- The steering wheel must be straight.
- The driver door must be closed.
- The transmission must be in D (Drive) or forward gear.
- The parking brake must not be engaged.

For more information on Competitive Driving Mode, see *Competitive Driving Mode* ⇨ *217*.



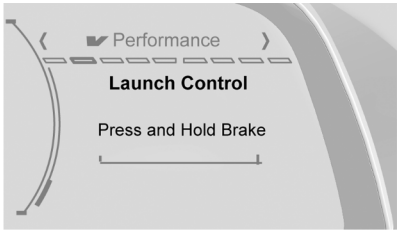
1. Using the DIC buttons on the right side of the steering wheel, navigate to the Launch Control menu. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.
2. Press SEL to select Custom.



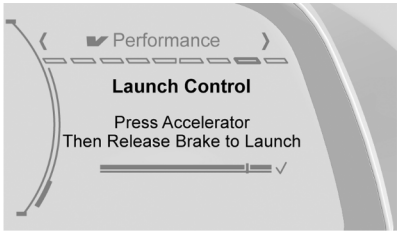
3. Scroll down to Launch RPM.
4. Adjust the desired RPM: 1000–2400 RPM.



5. Set Slip Target to custom desired setting.



6. Firmly press and hold the brake pedal to activate Launch Control.



7. Quickly apply full throttle. Release the brake pedal to launch the vehicle.

Line Lock (If Equipped)

⚠ Warning

The vehicle may move unexpectedly when using Line Lock, which could cause injury to persons or property located nearby. Only use Line Lock on a closed track where there is a large clear area around all sides of the vehicle. Be ready to apply the brakes immediately if the vehicle begins to move. Do not use Line Lock in an area that is accessible to the public or where people or property are located near the vehicle.

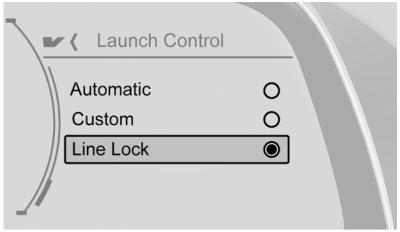
Caution

Attempting to shift when the drive wheels are spinning and do not have traction may cause damage to the transmission. Damage caused by misuse of the vehicle is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not attempt to shift when the drive wheels do not have traction.

Line Lock allows for locking the front brakes independently of the rear brakes. This allows the rear tires to spin when the throttle is applied.

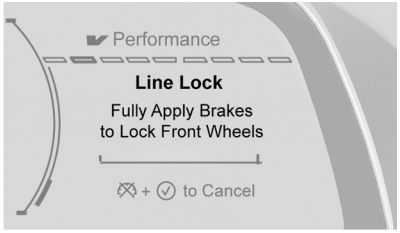
To enter Line Lock, all of these conditions must be met:

- The vehicle must be in Track Mode.
- Performance Traction Management (PTM) Mode must be enabled.
- The steering wheel must be straight.
- The driver door must be closed.
- The vehicle must be in D (Drive).
- The parking brake must not be engaged.
- The vehicle must be stopped on level ground. The accelerator pedal must not be applied.

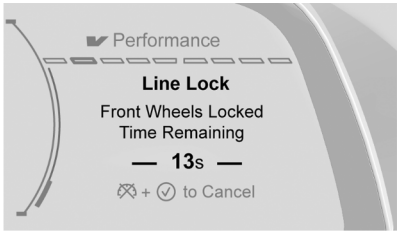


1. Using the DIC buttons on the right side of the steering wheel, navigate to the Line Lock menu within Launch Control.

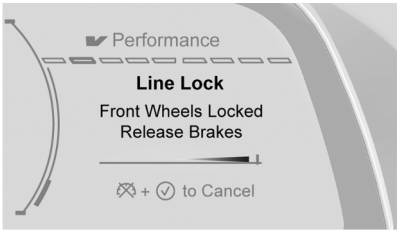
   See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.



2. Press the brake pedal firmly to move the bar graph to 100%.
3. Release the brake pedal.



4. There are 15 seconds to complete the burnout and exit.



5. To release the brakes and roll out, press and SEL at the same time.

If the burnout is not completed in 15 seconds, torque will be reduced to idle, the parking brake will be applied, Line Lock releases, and Custom Launch Control will be disabled.

Ensure the parking brake is disengaged to re-enter Launch Control.

Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ Warning

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Caution

Driving through deep puddles or standing water can cause water to come in through the engine air intake and damage the engine. If deep puddles or standing water cannot be avoided, proceed with caution and do not exceed

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

8 km/h (5 mph). Do not drive through water that may come close to or cover the vehicle's underbody.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires* ⇨ *288*.

- Turn off cruise control.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

⚠ Warning

Using the brakes to slow the vehicle on a long downhill slope can cause brake overheating, can reduce brake performance, and could result in a loss of braking. Shift the transmission to a lower gear to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ Warning

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. This can cause overheating of the brakes and loss of steering assist. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear.

- Drive at speeds that keep the vehicle in its own lane. Do not swing wide or cross the center line.
- Be alert on top of hills; something could be in your lane (e.g., stalled car, crash).
- Pay attention to special road signs (e.g., falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

If the Vehicle Is Stuck

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.

The Traction Control System (TCS) can often help to free a stuck vehicle. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *210*.

If TCS cannot free the vehicle, turn TCS off and use the rocking method. See “Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out” following.

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 56 km/h (35 mph).

Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a low forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Transporting a Disabled Vehicle* ⇨ *309*.

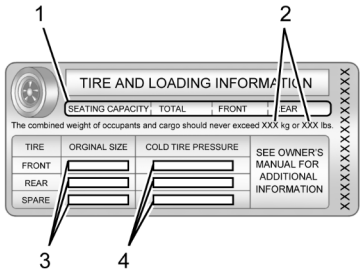
Vehicle Load Limits

It is very important to know how much weight the vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on the vehicle may show how much weight it may properly carry: the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification label.

⚠ Warning

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also reduce stopping performance, damage the tires, and shorten the life of the vehicle.

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle-specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). The Tire and Loading Information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (1), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (2) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the tire size of the original equipment tires (3) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (4). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires* ⇨ *288* and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *290*.

There is also important loading information on the Certification label. It may show the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle. See "Certification Label" later in this section.

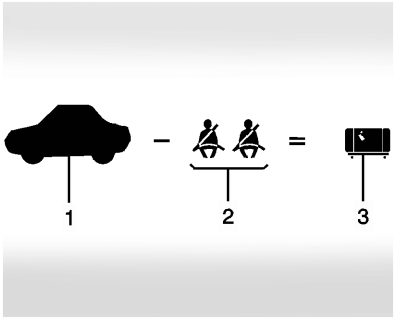
"Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit–

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example,

if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

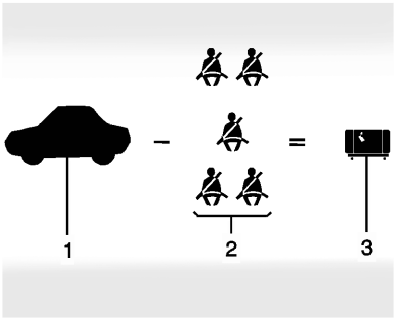
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle."

This vehicle is neither designed nor intended to tow a trailer.



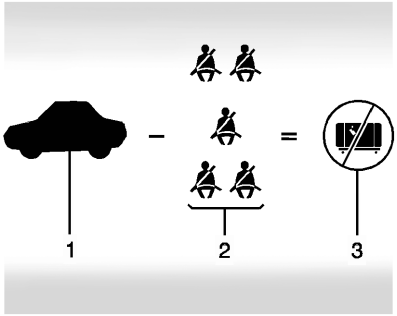
Example 1

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 2 = 136 kg (300 lbs).
3. Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = 317 kg (700 lbs).



Example 2

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 5 = 340 kg (750 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 113 kg (250 lbs).

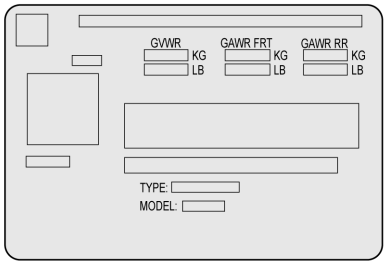


Example 3

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 91 kg (200 lbs) × 5 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 0 kg (0 lbs).

Refer to the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about the vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed the vehicle's capacity weight.

Certification Label



Label Example

A vehicle-specific Certification label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). The label may show the gross weight capacity of the vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo.

⚠ Warning

Things inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of the vehicle. In the cargo area, put them as far forward as possible. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- Secure loose items in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless needed.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

Caution

The vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:

- Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 800 km (500 mi). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 300 km (200 mi) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.

Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

On new vehicles, the various mechanical and electrical systems experience a “break-in” period during the first 6,400 km (4,000 miles) of routine driving. As the vehicle is driven, the mechanical systems adjust to provide optimal fuel economy and transmission shift performance.

Electrical systems will adapt and calibrate during the break-in period. A one-time occurrence of clicks and similar vehicle noises is normal during this process.

Normal driving charges the vehicle’s battery to achieve the best operation of the vehicle, including fuel economy and the Stop/Start System. See *Stop/Start System* ⇨ *199*.

Composite Materials

This vehicle may be equipped with parts containing carbon fiber, sheet-molding compound, or other composite materials. Dealer-installed accessories may also contain composite materials.

⚠ Warning

Exposed edges of parts containing carbon fiber and other composite materials can be sharp. Contact with these parts could result in injury. Use caution to avoid contacting these parts, including when washing the vehicle. If the parts are damaged, replace the parts promptly with replacements from your dealer.

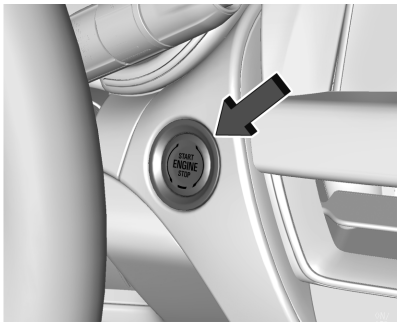
⚠ Warning

Rocker extensions may break under pressure, resulting in property damage or injury. Do not stand on the rocker extension or use it as a step.

⚠ Warning

Rear end spoilers may break under pressure, resulting in property damage or injury. Do not push the vehicle by the spoiler or use the spoiler as a handle.

Ignition Positions



The vehicle has an electronic keyless ignition with pushbutton start.

If the pushbutton start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio antenna signal causing interference to the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) system. See *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ 7.

To shift out of P (Park), the vehicle must be turned on and the brake pedal must be applied.

Stopping the Engine/OFF (No Indicator Light) : When the vehicle is stopped, press ENGINE START/STOP once to turn the engine off.

If the vehicle is in P (Park), the ignition will turn off, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ 200.

If the vehicle is in R (Reverse), D (Drive) or M (Manual Mode), the vehicle will shift to P (Park), the ignition will turn off, and RAP will remain active.

If the vehicle is in N (Neutral), the ignition will return to accessory mode and display the message SHIFT TO PARK in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition will turn off.

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop and shift to P (Park).
4. Set the parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ 208. Press ENGINE START/STOP to turn the vehicle off.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over and must be shut off while driving, press and hold ENGINE START/STOP for longer than two seconds, or press twice in five seconds.

Accessory Mode (Amber Indicator Light) : This mode allows you to use some electrical accessories when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button once without the brake pedal applied will place the ignition system in accessory mode.

The ignition will switch from accessory mode to OFF after five minutes to prevent battery rundown.

ON/RUN/START (Green Indicator Light) : This mode is for driving and starting. With the ignition off and the brake pedal applied, pressing ENGINE START/STOP once will place the ignition system in ON/RUN/START. Once engine cranking begins, release the button. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts. The ignition will then remain on. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ 199.

Service Mode

This mode is available to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emissions inspection purposes and for service and diagnostics. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ 203.

With the vehicle off, and the brake pedal not applied, pressing and holding ENGINE START/STOP for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Service Mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in ON/RUN, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Service Mode. Press ENGINE START/STOP again to turn the vehicle off.

Starting the Engine

Place the transmission in the proper gear, P (Park) or N (Neutral). To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral).

Caution

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

Caution

If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *251*.

To start the vehicle:

1. With the Keyless Access system, the remote key must be in the vehicle. Press ENGINE START/STOP with the brake pedal applied. When the engine begins cranking, let go of the button. The idle speed will go down as the engine warms up. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it.

   If the remote key is not in the vehicle, if there is interference, or if the remote key battery is low, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message will display. See *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ *7*.

   Caution

   Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by pressing ENGINE START/STOP immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.

2. If the engine does not start after five to 10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below −18 °C or 0 °F), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and hold it there, then press ENGINE START/STOP for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the button and the accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

Stop/Start System

If equipped and enabled, the Stop/Start system shuts off the engine to help conserve fuel. The system is designed to manage the increased number of starts.

⚠ Warning

The automatic engine Stop/Start feature causes the engine to shut off while the vehicle is still on. Do not exit the vehicle before shifting to P (Park). The vehicle may restart and move unexpectedly. Always shift to P (Park), and then turn the ignition off before exiting the vehicle.

Auto Engine Stop/Start

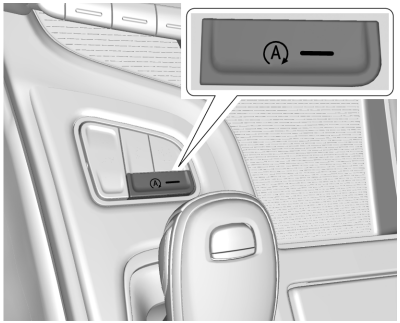
When the brakes are applied and the vehicle is at a complete stop, the engine may turn off. When stopped, the tachometer displays AUTO STOP. See *Tachometer* ⇨ *93*. When the brake pedal is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed, the engine will restart.

To maintain vehicle performance, other conditions may cause the engine to automatically restart before the brake pedal is released.

Auto Stops may not occur and/or Auto Starts may occur because:

- The climate control settings require the engine to be running to cool or heat the vehicle interior.
- The vehicle battery needs to charge.
- The vehicle battery has recently been disconnected.
- Minimum vehicle speed has not been reached since the last Auto Stop.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- The engine or transmission is not at the required operating temperature.
- The outside temperature is not in the required operating range.
- The vehicle is shifted out of D (Drive) to any gear other than P (Park).
- Certain driver modes have been selected. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *212*.
- The vehicle is on a steep hill or grade.
- The driver door has been opened or the driver seat belt has been unbuckled.
- The hood has been opened.
- The Auto Stop has reached the maximum allowed time.

Auto Stop Disable Switch



The automatic engine Stop/Start feature can be disabled and enabled by pressing Ⓐ. Auto Stop/Start is enabled each time you start the vehicle.

When the Ⓐ indicator is illuminated, the system is enabled.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

When the vehicle is turned from on to off, the following features (if equipped) will continue to function for up to 10 minutes, or until the driver door is opened. These features will also work when the vehicle is on or in accessory mode:

- Infotainment System
- Power Windows (during RAP this functionality will be lost when any door is opened)
- Sunroof (during RAP this functionality will be lost when any door is opened)
- Auxiliary Power Outlet
- Audio System
- OnStar System

Shifting Into Park

To shift into P (Park):

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *208*.
2. Press the button on top of the shift lever to shift into P (Park). See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *203*.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

3. The P indicator on the shift lever will turn red when the vehicle is in P (Park).

   If the vehicle is shifted into P (Park) on a hill, the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) may apply automatically. You may not be able to release the EPB using the EPB switch. It should automatically release when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park).

Leaving the Vehicle with the Engine Running

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. It could overheat and catch fire.

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *200*.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, be sure the vehicle is in P (Park) and the parking brake is set before you leave it.

Shifting out of Park

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic transmission. The shift lock release button is designed to prevent inadvertent shifting out of P (Park).

To shift out of P (Park):

1. Ensure the engine is running.
2. Apply the brake pedal.
3. Press and hold the shift lock release button on the shift lever.
4. Move the shift lever to the desired position. For N (Neutral) hold the lever in the N (Neutral) position until the N indicator illuminates red.
5. The P indicator will turn white and the gear indicator will turn red when the vehicle is no longer in P (Park).
6. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

If the vehicle cannot shift from P (Park), a Driver Information Center (DIC) message may be displayed. Check that the ignition is on, the engine is running, the brake pedal is applied, and the shift lock release button is pressed when you are attempting to shift out of P (Park). If all of these are met but the vehicle will not shift out of P (Park), see your dealer for service.

Parking over Things That Burn

⚠ Warning

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Active Fuel Management

This vehicle's engine may be equipped with Active Fuel Management, which allows the engine to operate on either all of its cylinders, or in reduced cylinder operation mode, depending on the driving conditions.

When less power is required, such as cruising at a constant vehicle speed, the system will operate in reduced cylinder operation mode, allowing the vehicle to achieve better fuel economy. When greater power demands are required, such as accelerating from a stop, passing, or merging onto a freeway, the system will maintain full-cylinder operation.

If the vehicle has an Active Fuel Management indicator, see Driver Information Center (DIC) for more information on using this display.

Extended Parking

It is best not to park with the vehicle running. If the vehicle is left running, be sure it will not move and there is adequate ventilation.

See *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *200* and *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *202*.

If the vehicle is left parked and running with the remote key outside the vehicle, it will continue to run for up to 15 minutes.

If the vehicle is left parked and running with the remote key inside the vehicle, it will continue to run for up to 30 minutes.

The vehicle could turn off sooner if it is parked on a hill, due to lack of available fuel.

The timer will reset if the vehicle is taken out of P (Park) while it is running.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running.

If the vehicle is left with the engine running, follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *200* and *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *202*.

Automatic Transmission



The shift pattern is displayed in the top of the shift lever. The selected gear position will illuminate red on the shift lever, while all others will be displayed in white. If the shift is not immediate, as in very cold conditions, the indicator on the shift lever may flash until it is fully engaged.

The shift lever always starts from a center position, represented by an up/down arrow on the shift pattern. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

The transmission does not operate when the vehicle is off.

If the vehicle is in accessory mode, the transmission can be shifted into P (Park).

If the vehicle is turned off while at a relatively high vehicle speed, the transmission will automatically shift to N (Neutral). Once the vehicle is stopped, it can be shifted into P (Park).



P : This position locks the drive wheels. Use P (Park) when starting the engine to prevent the vehicle from moving easily.

⚠ Warning

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the transmission is not in P (Park) with the parking brake set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If the engine has been left running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and place the transmission into P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *200* and *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *208*.



This vehicle is equipped with an electronically controlled transmission. The shift lock release button is designed to prevent inadvertent shifting out of P (Park) unless the ignition is on, the brake pedal is applied, and the shift lock release button is pressed.

When the vehicle is stopped, press ENGINE START/STOP to turn off the vehicle. The transmission will shift to P (Park) automatically unless the vehicle is in N (Neutral), See "Car Wash Mode" following.

The vehicle will not shift into P (Park) if it is moving too fast. Stop the vehicle and shift into P (Park).

To shift in and out of P (Park), see *Shifting Into Park ⇨ 200* and *Shifting out of Park ⇨ 201*.

Service Shift Lever Message

If the message SERVICE SHIFTER SEE OWNER'S MANUAL appears in the Driver Information Center (DIC), the shift lever needs service. Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible. If the vehicle is automatically shifting into P (Park), check to see if the P (Park) button on top of the shift lever is stuck. To operate the vehicle, hold the shift lever in the desired gear, R (Reverse) or D (Drive), until vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h (10 mph), then release the shift lever.

R : Use this gear to back up.

If the vehicle is shifted from either R (Reverse) to D (Drive) or M (Manual Mode), or M (Manual Mode) or D (Drive) to R (Reverse) while the speed is too high, the vehicle will shift to N (Neutral). Reduce the vehicle speed and try the shift again.

To shift into R (Reverse):

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Press and hold shift lock release button on the side of the shift lever.
3. From the center position, move the shift lever forward through the first detent to the end of travel. R is illuminated in red.
4. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

To shift out of R (Reverse):

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shift to the desired gear.
3. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

At low vehicle speeds, R (Reverse) can be used to rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck ⇨ 193*.

N : In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

⚠ Warning

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Caution

Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.

The vehicle is not designed to stay in N (Neutral) for more than five minutes. It may automatically shift into P (Park). N (Neutral) is not intended for towing. If the vehicle needs to be towed, see *Transporting a Disabled Vehicle* ⇨ *309*.

To shift into N (Neutral):

1. Move the shift lever forward to the first detent from the center position.
   - If the vehicle is in P (Park), apply the brake pedal and press the shift lock release button while moving the shift lever forward.
   - N will illuminate in red.
2. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

To shift out of N (Neutral):

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shift to the desired gear. If shifting from N (Neutral) to R (Reverse), press the shift lock release button.
3. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

Car Wash Mode

This vehicle includes a Car Wash Mode that allows the vehicle to remain in N (Neutral) for use in automatic car washes.

Car Wash Mode (Engine Off – Driver in Vehicle)

To place the vehicle in N (Neutral) with the engine off and the vehicle occupied:

1. Drive to the entrance of the car wash.
2. Apply the brake pedal.
3. Shift to N (Neutral).
4. Turn off the engine and release the brake pedal.
5. The indicator should continue to show N. If it does not, repeat Steps 2–4.
6. The vehicle is now ready for the car wash.

Car Wash Mode (Engine Off – Driver out of Vehicle)

To place the vehicle in N (Neutral) with the engine off and the vehicle unoccupied:

1. Drive to the entrance of the car wash.
2. Apply the brake pedal.
3. Open the door.
4. Shift to N (Neutral).
5. Turn off the engine and release the brake pedal.
6. The indicator should continue to show N. If it does not, repeat Steps 2–5.
7. Exit the vehicle and close the door. The vehicle is now ready for the car wash.
8. The vehicle may automatically shift to P (Park) upon re-entry.

Car Wash Mode (Engine On – Driver in Vehicle)

To place the vehicle in N (Neutral) with the engine on and the vehicle occupied:

1. Drive to the entrance of the car wash.
2. Apply the brake pedal.
3. Shift to N (Neutral).

4. Release the brake pedal. The vehicle is now ready for the car wash.

Car Wash Mode (Engine On – Driver out of Vehicle)

To place the vehicle in N (Neutral) with the engine on and the vehicle unoccupied:

1. Drive to the entrance of the car wash.
2. Apply the brake pedal.
3. Open the door.
4. Shift to N (Neutral), then release the brake pedal.
5. The indicator should continue to show N. If it does not, repeat Steps 2–4.
6. Exit the vehicle and close the door. The vehicle is now ready for the car wash.
7. The vehicle may automatically shift to P (Park) upon re-entry.

Caution

A transmission hot message may display if the automatic transmission fluid is too hot. Driving under this condition can damage the vehicle. Stop and idle the engine to cool the automatic

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

transmission fluid. This message clears when the transmission fluid has cooled sufficiently.

D : This position is for normal driving. If more power is needed for passing, press the accelerator pedal down.

To shift into D (Drive):

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. From the center position, move the shift lever back.
   - If the vehicle is in P (Park), press the shift lock release button while pulling the shift lever back.
   - D will illuminate in red.
   - After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

To shift out of D (Drive):

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shift to the desired gear.
3. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding. See “Skidding” under *Loss of Control* ⇨ *183*.

Caution

Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If the vehicle is stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

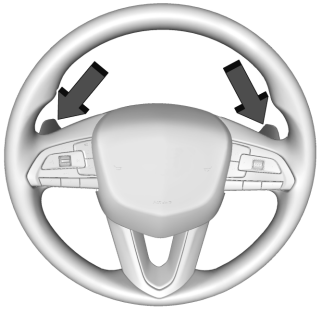
If equipped with the 2.0L L4 engine, engine speeds may be increased while driving at highway speeds while the engine is still warming up.

Manual Mode

Tap Shift

Caution

Driving with the engine at a high rpm without upshifting while using Tap Shift, could damage the vehicle. Always upshift when necessary while using Tap Shift.



If equipped, vehicles with Tap Shift have controls on the back of the steering wheel to manually shift the automatic transmission.

Permanent Tap Shift Mode

To enter Permanent Tap Shift Mode:

1. With the vehicle in D (Drive), pull back on the shift lever to activate M (Manual Mode). The M in the shift pattern will illuminate in red, and the D will switch to white. While in Permanent Tap Shift Mode, the M on the instrument cluster will be highlighted and the current gear shown.
2. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.
3. Pull the control toward you to shift. Pull the left control to downshift, and the right control to upshift. To shift to the lowest available gear, pull and hold the left control.

To exit Permanent Tap Shift Mode:

1. To exit M (Manual Mode) and return to D (Drive), pull back on the shift lever. The D in the shift pattern will illuminate in red, and the M will switch to white.
2. After releasing the shift lever, it will return to the center position.

M (Manual Mode) can be exited to return to D (Drive) at any speed by pulling the lever rearward from the center position. It is not necessary to stop the vehicle or shift to N (Neutral) or P (Park) prior to shifting back to D (Drive).

Temporary Tap Manual Shift Mode

To enter Temporary Tap Shift Mode:

1. With the transmission in D (Drive) and not in Permanent Tap Shift Mode, the Tap Shift controls will activate a Temporary Tap Manual Shift Mode, allowing the transmission to be manually shifted. While in Temporary Tap Shift Mode, the D on the instrument cluster will be highlighted and the current gear shown.
2. To shift to the lowest available gear, press and hold the left control.
3. To deactivate, hold the right control briefly. Automatic shifts return after no manual shifts have been done for seven to 10 seconds.

While using Tap Shift, the vehicle will have firmer, quicker shifting. This can be used for sport driving or when climbing or descending hills, to stay in gear longer, or to downshift for more power or engine braking.

The transmission will only allow shifting into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (rpm). The transmission will not automatically shift to the next higher gear if the engine rpm is too high. It will only automatically shift to the next lower gear if the engine rpm is much too low.

Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive

Vehicles with this feature always send engine power to all four wheels. It is fully automatic, and adjusts itself as needed for road conditions.

Brakes

Electric Brake Boost

Vehicles equipped with electric brake boost have hydraulic brake circuits that are electronically controlled when the brake pedal is applied during normal operation. The system performs routine tests and turns off within a few minutes after the vehicle is turned off. Noise may be heard during this time. If the brake pedal is pressed during the tests or when the electric brake boost system is off, a noticeable change in pedal force and travel may be felt. This is normal.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) helps prevent a braking skid and maintain steering while braking hard.



If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *100*.

ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot on the brake pedal and does not always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle ahead, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room ahead to stop, even with ABS.

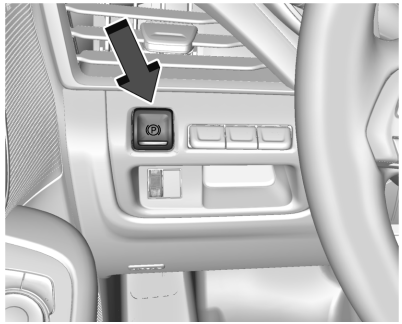
Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly. Hearing and feeling ABS operate is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows steering and braking at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help even more than braking.

Electric Parking Brake



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) can always be applied, even if the vehicle is off. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released. To prevent draining the battery, avoid unnecessary repeated cycles of the EPB.

The system has a red parking brake status light and an amber service parking brake warning light. See *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *99* and *Service Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *99*. There are also parking brake-related Driver Information Center (DIC) messages.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the red parking brake status light to ensure that the parking brake is applied.

EPB Apply

To apply the EPB:

1. Be sure the vehicle is at a complete stop.
2. Press the EPB switch momentarily.

The red parking brake status light will flash and then stay on once the EPB is fully applied. If the red parking brake status light flashes continuously, then the EPB is only partially applied or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will display. Release the EPB and try to apply it again. If the light does not come on, or keeps flashing, have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the red parking brake status light is flashing. See your dealer.

If the amber service parking brake warning light is on, press the EPB switch. Continue to hold the switch until the red parking brake status light remains on. If the amber service parking brake warning light is on, see your dealer.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is moving, the vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is pressed. If the switch is pressed until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

The vehicle may automatically apply the EPB in some situations when the vehicle is not moving. This is normal, and is done to periodically check the correct operation of the EPB system, or at the request of other safety functions that utilize the EPB.

If the EPB fails to apply, block the rear wheels to prevent vehicle movement.

EPB Release

To release the EPB:

1. Turn the ignition on or to accessory mode.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the EPB switch momentarily.

The EPB is released when the red parking brake status light is off.

If the amber service parking brake warning light is on, release the EPB by pressing and holding the EPB switch. Continue to hold the switch until the red parking brake status light is off. If either light stays on after release is attempted, see your dealer.

Caution

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear, and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

Brake Assist

Brake Assist detects rapid brake pedal applications due to emergency braking situations and provides additional braking to activate the Antilock Brake System (ABS) if the brake pedal is not pushed hard enough to activate ABS normally. Minor noise, brake pedal pulsation, and/or pedal movement during this time may occur. Continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. Brake Assist disengages when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

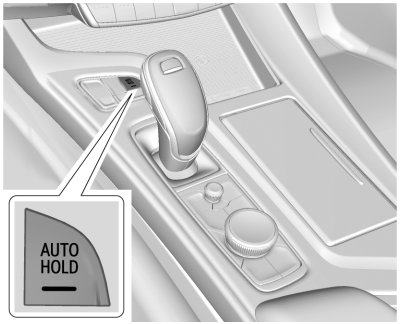
⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the HSA feature. HSA does not replace the need to pay attention and drive safely. You may not hear or feel alerts or warnings provided by this system. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *181*.

When the vehicle is stopped on a grade, Hill Start Assist (HSA) temporarily prevents the vehicle from rolling in an unintended direction during the transition from brake pedal release to accelerator pedal apply. The brakes release when the accelerator pedal is applied or automatically release after a few seconds. The brakes may also release under other conditions. Do not rely on HSA to hold the vehicle.

HSA is available when the vehicle is facing uphill in a forward gear, or when facing downhill in R (Reverse). The vehicle must come to a complete stop on a grade for HSA to activate.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)



⚠ Warning

Do not rely on this feature. It does not replace the need to pay attention and drive safely. You may not hear or feel alerts or warnings provided by this system. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

When Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) is turned on and the vehicle is braked to a stop, AVH prevents the vehicle from moving during the transition from brake pedal release to accelerator pedal apply. The brakes release when the accelerator pedal is applied. The brakes may also release under other conditions. Do not rely on AVH to hold the vehicle.

If the accelerator pedal is not applied within a few minutes, the Electric Parking Brake will apply. The parking brake will also apply if the driver door is opened or the driver seat belt is unfastened while AVH is holding the vehicle.

AVH can be turned on by pressing AUTO HOLD. The indicator light on the switch will come on. The AVH light on the instrument panel will come on while AVH is actively holding the vehicle. See *Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) Light* ⇨ *100*.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) and StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC). These systems help limit wheel slip and assist the driver in maintaining control, especially on slippery road conditions.

TCS activates if it senses that any of the drive wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, the system brakes the spinning wheel(s) and/or reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

StabiliTrak/ESC activates when the computer senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually traveling. StabiliTrak/ESC selectively applies braking pressure at any one of the vehicle's brakes to help steer the vehicle in the intended direction.

If cruise control is being used and TCS or StabiliTrak/ESC begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control will disengage. Cruise control may be turned back on when road conditions allow.

Both systems come on automatically when the vehicle is started and begins to move. The systems may be heard or felt while they are operating or while performing diagnostic checks. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

It is recommended to leave both systems on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn TCS off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck ⇨ 193* and "Turning the Systems Off and On" later in this section.



The indicator light for both systems is in the instrument cluster. This light will:

- Flash when TCS is limiting wheel spin.
- Flash when StabiliTrak/ESC is activated.
- Turn on and stay on when either system is not working.

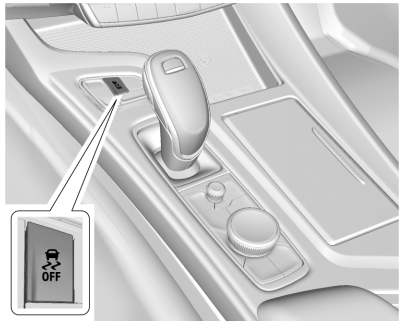
If either system fails to turn on or to activate, a message may display in the Driver Information Center (DIC), and comes on and stays on to indicate that the system is inactive and is not assisting the driver in maintaining control. The vehicle is safe to drive, but driving should be adjusted accordingly.

If comes on and stays on:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

Drive the vehicle. if comes on and stays on, the vehicle may need more time to diagnose the problem. If the condition persists, see your dealer.

Turning the Systems Off and On



Caution

Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

To turn off only TCS, press and release . The traction off light displays in the instrument cluster. A DIC message may display.

To turn TCS on again, press and release . The traction off light displayed in the instrument cluster will turn off.

If TCS is limiting wheel spin when is pressed, the system will not turn off until the wheels stop spinning.

To turn off both TCS and StabiliTrak/ESC, press and hold until the traction off light and StabiliTrak/ESC OFF light come on and stay on in the instrument cluster. A DIC message may display.

To turn TCS and StabiliTrak/ESC on again, press and release . The traction off light and StabiliTrak/ESC OFF light in the instrument cluster turn off.

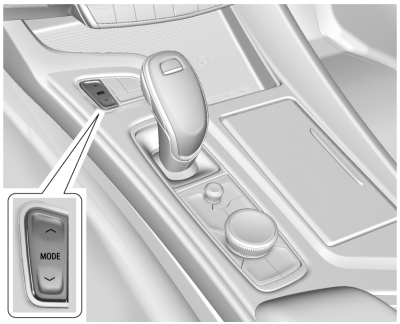
Adding accessories can affect the vehicle's performance. See *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *253*.

Driver Mode Control

Driver Mode Control (DMC) allows the driver to adjust the overall driving experience to better suit driver preference by adjusting vehicle systems to fit specific driving needs. Drive mode availability and affected vehicle systems are dependent on vehicle trim level, region, and optional features.

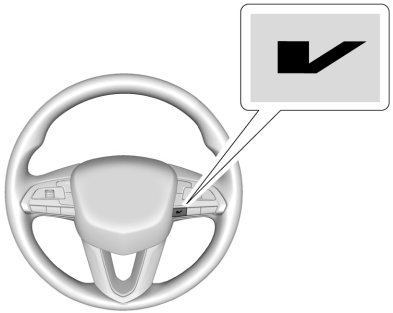
If the vehicle is in Tour, Sport, and My mode, it will stay in that mode through future ignition cycles. If the vehicle is in any other mode, it will return to Tour mode when the vehicle is restarted. When a mode is selected, an indicator will come on in the instrument cluster and stay on.

Mode Activation

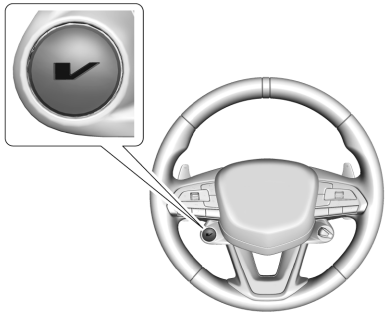


Driver Mode Control Switch

To activate, press the MODE switch on the center console. Use the up and down arrows to move through the menu.

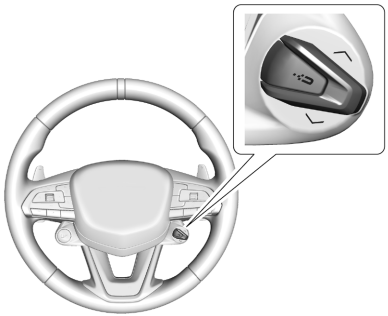


V-Mode Switch (Variant 1)



V-Mode Switch (Variant 2)

Depending on trim level, the V-Mode switch may be located on the right side or left side of the steering wheel. To activate V-Mode, press the V-Mode switch on the steering wheel. To deactivate, select a different mode using the DMC switch, or press the V-Mode switch again.



Performance Traction Management (PTM) Switch

If equipped, activate PTM by pressing up on the PTM switch on the steering wheel. A PTM menu will appear in the Driver Information Center (DIC). Press up or down on the PTM switch to scroll through the options and make a selection. To exit PTM, select INACTIVE in the PTM menu.

Mode Description

Tour Mode

Use for normal city and highway driving to provide a smooth, soft ride. This mode provides a balance between comfort and handling. This is the standard mode. See "Mode Selection Attributes" later in this section. When Tour mode is selected, no indicator will display.

Sport Mode

Use this mode where road conditions or personal preference demand a more controlled response. When this mode is selected, the vehicle immediately downshifts. The vehicle also monitors driving behaviors and automatically enables Performance Shift Features when spirited driving is detected. These features maintain lower transmission gears to increase available engine braking and improve acceleration response. The vehicle will exit this feature and return to normal operation after a short period when spirited driving is no longer detected. The steering changes to provide more precise control. If the vehicle has Magnetic Ride Control, the suspension changes to provide better cornering performance.

See "Mode Selection Attributes" later in this section.

Snow/Ice Mode

Use this mode for slippery surfaces to help control wheel speed. This mode can compromise the acceleration on dry asphalt.

This feature is not intended for use when the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, or gravel. If the vehicle is stuck, see *If the Vehicle Is Stuck ⇨ 193*.

See "Mode Selection Attributes" later in this section.

Track Mode (V-Series and V-Series Blackwing)

When in Track mode, the automatic transmission and steering function similar to Sport mode. The accelerator pedal is adjusted to give maximum control during the highest level of spirited driving. The Magnetic Ride Control will be set to the optimum level for vehicle responsiveness. PTM can be accessed through this mode. See "Performance Traction Management" in *Competitive Driving Mode ⇨ 217*.

See "Mode Selection Attributes" later in this section.

While driving on a track, turn off applicable driver assistance features. For more information see *Assistance Systems for Driving* ⇨ *238*.

My Mode

My mode is used to personalize everyday driving. This mode is designed to allow the driver to configure vehicle systems to their own preference for city or normal driving.

Through the DIC, the following vehicle systems may be available for customization in this mode.

- Engine Sound: Stealth, Tour (Default), Sport, Track
- Steering: Tour (default), Sport, Track
- Suspension: Tour (default), Sport, Track
- Brake Response: Tour (default), Sport, Track

For information on the range of settings, see "Driver Mode Customization".

V-Mode (V-Series and V-Series Blackwing)

V-Mode is used to personalize dynamic driving. This mode is designed to allow the driver to configure vehicle sub-systems to their own preference for maximum handling. V-Mode further enhances the drivers experience by adding a powertrain customization. Through the DIC, the following vehicle systems may be available for customization in this mode.

- Engine Sound: Stealth, Tour, Sport (default), Track
- Steering: Tour, Sport (default), Track
- Suspension: Tour, Sport, (default), Track
- Powertrain: Tour, Sport, (default), Track, Snow/Ice
- PTM: OFF, WET, DRY, SPORT, RACE 1, RACE 2
- Brake Response: Tour, Sport, Track

For information on the range of settings, see "Driver Mode Customization".

Mode Selection Attributes

Modes:	TOUR *Default*	SPORT	TRACK	SNOW/ICE
Powertrain	Tour	Tour	Track	Snow/Ice
Throttle Progression	Tour	Tour	Track	Snow/Ice
Transmission Shift Mode	Tour	Sport	Track	Tour
Engine Sound	Tour	Sport	Track	Tour
Steering	Tour	Sport	Track	Tour
Suspension (if equipped with Magnetic Ride Control)	Tour	Sport	Track	Tour
Traction and Stability Control	Tour	Tour	Track	Tour
Competitive Driving Mode (if equipped)	Not Available	Available	Not Available	Not Available
Performance Traction Mode (if equipped)	Not Available	Not Available	Available	Not Available
Brake Response	Tour	Sport	Track	Tour

Throttle Progression

Adjusts throttle sensitivity by selecting how quick or slow the throttle reacts to input.

- Snow/Ice - The accelerator pedal reduces engine torque at small pedal inputs. This allows better wheel control on slippery surfaces.
- Track - The accelerator pedal adjusts to give maximum control during the highest level of spirited driving.

Transmission Shift Mode

Sport or Track – Dynamic Performance Mode (DPM) allows the transmission to hold the current gear after a quick release of a heavily applied accelerator pedal. This provides greater engine braking and enhanced vehicle control without using the paddles. DPM recognizes aggressive cornering, heavy braking, and high acceleration to select and hold lower gears when not using paddles. The shifts are also firmer to increase the quickness of shifting.

Engine Sound

Adjusts the volume of engine noise.

The sound level changes when the variable exhaust valves open.

Steering (Assist Effort)

Adjusts from a lighter steering feel in Tour mode to reduced assist in Sport and Track mode for more steering feel.

Magnetic Ride Control

If equipped, adjusts the shock dampening firmness from a comfort in Tour mode to an optimized responsiveness tune in Sport and Track.

Stability Control

- Competitive mode allows less computer control to permit some slide and drift and is selected with the TCS/StabiliTrak button – only available in Sport mode.
- StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) can be turned off by pressing and holding the TCS/StabiliTrak button for five seconds.

Brake Response

Adjusts brake pedal sensitivity by selecting how quick or slow the brakes respond to input.

Drive Mode Customization

The following settings can be changed using the Drive Mode Customization Menu. See Settings > Vehicle > Drive Mode Customization in the center display to customize My Mode or V-Mode.

Engine Sound

Engine sound adjusts the volume of engine noise. The settings range from quietest to loudest volume from Stealth through Track.

- Stealth, Tour, Sport, Track

Steering

Steering adjusts the effort required to turn the steering wheel. The steering wheel offers better feedback in the Tour setting, but requires more effort in the Sport and Track settings.

- Tour, Sport, Track

Suspension

Suspension adjusts the firmness of the suspension in the vehicle. Suspension adjusts the stiffness of the shocks and / or springs. The ride is more comfortable at lower settings and is stiffer at higher settings for better control.

- Tour, Sport, Track

Powertrain

Powertrain adjusts the throttle response, gear shifting and engine performance. Throttle response increases in the Sport, Track, and Snow/Ice settings, and gear shifting is more aggressive.

- Tour, Sport, Track, Snow/Ice

Brake Response

Brake Response adjusts the brake pedal response. Settings range from a slower response for more comfortable driving to the quickest response for quicker deceleration. Brake pedal travel decreases and caliper pressure increases in the Sport and Track settings.

- Tour, Sport, Track

PTM

If equipped, PTM controls vehicle performance systems for professional handling on race tracks. Traction Control and Stability Control are reduced when moving through each of the settings. Changing PTM settings may also automatically change the other subsystem settings. While driving on a track, turn off all active safety features. While driving on a track, turn off applicable driver assistance features. For more

information, see *Assistance Systems for Driving* ⇨ *238*. For more information on PTM, see *Competitive Driving Mode* ⇨ *217*.

- Off, Wet, Dry, Sport, Race 1, Race 2

Competitive Driving Mode

To select this optional handling mode, place the vehicle in Sport Mode and press OFF two times and the Driver Information Center (DIC) will display COMPETITIVE MODE ON. While in the Competitive Driving Mode, the traction off light and StabiliTrak/ESC OFF light OFF will come on in the instrument cluster. Traction Control System (TCS) does not limit wheel spin, the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (eLSD) allows increased vehicle agility, and more effort is required to turn the steering wheel. See "Limited-Slip Differential (V–Series Only)" later in this section. Adjust your driving accordingly.

Press OFF again, or turn the vehicle to accessory mode and restart the vehicle, to turn TCS back on. The traction off light and StabiliTrak/ESC OFF light OFF will go out.

Caution

When traction control is turned off, or Competitive Driving Mode is active, it is possible to lose traction.

Performance Traction Management (PTM)

If equipped, PTM can be activated through V-Mode customization or by pressing the ESC switch twice while in Track Mode. Depending on available options and trim levels, it can also be activated through a separate PTM switch on the steering wheel.

To activate PTM through V-Mode customization, select the desired PTM state in the center stack (Settings > Vehicle > Drive Mode Customization > V-Mode). Press the V-Mode switch once to activate V-Mode. When PTM is configured, a message will appear in the DIC "V-Mode Active – Press Again for PTM On – ESC May be Disabled." To confirm and enter PTM, press the V-Mode switch again. The PTM state can now be modified using the MODE switch or changing the V-Mode PTM settings in the center stack. Both the V-Mode and PTM indicators are displayed. To exit PTM, press the ESC switch. To cancel, press the center dismiss button on the steering wheel (V-Mode remains active).

If available, PTM can also be activated through a PTM switch on the steering wheel by pressing up on the switch. From there a PTM menu will appear in the DIC. Press up or down on the PTM switch to scroll through the options and make a selection. To exit PTM, select INACTIVE in the PTM menu, turn off PTM in the V-Mode configuration page, or press the ESC switch once.

Selecting PTM states may modify Off, Wet, Dry, Sport, Race 1, and Race 2 V-Mode customization options.

In vehicles with a PTM steering wheel switch, Inactive, Wet, Dry, Sport, Race 1, and Race 2 PTM states are available through the moding menu.

In vehicles without a PTM steering wheel switch, Wet, Dry, Sport, Race 1, and Race 2 PTM states are available through the moding menu.

The following is a DIC display description and the recommended usage of each mode:

WET

- Intended for all driver skill levels.
- Wet or damp conditions only — not intended for use in heavy rain or standing water.
- StabiliTrak/ESC is on and engine power is reduced based on conditions.

DRY

- For use by less experienced drivers or while learning a new track.
- Dry conditions only.
- StabiliTrak/ESC is on and engine power is slightly reduced.

SPORT

- For use by drivers who are familiar with the track.
- Dry conditions only.
- Requires more driving skill than DRY.
- StabiliTrak/ESC is on and more engine power is available than in DRY.

RACE 1

- For use by drivers who are familiar with the track.
- Dry conditions only.
- Requires more driving skill than modes DRY or SPORT.
- StabiliTrak/ESC is off and available engine power is the same as SPORT.

RACE 2

- For use by experienced drivers who are familiar with the track.
- Dry conditions only.
- Requires more driving skill than in other modes.
- StabiliTrak/ESC is off and engine power is available for maximum cornering speed.

In any PTM Mode, Launch Control is available. Use PTM Race 2 for the most consistent performance during drag strip use. See "Custom Launch Control" in *Track Events and Competitive Driving (V-Series and V-Series Blackwing)* ⇨ *183*.

Launch Control

If equipped, Launch Control is available within Competitive Driving Mode and PTM to allow high levels of vehicle acceleration in a straight line. Launch Control is a form of traction control that manages tire spin while launching the vehicle. This feature is intended for use during closed course race events where consistent zero to 60 and quarter mile times are desirable.

Launch Control is only available when the following criteria are met:

- Competitive Driving Mode is selected or any of the PTM modes are selected. The traction off light comes on in the instrument cluster and the appropriate DIC message displays.
- The vehicle is not moving.
- The steering wheel is pointing straight.

Automatic Transmissions

- The brake pedal is firmly pressed to the floor, equivalent to a panic brake event.
- The accelerator pedal is rapidly applied to wide open throttle. If the vehicle rolls due to wide open throttle, release the throttle, press the brake pedal more firmly, and reapply the accelerator to wide open throttle.

Launch Control will initially limit engine speed as you rapidly apply the accelerator pedal to wide open throttle. Allow the engine rpm to stabilize. A smooth, quick release of the brake pedal, while maintaining the fully pressed accelerator pedal, will manage wheel slip.

After the vehicle is launched, the system continues in Competitive Driving Mode or PTM.

Competitive Driving Mode, PTM, and Launch Control are systems designed for a closed course race track and not intended for public roads. The systems are not intended to compensate for lack of driver experience or familiarity with the race track.

Limited-Slip Differential

If equipped, the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (eLSD) is automatically activated. eLSD actively monitors vehicle sensors and driver inputs to determine the amount of change for the conditions. With eLSD, the vehicle has:

- Enhanced high-speed control.
- Improved traction through corners, allowing more acceleration.
- More precise steering.
- Increased vehicle agility.
- Integration with StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

For vehicles with eLSD, driven under severe conditions, the rear axle fluid should be changed. See *Competitive Driving Mode* ⇨ *217* and *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*.

Cruise Control

Cruise control allows the vehicle to maintain a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more without active acceleration. Cruise control does not work at speeds below 40 km/h (25 mph).

⚠ Warning

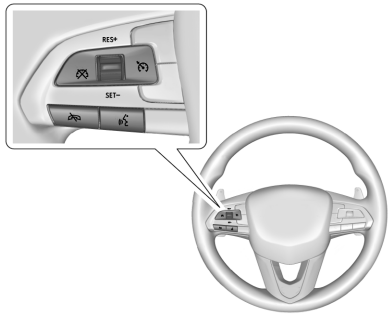
Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. Do not use cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

Cruise control will disengage if:

- Traction Control System (TCS) and/or StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system activates to limit wheel spin. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *210*.
- TCS or StabiliTrak/ESC is turned off.
- A collision alert occurs. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *239*.
- The brakes are applied.

When road conditions allow cruise control to be safely used, cruise control can be turned back on.



: Press to turn cruise control on and off. A white indicator light comes on in the instrument cluster when cruise control is turned on.

RES+ : If there is a set speed in memory, press briefly to resume to that speed or press and hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase the vehicle speed.

SET− : Press briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease the vehicle speed.

: Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Setting Cruise Control

If cruise control is on when not in use, SET− or RES+ could get pressed and engage cruise control when not desired. Keep cruise control off when it is not being used. Press to turn off cruise control.

1. Press .
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET−. The set speed briefly appears in the instrument cluster.
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

When cruise control has been set to the desired speed, the cruise control indicator light turns green on the instrument cluster and a cruise set speed message appears on the Head-Up Display (HUD), if equipped.

Resuming a Set Speed

If cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied or is pressed, cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, press RES+ briefly. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If cruise control is already active:

- Press and hold RES+ until the desired speed is reached, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, briefly press RES+ to the first position. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) faster.
- To increase vehicle speed in larger increments, briefly press RES+ to the second position. For each press, the vehicle speed increases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster (Uplevel)* ⇨ *90* or *Instrument Cluster (Base Level)* ⇨ *87*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If cruise control is already active:

- Press and hold SET− until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in small increments, briefly press SET− to the first position. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) slower.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in larger increments, briefly press SET− to the second position. For each press, the vehicle speed decreases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The cruise control system may automatically brake to slow the vehicle down.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster (Uplevel)* ⇨ *90* or *Instrument Cluster (Base Level)* ⇨ *87*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previous set cruise speed.

While pressing the accelerator pedal or shortly following the release to override cruise control, briefly pressing SET– will result in the cruise speed being set to the current vehicle speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well cruise control works on a hill depends on the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hill. When driving up a steep hill, you may need to apply the accelerator pedal to maintain the set speed. When driving down a steep hill, cruise control may automatically apply the brakes to slow the vehicle down and maintain the set speed. Also, you may need to apply the brake pedal or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle speed down. If you apply the brake pedal, cruise control will disengage.

Ending Cruise Control

There are four ways to end cruise control:

- Lightly apply the brake pedal.
- Press .
- Shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
- Press .

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)

If equipped, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) allows you to select the cruise control set speed and following gap. Read this entire section before using this system. The following gap is the following time between your vehicle and a vehicle detected directly ahead in your path, moving in the same direction. If no vehicle is detected in your path, ACC works like regular cruise control. ACC uses camera and radar sensors.

If a vehicle is detected in your path, ACC can speed up the vehicle or apply limited, moderate braking to maintain the selected following gap. To disengage ACC, apply the brake. If the Traction Control System (TCS) or StabiliTrak/Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system activates while ACC is engaged, ACC may automatically disengage. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *210*. When road conditions allow ACC to be safely used, ACC can be turned back on. ACC will not engage if the TCS or StabiliTrak/ESC electronic stability control system is disabled. If ACC applies the brakes, the Antilock Brake System (ABS) may be felt or heard. Hearing and feeling ABS operate is normal.

ACC can reduce the need for you to frequently brake and accelerate, especially when used on expressways, freeways, and interstate highways. When used on other roads, you may need to take over the control of braking or acceleration more often.

⚠ Warning

ACC has limited braking ability and may not have time to slow the vehicle down enough to avoid a collision with another vehicle you are following. This can occur when vehicles suddenly slow or stop ahead, or enter your lane. Also see "Alerting the Driver" in this section. Complete attention is always required

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

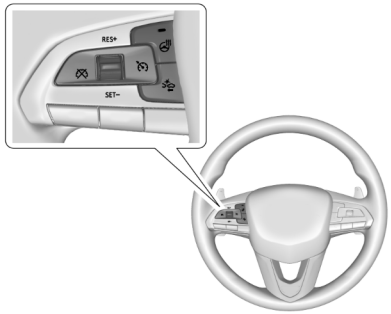
while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *181*.

⚠ Warning

ACC will not detect or brake for children, pedestrians, animals, or other objects.

Do not use ACC when:

- On winding and hilly roads or when the sensors are blocked by snow, ice, or dirt. The system may not detect a vehicle ahead. Keep the entire front of the vehicle clean.
- Visibility is low, such as in fog, rain, or snow conditions. ACC performance is limited under these conditions.
- On slippery roads where fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip.



: Press to turn the system on or off. The indicator light turns white on the instrument cluster when ACC is turned on.

RES+ : Press briefly to resume the previous set speed or to increase vehicle speed if ACC is already engaged. To increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press RES+ to the first position. To increase speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press RES+ to the second position.

SET– : Press briefly to set the speed and activate ACC or to decrease vehicle speed if ACC is already engaged. To decrease speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET– to the first position. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET– to the second position.

: Press to disengage ACC without erasing the selected set speed.

: Press to select a following gap time (or distance) setting for ACC of Far, Medium, or Near.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster (Uplevel)* ⇨ *90* or *Instrument Cluster (Base Level)* ⇨ *87*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

Switching Between ACC and Regular Cruise Control

To switch between ACC and regular cruise control, press and hold . A Driver Information Display (DIC) message displays. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *114*.



ACC Indicator (Base Level)



ACC Indicator (Uplevel)



Regular Cruise Control Indicator

When ACC is engaged, a green indicator light is lit on the instrument cluster. When the regular cruise control is engaged, a green indicator light is lit on the instrument cluster. The following gap will not display.

When the vehicle is turned on, the cruise control mode will be set to the last mode used before the vehicle was turned off.

⚠ Warning

Always check the cruise control indicator on the instrument cluster to determine which mode cruise control is in before using the feature. If ACC is not active, the vehicle will not automatically brake for other vehicles, which could cause a crash if the brakes are not applied manually. You and others could be seriously injured or killed.

Setting Adaptive Cruise Control

If is on when not in use, SET-/RES+ could be pressed by mistake and activate ACC when not desired. Keep off when cruise is not being used.

Select the set speed desired for ACC. This is the vehicle speed when no vehicle is detected in its path.

While the vehicle is moving, ACC will not set at a speed less than 5 km/h (3 mph), although it can be resumed. The minimum allowable set speed is 25 km/h (15 mph).

To set ACC while moving:

1. Press .
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET−.
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator.

After ACC is set, it may immediately apply the brakes if a vehicle ahead is detected closer than the selected following gap.

ACC can also be set while the vehicle is stopped if ACC is on and the brake pedal is applied.

The ACC indicator light displays on the instrument cluster and Head-Up Display (HUD), if equipped. When ACC is turned on, the indicator light is lit white. When ACC is engaged, the indicator light turns green.

Be mindful of speed limits, surrounding traffic speeds, and weather conditions when selecting the set speed.

Resuming a Set Speed

If ACC is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, ACC is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

To begin using ACC again, press RES+ up briefly while moving more than 5 km/h (3 mph). The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

If the vehicle is stopped with the brake pedal applied, press RES+ and release the brake pedal. ACC will hold the vehicle until RES+ or the accelerator pedal is pressed.

A green ACC indicator light and the set speed display on the instrument cluster. The vehicle ahead indicator light may be flashing if a vehicle ahead was present and moved. See “Approaching and Following a Vehicle” later in this section.

Once ACC has resumed, if there is no vehicle ahead, if the vehicle ahead is beyond the selected following gap, or if the vehicle has exited a sharp curve, then the vehicle speed will increase to the set speed.

Increasing Speed While ACC Is at a Set Speed

If ACC is already activated, do one of the following:

- Use the accelerator to get to the higher speed. Press SET− . Release the control and the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will now cruise at the higher speed.

  When the accelerator pedal is pressed, ACC will not brake because it is overridden. The ACC indicator light will turn blue on the instrument panel and HUD, if equipped
- Press and hold RES+ until the desired set speed is displayed, then release it.
- To increase speed in smaller increments, press RES+ to the first position. For each press, the vehicle goes 1 km/h (1 mph) faster.
- To increase speed in larger increments, press RES+ to the second position. For each press, the vehicle speed increases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The set speed can also be increased while the vehicle is stopped.

- If stopped with the brake applied, press RES+ until the desired set speed is displayed.
- If ACC is holding the vehicle at a stop and there is another vehicle directly ahead, pressing RES+ will increase the set speed.
- Pressing RES+ when there is no longer a vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is pulling away and the brake is not applied will cause the ACC to resume.

When it is determined there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is beyond the selected following gap, then the vehicle speed will increase to the set speed.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster (Uplevel)* ⇨ *90* or *Instrument Cluster (Base Level)* ⇨ *87*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

Reducing Speed While ACC Is at a Set Speed

If ACC is already activated, do one of the following:

- Use the brake to get to the desired lower speed. Release the brake and press SET−. The vehicle will now cruise at the lower speed.
- Press and hold SET− until the desired lower speed is displayed, then release it.
- To decrease speed in smaller increments, press SET− to the first position. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) slower.
- To decrease speed in larger increments, press or hold SET− to the second position. For each press, the vehicle speed decreases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

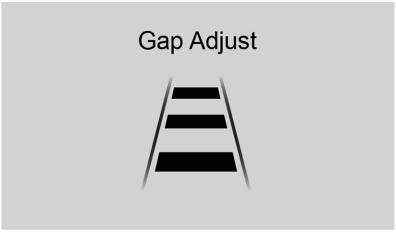
  The set speed can also be decreased while the vehicle is stopped.
- To decrease speed while the vehicle is stopped, press SET− until the desired set speed is displayed.

Selecting the Follow Distance Gap

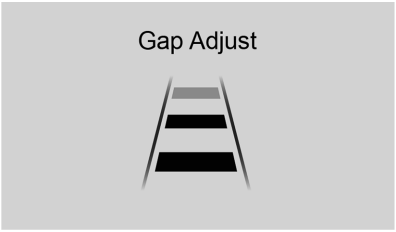
When a slower moving vehicle is detected ahead within the selected following gap, ACC will adjust the vehicle's speed and attempt to maintain the follow distance gap selected.

Press on the steering wheel to adjust the following gap. Each press cycles the gap button through three settings: Far, Medium, or Near.

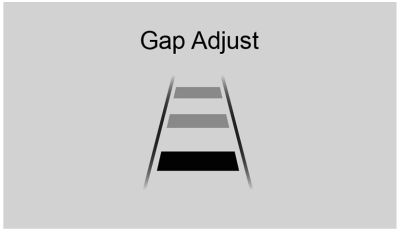
When pressed, the current gap setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster and HUD (if equipped). The gap setting will be maintained until it is changed.



Far Gap Setting



Medium Gap Setting

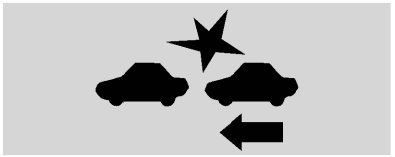


Near Gap Setting

Since each gap setting corresponds to a following time (Far, Medium, or Near), the following distance will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further back your vehicle will follow a vehicle detected ahead. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the following gap. The range of selectable gaps may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

The gap setting used by ACC is independent to the alert timing sensitivity (Far, Medium, or Near) used by the Forward Collision Alert (FCA) system. If ACC is active, pressing only modifies the gap setting used by ACC without changing the alert timing sensitivity used by FCA. If ACC is not active, pressing the only modifies the alert timing sensitivity used by FCA without modifying the gap setting used by ACC. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *239*.

Alerting the Driver



If ACC is engaged, driver action may be required when ACC cannot apply sufficient braking because of approaching a vehicle too rapidly.

When this condition occurs, the collision alert symbol will flash on the windshield. Either eight beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Collision/Detection Systems."

See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *181*.

Approaching and Following a Vehicle



The vehicle ahead indicator light is in the instrument cluster and HUD display, if equipped.

The vehicle ahead indicator light only displays when a vehicle is detected in your vehicle's path moving in the same direction.

If this symbol is not displaying, ACC will not respond to or brake to vehicles ahead.

ACC automatically slows the vehicle down and adjusts vehicle speed to follow a detected vehicle ahead at the selected follow gap. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow a detected vehicle in front of your vehicle when that vehicle is traveling slower than your vehicle set speed. It may apply limited braking, if necessary. When braking is active, the brake lamps will come on. The automatic braking may feel or sound different than if the brakes were applied manually. This is normal.

Passing a Vehicle While Using ACC

If the set speed is high enough, and the left turn signal is used to pass a vehicle ahead in the selected following gap, ACC may assist by gradually accelerating the vehicle prior to the lane change.

⚠ Warning

When using ACC to pass a vehicle or perform a lane change, the following distance to the vehicle being passed may be reduced. ACC may not apply sufficient acceleration or braking when passing a vehicle or performing a lane change. Always be ready to manually accelerate or brake to complete the pass or lane change.

Stationary or Very Slow-Moving Objects

⚠ Warning

ACC may not detect and react to stopped or slow-moving vehicles ahead of you. For example, the system may not brake for a vehicle it has never detected moving. This can occur in stop-and-go traffic or when a vehicle suddenly appears due to a vehicle

(Continued)

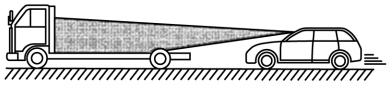
Warning (Continued)

ahead changing lanes. Your vehicle may not stop and could cause a crash. Use caution when using ACC. Your complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

Irregular Objects Affecting ACC

ACC may have difficulty detecting the following objects:

- Vehicles with cargo extending from the back end.
- Non-standard shaped vehicles, such as vehicle transport, vehicles with a side car fitted, or horse carriages.
- Objects that are close to the front of your vehicle.



ACC Automatically Disengages

ACC may automatically disengage and you will need to manually apply the brakes to slow the vehicle when:

- The sensors are blocked.
- The Traction Control System (TCS) or StabiliTrak/ESC system has activated or been disabled.
- There is a fault in the system.
- The radar falsely reports blockage when driving in a desert or remote area with no other vehicles or roadside objects.
- A DIC message may display to indicate that ACC is temporarily unavailable.

The ACC indicator light turns white when ACC is no longer active.

In some cases, when ACC will not activate, regular Cruise Control may be used. See "Switching Between ACC and Regular Cruise Control" previously in this section. Always consider driving conditions before using either cruise control system.

Notification to Resume ACC

ACC will maintain a follow gap behind a detected vehicle and slow your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

If the stopped vehicle ahead has driven away and ACC has not resumed, the vehicle ahead indicator light will flash as a reminder to check traffic ahead before proceeding. In addition, the left and right sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse three times, or three beeps will sound. Touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Alert Type" and "Adaptive Cruise Go Notifier" in "Collision/ Detection Systems".

When the vehicle ahead drives away, ACC resumes automatically if the stop was brief. If necessary, press RES+ or the accelerator pedal to resume ACC. If stopped for more than two minutes or if the driver door is opened and the driver seat belt is unbuckled, the ACC automatically applies the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle. The EPB status light will turn on. See *Electric Parking Brake ⇨ 208*. To release the EPB, press the accelerator pedal.

A DIC warning message may display indicating to shift to P (Park) before exiting the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

If ACC has stopped the vehicle, and if ACC is disengaged, turned off, or canceled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop. The vehicle can move. When ACC is holding the vehicle at a stop, always be prepared to manually apply the brakes.

⚠ Warning

Leaving the vehicle without placing it in P (Park) can be dangerous. Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by ACC. Always place the vehicle in P (Park) and turn off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

ACC Override

If using the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, the ACC indicator light turns blue on the instrument cluster and in the HUD (if equipped) to indicate that automatic braking will not occur. ACC will resume operation when the accelerator pedal is not being pressed.

⚠ Warning

The ACC will not automatically apply the brakes if your foot is resting on the accelerator pedal. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you.

Curves in the Road

⚠ Warning

On curves, ACC may not detect a vehicle ahead in your lane. You could be startled if the vehicle accelerates up to the set speed, especially when following a vehicle exiting or entering exit ramps. You could lose control of the vehicle or crash. Do not use ACC while driving on an entrance or exit ramp. Always be ready to use the brakes if necessary.

⚠ Warning

On curves, ACC may respond to a vehicle in another lane, or may not have time to react to a vehicle in your lane. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you, or lose control of your vehicle. Give extra

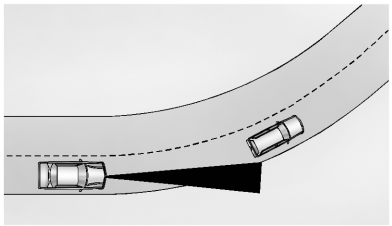
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

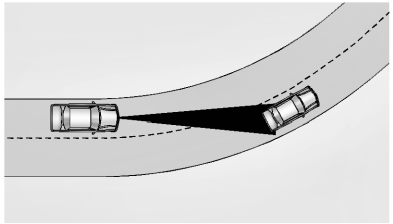
attention in curves and be ready to use the brakes if necessary. Select an appropriate speed while driving in curves.

ACC may operate differently in a sharp curve. It may reduce the vehicle speed if the curve is too sharp.

ACC automatically slows the vehicle down while navigating the curve and may increase speed out of the curve, but will not exceed the set speed.



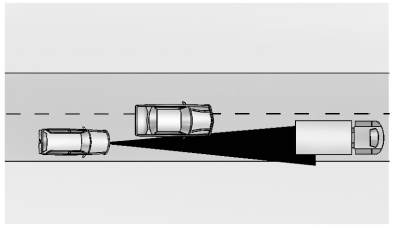
When following a vehicle and entering a curve, ACC may not detect the vehicle ahead and accelerate to the set speed. When this happens, the vehicle ahead indicator light will not appear.



ACC may detect a vehicle that is not in your lane and apply the brakes.

ACC may occasionally provide an alert and/or braking that is considered unnecessary. It could respond to vehicles in different lanes, signs, guardrails, and other stationary objects when entering or exiting a curve. This is normal operation. The vehicle does not need service.

Other Vehicle Lane Changes



ACC will not detect a vehicle ahead until it is completely in the lane. The brakes may need to be manually applied.

Objects Not Directly in Front of Your Vehicle

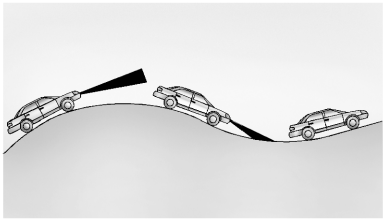
The detection of objects in front of the vehicle may not be possible if:

- The vehicle or object ahead is not within your lane.
- The vehicle ahead is shifted, not centered, or is shifted to one side of the lane.

Driving in Narrow Lanes

Vehicles in adjacent traffic lanes or roadside objects may be incorrectly detected when located along the roadway.

Do Not Use ACC on Hills and When Towing a Trailer



Do not use ACC when driving on steep hills or when towing a trailer. ACC will not detect a vehicle in the lane while driving on steep hills. If the brakes are applied, ACC disengages.

Disengaging ACC

There are three ways to disengage ACC:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press .
- Press .

Erasing Speed Memory

The ACC set speed is erased from memory if is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

Weather Conditions Affecting ACC

System operation may be limited under snow, heavy rain, or road spray conditions.

Conditions that are associated with low visibility, such as fog, rain, snow, or road spray, may limit ACC performance. Water droplets from rain or snow that remain on the windshield may also limit ACC's ability to detect objects.

Accessory Installations and Vehicle Modifications

Do not install or place any object around the front camera windshield area that would obstruct the front camera view.

Do not install objects on top of the vehicle that overhang and obstruct the front camera, such as a canoe, kayak, or other items that can be transported on the vehicle roof.

Do not modify the hood, headlamps, or fog lamps, as this may limit the camera's ability to detect an object.

Cleaning the Sensing System

The camera sensor on the windshield behind the rearview mirror and the radar sensors on the front of the vehicle can become blocked by snow, ice, dirt, or mud. These areas need to be cleaned for ACC to operate properly.

If ACC will not operate, regular cruise control may be available. See "Switching Between ACC and Regular Cruise Control" previously in this section. Always consider driving conditions before using either cruise control system.

For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *311*.

Advanced Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, backing, and parking. Read this entire section before using these systems.

⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear or feel alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *181*.

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.
- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.
- Work if the detection sensor is covered up, such as with a sticker, magnet, or metal plate.
- Work if the detection sensor viewing zone is interrupted by an installed accessory, such as a bike rack, or hitch mounted cargo carrier.
- Work if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not properly repaired.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

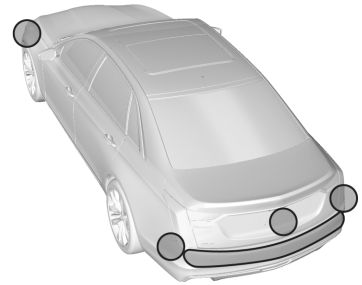
Audible or Safety Alert Seat

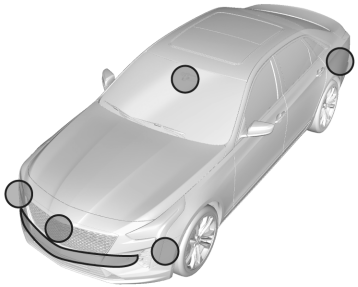
Some driver assistance features alert the driver of obstacles by beeping. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Comfort and Convenience".

If equipped with the Safety Alert Seat, the driver seat cushion may provide a vibrating pulse alert instead of beeping. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Collision/ Detection Systems".

Cleaning

Depending on vehicle options, keep these areas of the vehicle clean to ensure the best driver assistance feature performance. Driver Information Center (DIC) messages may display when the systems are unavailable or blocked.





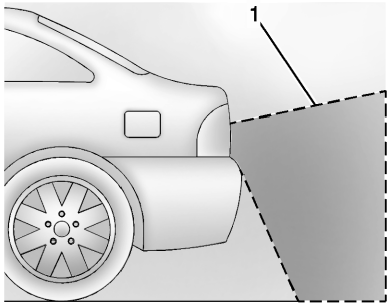
- Front and rear bumpers and the area below the bumpers
- Front grille and headlamps
- Front camera lens in the front grille or near the front emblem
- Front side and rear side panels
- Outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror
- Side camera lens on the bottom of the outside mirrors
- Rear side corner bumpers
- Rear Vision Camera above the license plate

Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing

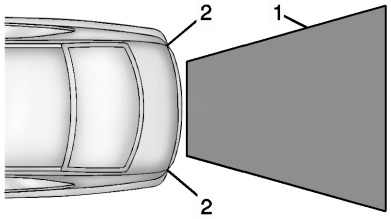
If equipped, the Rear Vision Camera (RVC), Rear Park Assist (RPA), Front Park Assist (FPA), Surround Vision, Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) and Backing Warning System, and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) may help the driver park or avoid objects. Always check around the vehicle when parking or backing.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

When the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse), the RVC displays an image of the area behind the vehicle in the infotainment display. The previous screen displays when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse) after a short delay. To return to the previous screen sooner, press Home or Back on the infotainment system, shift into P (Park), or reach a vehicle speed of approximately 12 km/h (8 mph) while in D (Drive).



1. View Displayed by the Camera



1. View Displayed by the Camera
2. Corners of the Rear Bumper

Displayed images may be farther or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper do not display.

A warning triangle may display to show that RPA or RCTA has detected an object. This triangle changes from amber to red and increases in size the closer the object.

⚠ Warning

The camera(s) do not display children, pedestrians, bicyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other object outside of the cameras' field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle. Shown distances may be different from actual distances. Do not drive or park the vehicle using only these camera(s). Always check behind and around the vehicle before driving. Failure to use proper care may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

Surround Vision System

If equipped, Surround Vision shows an image of the area surrounding the vehicle, along with the front or rear camera views on the infotainment display. The front camera is in the grille or near the front emblem, the side cameras are on the bottom of the outside mirrors, and the rear camera is above the license plate.

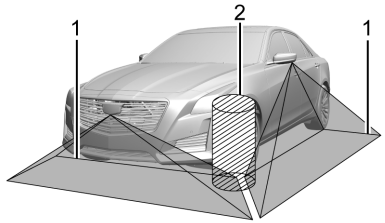
The Surround Vision system can be accessed by selecting CAMERA in the infotainment display or when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). To return to the previous screen sooner, press any button on the infotainment system, shift into P (Park), or reach a vehicle speed of approximately 12 km/h (8 mph).

⚠ Warning

The Surround Vision cameras have blind spots and will not display all objects near the corners of the vehicle. Folding outside mirrors that are out of position may not display surround view correctly. Always check around the vehicle when parking or backing.

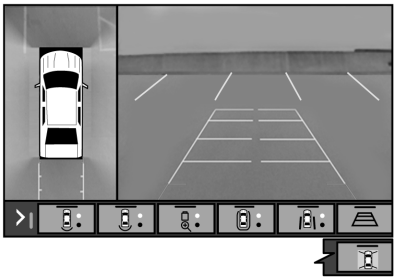


1. Views Displayed by the Surround Vision Cameras
2. Area Not Shown



1. Views Displayed by the Surround Vision Cameras
2. Area Not Shown

Camera Views



Touch the camera view buttons along the bottom of the infotainment display.

Front/Rear Standard View : Displays an image of the area in front or behind the vehicle. Touch Front/Rear Standard View on the infotainment display when a camera view is active. Touching the button multiple times will toggle between front and rear camera views.

If equipped, the front view camera also displays when the Park Assist system detects an object within 30 cm (12 in).

Front/Rear Overhead View : Displays a front or rear overhead view of the vehicle. Touching the button will toggle between the two views.

Side Forward/Rearward View : Displays a view that shows objects next to the front or rear sides of the vehicle. Touch Side Forward/Rearward View on the infotainment display when a camera view is active. Touching the button multiple times will toggle between forward and rearward views. Rear Pedestrian Alert, Park Assist, and RCTA are not available when Side Forward/ Rearward view is active.

Guidance Lines : Displays available guidelines. The horizontal markings represent distance from the vehicle.

Top Down View : Displays an image of the area surrounding the vehicle, along with other views in the infotainment display. Top Down can be enabled or disabled by pressing the Top Down View button multiple times.

Park Assist

The vehicle may be equipped with the Rear Park Assist (RPA) or Front and Rear Park Assist (FRPA). The Park Assist system may provide assistance to driver when backing up and parking. Park Assist uses ultrasonic sensors in the bumpers to measure the distance between the vehicle and objects. The system calculates the distance between vehicle and object via measuring the time it takes for the ultrasonic waves to bounce back from the object. Park Assist works only at speeds up to about 11 Km/h (7 mph). An illuminated LED in the parking assist button indicates that the system is ready to operate. The sensors on the bumpers may detect objects up to 1.8m (6 ft) behind and 1.25m (4 ft) in front of the vehicle within a zone 25 cm (10 in) high off the ground and below bumper level. These detection distances may be shorter during warmer or humid weather. Blocked sensors will not detect objects and can also cause false detections. Keep the sensors clean of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush; and clean sensors after a car wash in freezing temperatures.

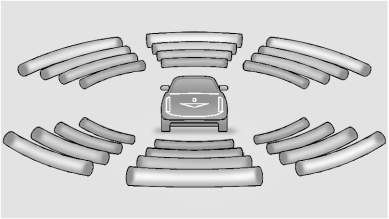
⚠ Warning

The Park Assist System is no substitute for careful and attentive driving. The Park Assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 11 km/h (7 mph). To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with Park Assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or backing.



How the System Works

The instrument cluster may have a Park Assist display with bars that show "distance to object," driving direction, and object location information for the Park Assist system. As the object gets closer, more bars light up and the bars change color from yellow to amber to red.

Beeps sound to warn the driver of certain objects that are detected around the vehicle. The frequency of beeps increases as the vehicle gets closer to the object. When the object is very close to the vehicle, the beeps are continuous. Beeps for the front are higher pitched than beeps for the rear. If equipped with Safety Alert seat, both sides of the seat will pulse alongside the beeps.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The following messages may be displayed on the DIC:

SERVICE PARKING ASSIST : If this message occurs, check the following conditions:

- The sensors are not clean. Keep the vehicle's rear bumper free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care* ⇨ *311*.
- The Park Assist sensors are covered by frost or ice. Frost or ice can form around and behind the sensors and may not always be seen; this can occur after washing the vehicle in cold weather. The message may not clear until the frost or ice has melted.

If the above conditions do not exist, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.

PARK ASSIST OFF : If the PA system does not activate due to a temporary condition, the appropriate message displays on the DIC. PA OFF message is displayed when disabled by the driver. Front/Rear PA OFF message is displayed when an attached object is detected in the front or rear respectively. PA Temporarily Unavailable message is displayed for system failures. This can occur under the following conditions:

- The driver has disabled the system.
- An object was hanging out of the trunk during the last drive cycle. Once the object is removed, RPA will return to normal operation.
- The bumper is damaged. Take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.
- Other conditions, such as vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of air brakes on a very large truck, are affecting system performance.

Turning the Feature On or Off

Touch P on the center stack to turn on or off the Front and Rear Park Assist, Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB), and the Backing Warning System at the same time. The indicator light next to the button comes on when the features are on and turns off when the features have been disabled.

Turn off Park Assist when towing a trailer.

To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Collision/ Detection Systems".

Automatic Parking Assist (APA)

If equipped, APA searches for and steers the vehicle into parallel and perpendicular parking spots. When using APA, you must still shift gears while the system applies the brakes and accelerator. A display and audible beeps help to guide parking maneuvers.

Do not use APA when towing a trailer.

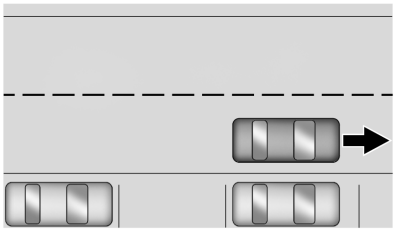
⚠ Warning

APA may not detect objects in the parking space, objects that are soft or narrow, objects high off the ground such as flatbed trucks, objects below ground level such as large potholes, or moving objects (e.g. pedestrians). Always verify that the parking space is appropriate for parking a vehicle. APA does not respond to changes in the parking space, such as movement of an adjacent vehicle, or a person or object entering the parking space. APA does not detect or avoid traffic that is behind or alongside of the vehicle. Always be prepared to stop the vehicle during the parking maneuver.

Touch P on the center stack to enable the system to search for a parking space that is large enough and within 1.5 m (5 ft) of the vehicle. The vehicle speed must be below 30 km/h (18 mph). The system cannot:

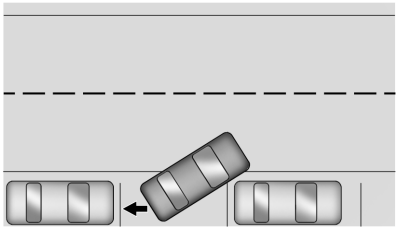
- Detect whether it is a legal parking space.
- Park exactly lined up with the vehicle next to it if the spot is approached at an angle or if the parking space is angled.
- Park exactly centered in a spot that is marked too large.
- Always detect short curbs.

When enabled, APA searches for parallel parking spaces to the right of the vehicle. To search for a parking space to the left, turn on the left turn signal or, if available, change the side selection in the infotainment display. To switch the parking mode between parallel and perpendicular, change the parking mode in the infotainment display.



After completely passing a large enough space, an audible beep occurs. A red stop symbol and a shift to reverse message are displayed.

If the vehicle is in R (Reverse), but does not steer into the expected space, this may be because the system is maneuvering the vehicle into a previously detected space. The APA system does not need service.



APA will instruct the vehicle to stop once a large enough space is found. Follow the displayed instructions. When instructed to drive in reverse, shift to R (Reverse) to engage automatic steering. The steering wheel will vibrate briefly as a reminder to remove hands from the steering wheel. Check surroundings and continue braking or accelerating as needed, and be prepared to stop to avoid vehicles, pedestrians, or objects. If the vehicle exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph), APA is automatically disengaged.

A progress arrow displays the status of the parking maneuver. Depending on the space size, additional maneuvers may be required, and there will be additional instructions. When changing gears, allow the automatic steering to complete before continuing the parking maneuver. APA will beep and display a PARKING COMPLETE message. Secure the vehicle against rolling away by applying parking brake.

APA may automatically disengage if:

- The steering wheel is used by the driver.
- The maximum allowed speed is exceeded.
- The parking brake is applied or the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).
- There is a failure with the APA system.
- Electronic stability control or antilock brakes are activated.
- The driver opens the door with an unbuckled seat belt.

The brake holds the vehicle until the parking brake or brake is applied, or the vehicle is shifted into P (Park).

To cancel APA, touch P again.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The APA system may require a short period of driving along curves to calibrate.

Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB)

Backing Warning and Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB)

If equipped, vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) have the Backing Warning System and Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) system. When in R (Reverse), Backing Warning alerts of rear objects at vehicle speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph), and RAB may automatically brake hard at speeds between 1–32 km/h (0.5–20 mph).

The Backing Warning System will beep once from the rear when an object is first detected, or pulse twice on both sides of the Safety Alert Seat. When the system detects a potential crash, beeps will be heard from the rear, or five pulses will be felt on both sides of the Safety Alert Seat. There may also be a brief, sharp application of the brakes.

⚠ Warning

The Backing Warning System only operates at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph). It does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. In some situations, such as at higher backing speeds, there may not be enough time for the short, sharp application of the vehicle brake system to occur. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with the Backing Warning System, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before backing.

When the vehicle is in R (Reverse), if the system detects the vehicle is backing too fast to avoid a crash with a detected object behind your vehicle in your path, it may automatically brake hard to a stop to help avoid or reduce the harm caused by a backing crash.

⚠ Warning

RAB may not avoid many types of backing crashes. Do not wait for the automatic braking to apply. This system is not designed to replace driver braking and only works in R (Reverse) when an object is detected directly behind the (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

vehicle. It may not brake or stop in time to avoid a crash. It will not brake for objects when the vehicle is moving at very low speeds. It does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with RAB, always check the area around the vehicle before and while backing.

Pressing the brake pedal after the vehicle comes to a stop will release RAB. If the brake pedal is not pressed soon after the stop, the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) may be set. When it is safe, press the accelerator pedal firmly at any time to override RAB.

⚠ Warning

There may be instances where unexpected or undesired automatic braking occurs. If this happens, either press the brake pedal or firmly press the accelerator pedal to release the brakes from the RAB system. Before releasing (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the brakes, check the RVC and check the area around the vehicle to make sure it is safe to proceed.

Unexpected braking events are possible with a static installed accessory, such as a bike rack or hitch-mounted cargo carrier.

Rear Pedestrian Alert

If equipped, and under certain conditions, this feature can provide alerts for a pedestrian within the system's range directly behind the vehicle. This feature only works in R (Reverse) below 12 km/h (8 mph), and detects pedestrians up to 8 m (26 ft) away during daytime driving. During nighttime driving, feature performance is very limited.



Rear Pedestrian Alert Indicator

When a pedestrian is detected within the system's range directly behind the vehicle, this symbol flashes amber on the infotainment display, along with five beeps from the rear, or if equipped, two pulses from both sides of the driver seat. When a pedestrian is detected close to the vehicle, the symbol flashes red on the infotainment display, along with ten beeps from the rear, or if equipped, seven pulses from both sides of the driver seat.

⚠ Warning

Rear Pedestrian Alert does not automatically brake the vehicle. It also does not provide an alert unless it detects a pedestrian, and it may not detect all pedestrians if:

- The pedestrian is not directly behind the vehicle, fully visible to the Rear Vision Camera (RVC), or standing upright.
- The pedestrian is part of a group.
- The pedestrian is a child.
- Visibility is poor, including nighttime conditions, fog, rain, or snow.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- The RVC is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice.
- The RVC, taillamps, or back-up lamps are not cleaned or in proper working condition.
- The vehicle is not in R (Reverse).

To help avoid death or injury, always check for pedestrians around the vehicle before backing up. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *181*. Keep the RVC, taillamps, and back-up lamps clean and in good repair.

Rear Pedestrian Alert can be set to Off or Alert. To view available settings from the infotainment screen, touch Settings > Vehicle > Collision/Detection Systems > Rear Pedestrian Detection.

If equipped, alerts can be set to beeps or seat pulses. To view available settings from the infotainment screen, touch Settings > Vehicle > Collision/Detection Systems > Alert Type.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System

If equipped, RCTA displays a red warning triangle with a left or right pointing arrow to warn of traffic coming from the left or right. This system detects objects coming from up to 20 m (65 ft) from the left or right side of the vehicle. When an object is detected, either three beeps sound from the left or right or three Safety Alert Seat pulses occur on the left or right side, depending on the direction of the detected vehicle.

Turning the Feature On or Off

To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Collision/Detection Systems".

Assistance Systems for Driving

If equipped, when driving the vehicle in a forward gear, Forward Collision Alert (FCA), Lane Departure Warning (LDW), Lane Keep Assist (LKA), Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA), Lane Change Alert (LCA), Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB), and/or the Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System can help to avoid a crash or reduce crash damage.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

The FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a red flashing alert on the windshield and rapidly beeps or pulses the driver seat. FCA also lights an amber visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m (197 ft) and operates at speeds above 8 km/h (5 mph). If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it can detect vehicles to distances of approximately 110 m (360 ft) and operates at all speeds. See *Adaptive Cruise Control (Advanced)* ⇨ *221*.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

warning at all. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *181*.

FCA can be disabled through vehicle personalization. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Collision/Detection Systems".

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead

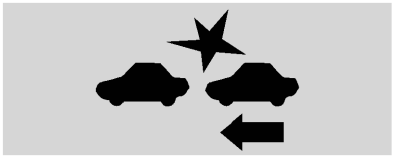


FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected, the vehicle ahead indicator will display green. Vehicles may not be detected on curves, highway exit ramps, or hills, due to poor visibility; or if a vehicle ahead is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

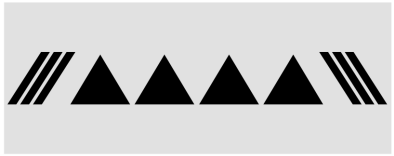
⚠ Warning

FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windshield is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windshield are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windshield, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

Collision Alert



With Head-Up Display



Without Head-Up Display

When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash on the windshield. Also, eight rapid high-pitched beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. When this Collision Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed.

Tailgating Alert



The vehicle ahead indicator will display amber when you are following a vehicle ahead much too closely.

Selecting the Alert Timing



The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press to set the FCA timing to Far, Medium, or Near. The first button press shows the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect the timing of both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timings may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

If your vehicle is equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), changing the FCA timing setting automatically changes the following gap setting (Far, Medium, or Near).

Following Distance Indicator

The following distance to a moving vehicle ahead in your path is indicated in following time in seconds on the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*. The minimum following time is 0.5 seconds away. If there is no vehicle detected ahead, or the vehicle ahead is out of sensor range, dashes will be displayed.

Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, this may correct the issue:

- Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror.
- Clean the entire front of the vehicle.
- Clean the headlamps.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

If equipped, the AEB system may help avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. AEB also includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA). When the system detects a vehicle in the path ahead that is traveling in the same direction, and that you may be about to crash into, it can provide a boost to braking, or automatically brake the vehicle. This can help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes when driving in a forward gear. Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard. Always wear a seat belt and ensure that all passengers are properly restrained. This Automatic Emergency Braking can only occur if a vehicle is detected. This is shown by the Forward Collision Alert (FCA) vehicle ahead indicator being lit. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *239*.

The system works when driving in a forward gear between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph), or on vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), above 4 km/h (2 mph). It can detect vehicles up to approximately 60 m (197 ft).

⚠ Warning

AEB is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on AEB to brake the vehicle. AEB will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles.

AEB may not:

- Detect a vehicle ahead on winding or hilly roads.
- Detect all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detect a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Detect a vehicle ahead if it is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

AEB may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash. If this happens, AEB may engage the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle at a stop. Release the EPB or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

AEB may automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and undesired. It could respond to a turning vehicle ahead, guardrails, signs, and other non-moving objects. To override AEB, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA)

IBA may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. IBA will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

IBA may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

AEB and IBA can be disabled through vehicle settings. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Collision/Detection Systems".

⚠ Warning

Using AEB or IBA while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and crash. Turn the system to Alert or Off when towing a trailer.

A system unavailable message may display if:

- The front of the vehicle or windshield is not clean.
- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with object detection.
- There is a problem with the StabiliTrak/ Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system.

The AEB system does not need service.

Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) System

If equipped, the FPB system may help avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes with nearby pedestrians when driving in a forward gear. FPB displays an amber indicator, , when a nearby pedestrian is detected ahead. When approaching a detected pedestrian too quickly, FPB provides a red flashing alert on the windshield and rapidly beeps or pulses the driver seat. FPB can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle. This system includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA), and the Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) System may also respond to pedestrians. Always wear a seat belt and ensure that all passengers are properly restrained. See *Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)* ⇨ *241*.

The FPB system can detect and alert to pedestrians in a forward gear at speeds between 8 km/h (5 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph). During daytime driving, the system detects pedestrians up to a distance of approximately 40 m (131 ft). During nighttime driving, system performance is very limited.

⚠ Warning

FPB does not provide an alert or automatically brake the vehicle, unless it detects a pedestrian. FPB may not detect pedestrians, including children:

- When the pedestrian is not directly ahead, fully visible, or standing upright, or when part of a group.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Due to poor visibility, including nighttime conditions, fog, rain, or snow.
- If the FPB sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice.
- If the headlamps or windshield are not cleaned or in proper condition.

Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. For more information, see *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *181*. Keep the windshield, headlamps, and FPB sensor clean and in good repair.

FPB can be set to Off, Alert, or Alert & Brake through vehicle personalization. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Collision/ Detection Systems".

Detecting the Pedestrian Ahead

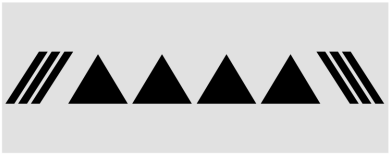


FPB alerts and automatic braking will not occur unless the FPB system detects a pedestrian. When a pedestrian that may enter the vehicle's forward path is detected, the pedestrian ahead indicator will display amber.

Front Pedestrian Alert



With Head-Up Display



Without Head-Up Display

When the vehicle approaches a pedestrian ahead too rapidly, the red FPB alert display will flash on the windshield. Eight rapid high-pitched beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. When this Pedestrian Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the Front Pedestrian Alert occurs.

Automatic Braking

If FPB detects it is about to crash into a pedestrian directly ahead, and the brakes have not been applied, FPB may automatically brake moderately or brake hard. This can help to avoid some very low speed pedestrian crashes or reduce pedestrian injury. FPB can automatically brake to detected pedestrians between

8 km/h (5 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph). Automatic braking levels may be reduced under certain conditions, such as higher speeds.

FPB may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try and avoid a potential collision with a pedestrian. If this happens, Automatic Braking may engage the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle at a stop. Release the EPB. A firm press of the accelerator pedal will also release Automatic Braking and the EPB.

⚠ Warning

FPB may alert or automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and undesired. It could falsely alert or brake for objects similar in shape or size to pedestrians, including shadows. This is normal operation and the vehicle does not need service. To override Automatic Braking, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Automatic Braking can be disabled through vehicle personalization. To view available settings for this feature, touch the Settings icon on the infotainment home page. Select "Vehicle" to display the list of available options and select "Collision/Detection Systems".

⚠ Warning

Using the Front Pedestrian Braking system while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and crash. Turn the system to Alert or Off when towing a trailer.

Cleaning the System

If FPB does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror may correct the issue.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the SBZA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone, or blind spot areas. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the turn signal is activated and a vehicle is also detected on the same side, the display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes. Since this system is part of the Lane Change Alert (LCA) system, read the entire LCA section before using this feature.

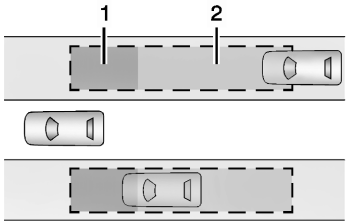
Lane Change Alert (LCA)

If equipped, the LCA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding lane change crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas or with vehicles rapidly approaching these areas from behind. The LCA warning display will light up in the corresponding outside mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on.

⚠ Warning

LCA does not alert the driver to vehicles outside of the system detection zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

LCA Detection Zones



1. SBZA Detection Zone
2. LCA Detection Zone

The LCA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m (11 ft). The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m (1.5 ft) and 2 m (6 ft) off the ground. The Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) warning area starts at approximately the middle of the vehicle and goes back 5 m (16 ft). Drivers are also warned of vehicles rapidly approaching from up to 70 m (230 ft) behind the vehicle.

How the System Works

The LCA symbol lights up in the outside mirrors when the system detects a moving vehicle in the next lane over that is in the side blind zone or rapidly approaching that zone from behind. A lit LCA symbol indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the LCA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.



Left Outside Mirror Display



Right Outside Mirror Display

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror LCA displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right outside mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in the next lane over in that blind zone or rapidly approaching that zone. If the turn signal is activated in the same direction as a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

LCA can be disabled. When you disable LCA, Side Blind Zone Alert is also disabled. To view available settings from the infotainment screen, touch Settings > Vehicle > Collision/Detection Systems. If LCA is disabled by the driver, the LCA mirror displays will not light up.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The LCA system requires some driving for the system to calibrate to maximum performance. This calibration may occur more quickly if the vehicle is driving on a straight highway road with traffic and roadside objects (e.g., guardrails, barriers).

LCA displays may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly, for a stopped vehicle, or when towing a trailer. The LCA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed. Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. LCA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side of the vehicle. Attached objects may also interfere with the detection of vehicles. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

LCA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the next lane over, especially in wet conditions or when driving on sharp

curves. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

LCA may not operate when the LCA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *311*. If the DIC still displays the system unavailable message after cleaning both sides of the vehicle toward the rear corners of the vehicle, see your dealer.

If the LCA displays do not light up when moving vehicles are in the side blind zone or are rapidly approaching this zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

If equipped, LKA may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. This system uses a camera to detect lane markings. The LKA system can be ready to assist at speeds between approximately 60 km/h (37 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph). On some vehicles, the system will instead operate above 50 km/h (31 mph). LKA may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking. It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert if the vehicle unintentionally crosses a detected lane marking. This system is not intended to keep the vehicle centered in the lane. LKA will not assist or alert if the turn signal is active, or if it detects that you are accelerating, braking, or actively steering. LKA can be overridden by turning the steering wheel. If the system detects you are steering intentionally across a lane marker, the LDW will not be given. Do not expect the LDW to occur when you are intentionally crossing a lane marker.

⚠ Warning

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. It may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The LKA and LDW systems may not:

- Provide an alert or enough steering assist to avoid a lane departure or crash.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Detect lane markings under poor weather or visibility conditions. This can occur if the windshield or headlamps are blocked by dirt, snow, or ice; if they are not in proper condition; or if the sun shines directly into the camera.
- Detect road edges.
- Detect lanes on winding or hilly roads.

If LKA only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist or provide an LDW alert when approaching the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marking. Even with LKA and LDW, you must steer the vehicle. Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windshield, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair. Do not use LKA in bad weather conditions or on roads with unclear lane markings, such as construction zones.

⚠ Warning

Using LKA on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Turn the system off.

⚠ Warning

LKA will not alert the driver if a towed trailer crosses into an adjacent lane of travel. Serious injury or property damage may occur if the trailer moves into another lane. Always monitor the trailer position while towing to make sure it is within the same lane as the tow vehicle.

How the System Works

LKA uses a camera sensor installed on the windshield ahead of the rearview mirror to detect lane markings. It may provide brief steering assist if it detects an unintended lane departure. It may further provide an audible alert or the driver seat may pulse indicating that a lane marking has been crossed. The system does not provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) when intentionally steering across a lane marker.

To turn LKA on and off, press on the center stack. If equipped, the indicator light on the button comes on when LKA is on and turns off when LKA is disabled. In some vehicles, a long press of over three seconds is required to turn LKA off.

LKA may not be available in extremely cold temperatures of less than approximately −30° f (−34° c).

When on, is white, if equipped, indicating that the system is not ready to assist. is green if LKA is ready to assist. LKA may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking. is amber when assisting. It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert by flashing amber if the vehicle crosses a detected lane marking. Additionally, there may be three beeps, or the driver seat may pulse three times, on the right or left, depending on the lane departure direction.

Take Steering

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. If LKA does not detect active driver steering, an alert and chime may be provided. Steer the vehicle to dismiss. LKA may become temporarily unavailable after repeated take steering alerts.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The system performance may be affected by:

- Close vehicles ahead.
- Sudden lighting changes, such as when driving through tunnels.
- Banked roads.
- Roads with poor lane markings, such as two-lane roads.

If the LKA system is not functioning properly when lane markings are clearly visible, cleaning the windshield may help.

A camera blocked message may display if the camera is blocked. Some driver assistance systems may have reduced performance or not work at all. An LKA or LDW unavailable message may display if the systems are temporarily unavailable. This message could be due to a blocked camera. The LKA system does not need service. Clean the outside of the windshield behind the rearview mirror.

LKA assistance and/or LDW alerts may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service. Turn LKA off if these conditions continue.

Fuel

Top Tier Fuel

GM recommends the use of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline to keep the engine clean, reduce engine deposits, and maintain optimal vehicle performance. Look for the TOP TIER Logo or see www.toptiergas.com for a list of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline marketers and applicable countries.

TOP TIER
Detergent Gasoline

TOP TIER
بنزين مزيل للأوساخ

Recommended Fuel (LSY 2.0L L4 Engine)



Unleaded petrol with a posted octane rating of 95 RON or greater and with ethanol up to 10% by volume is recommended.
If unavailable, unleaded petrol rated at 91 RON can be used, but will result in reduced performance and driveability, and an audible knocking noise may be heard. Once available, 95 RON petrol or greater should continue to be used. If heavy knocking is heard when using unleaded petrol rated at 95 RON or greater, the engine needs service.

Recommended Fuel (LGY 3.0L V6 and LT4 6.2L V8 Engines)



Use the recommended fuel for proper vehicle maintenance.

Use unleaded petrol with a posted octane rating of 95 RON or higher and with ethanol up to 10% by volume. If the octane is less than 95 RON, repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If heavy knocking is heard when using petrol rated at 95 RON octane, the engine needs service.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Prohibited Fuels

Caution

Do not use fuels with any of the following conditions; doing so may damage the vehicle and void its warranty:

- Fuel with any amount of methanol, methylal, ferrocene, and aniline. These fuels can corrode metal fuel system parts or damage plastic and rubber parts.
- Fuel containing metals such as methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT), which can damage the emissions control system and spark plugs.
- Fuel with a posted octane rating of less than the recommended fuel. Using this fuel will lower fuel economy and performance, and may decrease the life of the emissions catalyst.

Fuel Additives

TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is highly recommended for use with your vehicle. If your country does not have TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, add ACDelco Fuel System Treatment Plus-Gasoline to the vehicle's gasoline fuel tank at every oil change or 15 000 km (9,000 mi), whichever occurs first. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline and ACDelco Fuel System Treatment Plus-Gasoline will help keep your vehicle's engine fuel deposit free and performing optimally. If you are unable to obtain ACDelco Fuel System Treatment Plus - Gasoline, consult your dealer for the GM approved additive available in your country.

Filling the Tank

An arrow on the fuel gauge indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel door is on. See *Fuel Gauge* ⇨ *94*.

⚠ Warning

Fuel vapors and fuel fires burn violently and can cause injury or death.

Follow these guidelines to help avoid injuries to you and others:

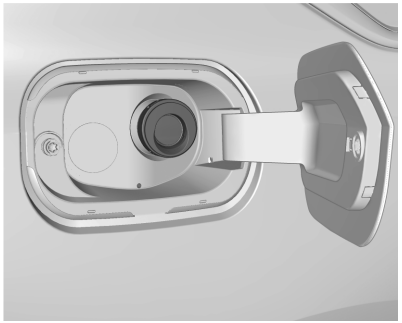
- Read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump island.
- Turn off the engine when refueling.
- Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not leave the fuel pump unattended.
- Avoid using electronic devices while refueling.
- Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel.
- Keep children away from the fuel pump and never let children pump fuel.
- Before touching the fill nozzle, touch a metallic object to discharge static electricity from your body.
- Fuel can spray out if the fill nozzle is inserted too quickly. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Insert the fill nozzle slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop before beginning to flow fuel.

If equipped, the fuel door unlocks when the vehicle doors are unlocked. See *Remote Key Operation* ⇨ *7*.



To open the fuel door, push and release the rearward center edge of the door.

The capless refueling system does not have a fuel cap. Fully insert and latch the fill nozzle, begin fueling.

⚠ Warning

Overfilling the fuel tank by more than three clicks of a standard fill nozzle may cause:

- Vehicle performance issues, including engine stalling and damage to the fuel system.
- Fuel spills.
- Under certain conditions, fuel fires.

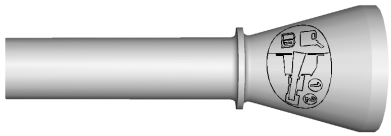
Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait five seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the fill nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *311*. Push the fuel door closed until it latches.

⚠ Warning

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the fill nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Filling the Tank with a Portable Fuel Container

If the vehicle runs out of fuel and must be filled from a portable fuel container:



1. Locate the capless funnel adapter.
2. Insert and latch the funnel into the capless fuel system.

⚠ Warning

Attempting to refuel from a portable fuel container without using the funnel adapter may cause fuel spillage and damage the capless fuel system. This could cause a fire. You or others could be badly burned and the vehicle could be damaged.

3. Remove and clean the funnel adapter and return it to the storage location.

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ Warning

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You or others could be badly burned and the vehicle could be damaged. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, in a pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Maintain contact until filling is complete.
- Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel.
- Avoid using electronic devices while pumping fuel.

Trailer Towing

General Towing Information

⚠ Warning

Never tow a trailer with your vehicle. It was not designed or intended to tow a trailer.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

⚠ Warning

The Data Link Connector (DLC) is used for vehicle service and Emission Inspection/Maintenance testing. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *97*. A device connected to the DLC — such as an aftermarket fleet or driver-behavior tracking device — may interfere with vehicle systems. This could affect vehicle operation and cause a crash. Such devices may also access information stored in the vehicle's systems.

Caution

Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle or cause components to not work and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *58* and *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *59*.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 253
Accessories and Modifications 253

Vehicle Checks
Doing Your Own Service Work 253
Hood 253
Engine Compartment Overview 255
Engine Oil 259
Engine Oil Life System 261
Automatic Transmission Fluid 262
Engine Air Filter Life System 262
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 263
Cooling System 265
Engine Overheating 270
Washer Fluid 271
Brakes 271
Brake Pad Life System (If Equipped) ... 273
Brake Fluid 274
Battery 275
All-Wheel Drive 276
Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check 276
Wiper Blade Replacement 277
Windshield Replacement 277
Gas Strut(s) 278

Headlamp Aiming
Front Headlamp Aiming 279

Bulb Replacement
LED Lighting 279

Electrical System
Electrical System Overload 279
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 281
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 281
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 283
Rear Compartment Fuse Block 286

Wheels and Tires
Tires 288
All-Season Tires 288
Winter Tires 289
Run-Flat Tires 289
Noise Reducing Tires (V-Series Blackwing Only) 289
Low-Profile Tires 290
Summer Tires 290
Tire Pressure 290
Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation 291
Tire Pressure Monitor System 292
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 293
Tire Inspection 295
Tire Rotation 296
When It Is Time for New Tires 297
Buying New Tires 298
Different Size Tires and Wheels 299
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 299
Wheel Replacement 299
Tire Chains 300
If a Tire Goes Flat 300
Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 301
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 306

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 307

Towing the Vehicle
Transporting a Disabled Vehicle 309

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 311
Interior Care 315
Floor Mats 318

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, Driver Assistance Systems, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to suspension components caused by modifying vehicle height outside of factory settings will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, is not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer to accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories installed by a dealer technician.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *59*.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to work on your vehicle if you do not have the proper knowledge, service manual, tools, or parts. Always follow owner's manual procedures and consult the service manual for your vehicle before doing any service work.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *58*.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed.

Caution

Even small amounts of contamination can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

Hood

⚠ Warning

For vehicles with auto engine stop/start, turn the vehicle off before opening the hood. If the vehicle is on, the engine will start when the hood is opened. You or others could be injured.

⚠ Warning

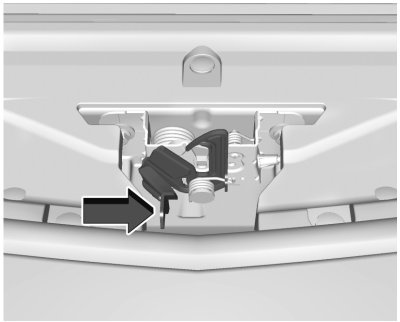
Components under the hood can get hot from running the engine. To help avoid the risk of burning unprotected skin, never touch these components until they have cooled, and always use a glove or towel to avoid direct skin contact.

Clear any snow from the hood before opening.

To open the hood:



1. Pull the hood release lever with the symbol. It is on the lower left side of the instrument panel.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and locate the secondary release lever under the front center of the hood. Push the secondary hood release lever to the right to release.
3. After you have partially lifted the hood, the gas strut system will automatically lift the hood and hold it in the fully open position.

To close the hood:

1. Before closing the hood, be sure all filler caps are on properly, and all tools are removed.
2. Pull the hood down until the strut system is no longer holding up the hood.
3. Lower the hood 20 cm (8 in) above the vehicle. Allow the hood to fall. Check to make sure the hood is latched completely. Repeat this process with additional force if necessary.

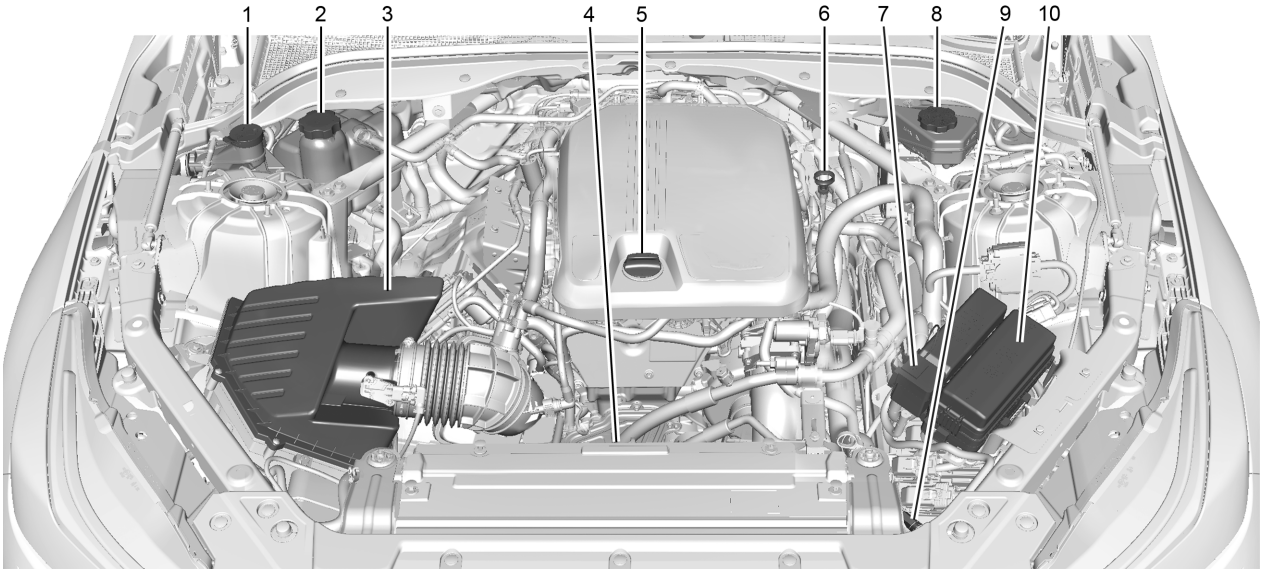
⚠ Warning

Do not drive the vehicle if the hood is not latched completely. The hood could open fully, block your vision, and cause a crash. You or others could be injured. Always close the hood completely before driving.

The Driver Information Center (DIC) will display a message if the hood is not fully closed. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the hood for obstructions, and close the hood again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC.

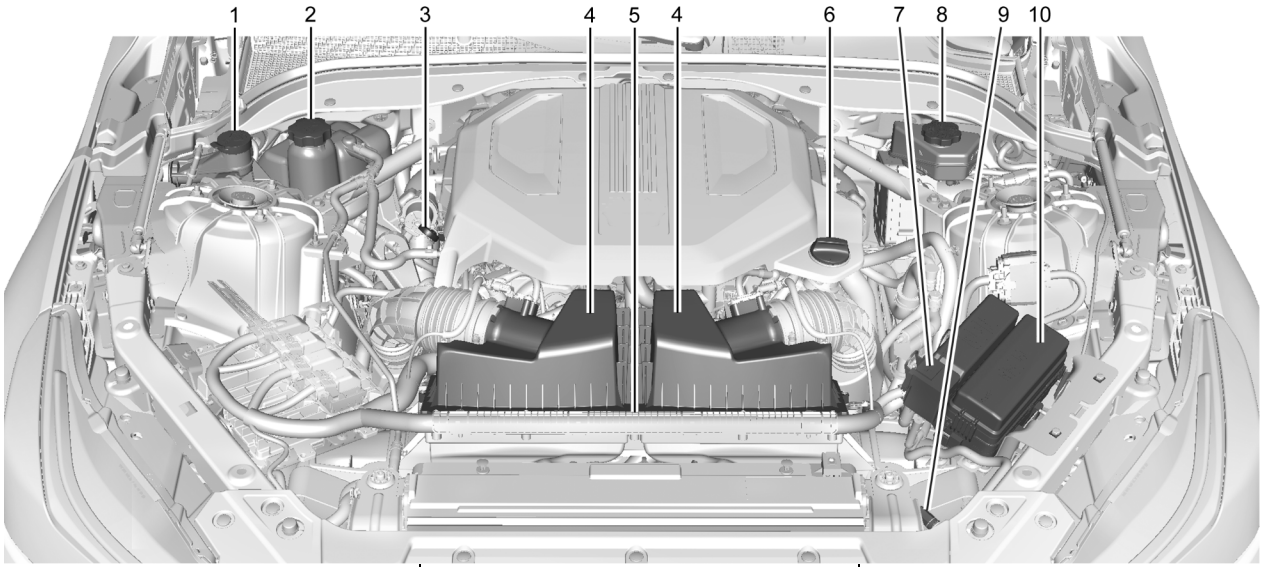
Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Engine Compartment Overview



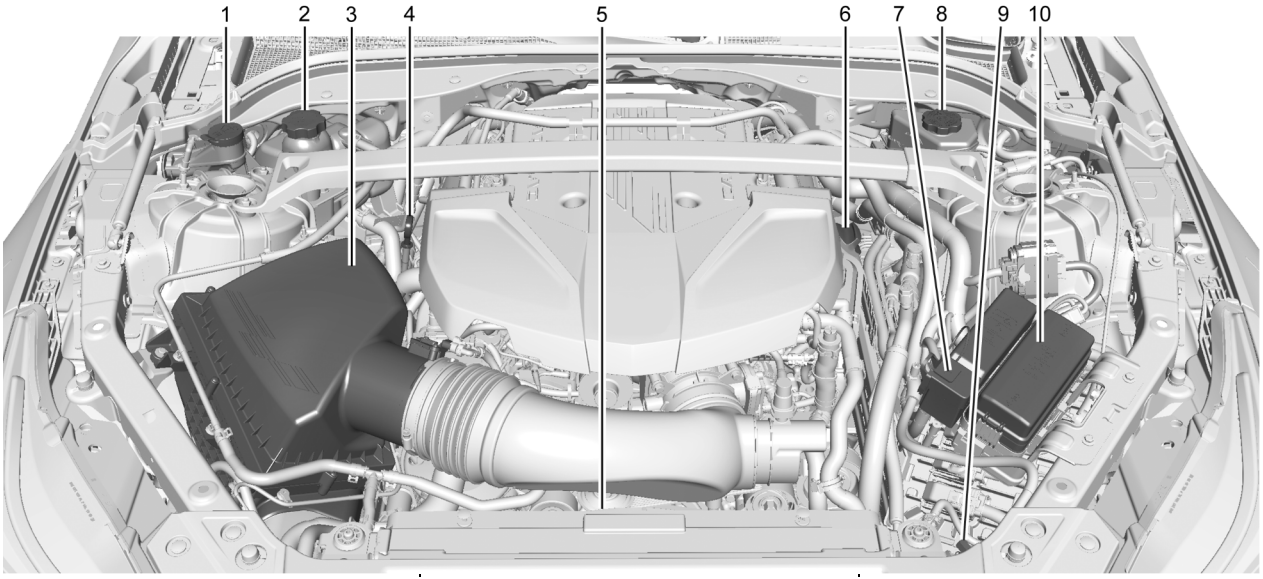
2.0L L4 Engine

1. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.
2. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *265*.
3. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *263*.
4. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System* ⇨ *265*.
5. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
6. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
7. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *307*.
8. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *274*.
9. Remote Negative (-) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *307*.
10. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *281*.



3.0L V6 Engine

1. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.
2. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *265*.
3. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
4. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *263*.
5. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System* ⇨ *265*.
6. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
7. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *307*.
8. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *274*.
9. Remote Negative (-) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *307*.
10. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *281*.



6.2L V8 Engine

1. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.
2. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *265*.
3. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *263*.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
5. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System* ⇨ *265*.
6. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
7. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *307*.
8. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *274*.
9. Remote Negative (-) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *307*.
10. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *281*.

Engine Oil

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See "Selecting the Right Engine Oil" in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See "Checking Engine Oil" and "When to Add Engine Oil" in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *261*.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See "What to Do with Used Oil" in this section.

Checking Engine Oil

Check the engine oil level regularly, every 650 km (400 mi), especially prior to a long trip. The engine oil dipstick handle is a loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *255* for the location.

⚠ Warning

The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

If a low oil Driver Information Center (DIC) message displays, check the oil level.

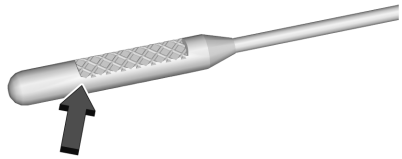
Follow these guidelines:

- To get an accurate reading, park the vehicle on level ground. Check the engine oil level after the engine has been off for at least two hours. Checking the engine oil level on steep grades or too soon after engine shutoff can result in incorrect readings. Accuracy improves when checking a cold engine prior to starting. Remove the dipstick and check the level.
- If unable to wait two hours, the engine must be off for at least 15 minutes if the engine is warm, or at least 30 minutes if the engine is not warm. Pull out the dipstick, wipe it with a clean paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

When to Add Engine Oil



2.0L L4 Turbo (LSY) Engine



3.0L V6 Twin Turbo (LGY) and 6.2L V8 (LT4) Engines

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick and the engine has been off for at least 15 minutes, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See "Selecting the Right Engine Oil" later in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *331*.

Caution

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If the oil level is above the operating range (i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range), the engine could be damaged. Drain the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle, and seek a service professional to remove the excess oil.

See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *255* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil – 2.0L L4 Turbo (LSY) and 3.0L V6 Twin Turbo (LGY) Engines

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *325*.

Specification

Use full synthetic engine oils that meet the dexos1 specification. Engine oils that have been approved by GM as meeting the dexos1 specification are marked with the dexos1 approved logo.

dexos™1
GM APPROVED - GEN 3

Caution

Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Viscosity Grade

For the 2.0L L4 Turbo (LSY) engine, use SAE 0W-20 viscosity grade engine oil.

For the 3.0L V6 Twin Turbo (LGY) engine, use SAE 5W-30 viscosity grade engine oil. Cold Temperature Operation: In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below −29 °C (−20 °F), an SAE 0W-30 oil may be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures.

When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, it is recommended to select an oil of the correct specification. See "Specification" earlier in this section.

Selecting the Right Engine Oil — 6.2L V8 (LT4) Engine

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *325*.

Specification

Use full synthetic engine oils that meet the dexosR specification. Engine oils that have been approved by GM as meeting the dexosR specification are marked with the dexosR approved logo.

dexos™
GM APPROVED

Caution

Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Viscosity Grade

For the 6.2L V8 (LT4) engine, use SAE 0W-40 viscosity grade engine oil. GM recommends Mobil 1 engine oil that shows the dexosR approved logo.

When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, it is recommended to select an oil of the correct specification. See "Specification" earlier in this section.

Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils meeting the dexos specification are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and miles driven. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 mi). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km (3,000 mi) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. To reset the system:

1. Using the DIC buttons, display REMAINING OIL LIFE on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.
2. Press and hold the thumbwheel on the steering wheel. When the confirmation message displays, select YES. The oil life will change to 100%.

   Be careful not to reset the oil life display accidentally at any time other than after the oil is changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change.

The oil life system can also be reset as follows:

1. Using the DIC buttons, display REMAINING OIL LIFE on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.

   If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is not on, the system is reset.

The system is reset when the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is off.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level. A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

The vehicle is not equipped with a transmission fluid level dipstick. There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer. Contact your dealer for additional information.

Caution

Use of the incorrect automatic transmission fluid may damage the vehicle, and the damage may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use the correct automatic transmission fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *325*.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*, and be sure to use the fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *325*.

Engine Air Filter Life System

This feature provides the engine air filter's remaining life and best timing for a change. The timing to change an engine air filter depends on driving and environmental conditions.

When to Change the Engine Air Filter

When the Driver Information Center (DIC) displays a message to replace the engine air filter at the next oil change, follow this timing.

When the DIC displays a message to replace the engine air filter soon, replace the engine air filter at the earliest convenience.

The system must be reset after the engine air filter is changed.

If the DIC displays a message to check the engine air filter system, see your dealer.

How to Reset the Engine Air Filter Life System

To reset:

1. Place the vehicle in P (Park).
2. Display the Air Filter Life on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.
3. Press > on the steering wheel, or press the trip odometer reset stem if the vehicle does not have DIC controls, to move to the Reset/Disable display area. Select Reset, then press the thumbwheel or press the reset stem for several seconds.
4. Press the thumbwheel or the reset stem to confirm the reset.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

The engine air cleaner/filter is in the engine compartment on the passenger side of the vehicle for the 2.0L L4 and 6.2L V8 engines, and in the center of the engine compartment for the 3.0L V6 engine. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *255*.

When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

- For intervals on changing and inspecting the engine air filter, see *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*.
- If equipped with Engine Air Filter Life System, see *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ *262*.
- If driving in very dusty areas, follow the engine air filter inspecting and changing intervals, see *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*.

How to Inspect/Replace the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

Do not start the engine or have the engine running with the engine air cleaner/filter housing open. Before removing the engine air cleaner/filter, make sure that the engine air cleaner/filter housing and nearby components are free of dirt and debris. Do not clean the engine air cleaner/filter or components with water or compressed air.

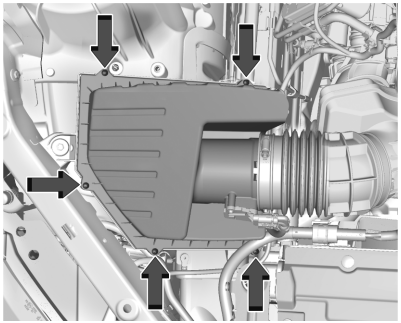
⚠ Warning

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. Use caution when working on the engine. Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle with the air cleaner/filter off, as flames may be present if the engine backfires.

Caution

If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when driving.

To inspect or replace the air cleaner/filter:



2.0L L4 Engine

1. Remove the five screws on top of the air cleaner/filter cover.
2. Lift the air/cleaner/filter cover away from the air cleaner/filter housing.
3. Pull out the air cleaner/filter.

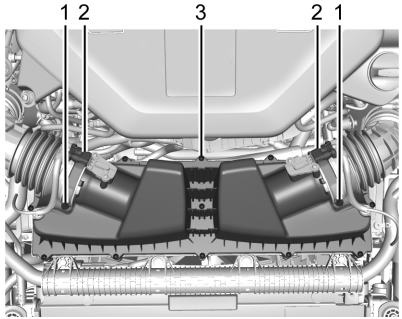
⚠ Warning

If part replacement is necessary, the part must be replaced with one of the same part number or with an equivalent part. Use of a replacement part without the (Continued)

Warning (Continued)

same fit, form, and function may result in personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

5. Inspect or replace the air cleaner/filter.
6. Reverse Steps 1–3 to reinstall the air cleaner/filter cover.
7. If equipped, reset the engine air filter life system after replacing the engine air filter. See *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ *262*.



3.0L V6 Engine

1. Electrical Connectors
2. Air Duct Clamps
3. Screws

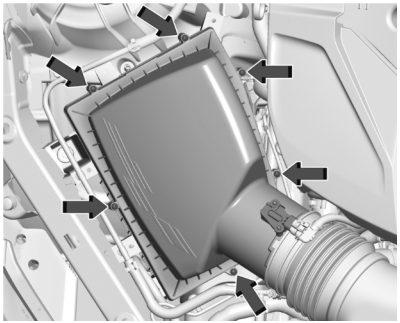
1. Disconnect the harness connectors from the air cleaner/filter cover electrical connectors (1).
2. Loosen the screws on the air duct clamps (2) holding the air outlet ducts in place. Do not remove clamps. Move the ducts aside.
3. Remove the 13 screws (3) on top of the engine air cleaner/filter cover to gain access to both air cleaner/filters.
4. Lift the engine air cleaner/filter cover.

⚠ Warning

If part replacement is necessary, the part must be replaced with one of the same part number or with an equivalent part. Use of a replacement part without the same fit, form, and function may result in personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

6. Lift and remove one or both engine air cleaner/filters.
7. Inspect or replace one or both engine air cleaner/filters.

8. Reverse Steps 1–4 to reinstall the engine air cleaner/filter cover.
9. If equipped, reset the engine air filter life system after replacing the engine air filter. See *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ *262*.



6.2L V8 Engine

1. Remove the six screws on top of the air cleaner/filter cover.
2. Lift the air/cleaner/filter cover away from the air cleaner/filter housing.

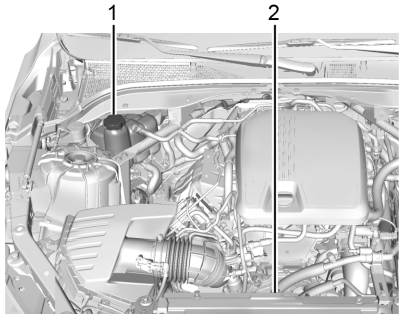
⚠ Warning

If part replacement is necessary, the part must be replaced with one of the same part number or with an equivalent part. Use of a replacement part without the same fit, form, and function may result in personal injury or damage to the vehicle.

4. Pull out the air cleaner/filter.
5. Inspect or replace the air cleaner/filter.
6. Reverse Steps 1–3 to reinstall the air cleaner/filter cover.
7. If equipped, reset the engine air filter life system after replacing the engine air filter. See *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ *262*.

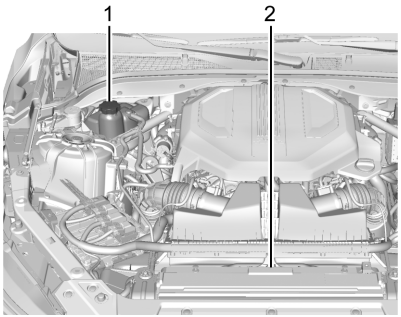
Cooling System

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.



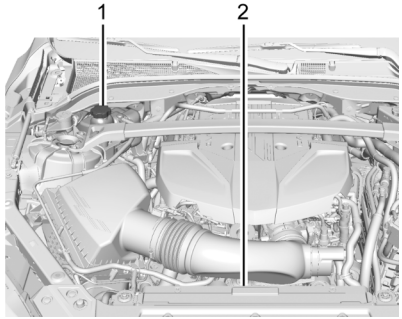
2.0L L4 Engine

1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)



3.0L V6 Engine

1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)



6.2L V8 Engine

1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)

⚠ Warning

An underhood electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Do not touch heater or radiator hoses, or other engine parts. They can be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

Caution

Do not use anything other than a mix of DEX-COOL coolant that meets GM Standard GMW3420 and clean, drinkable water. Anything else can cause damage to the engine cooling system and the vehicle, which would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL engine coolant. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321* and *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *325*.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *270*.

What to Use

⚠ Warning

Do not touch heater or radiator hoses, or other engine parts. They can be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to −37 °C (−34 °F), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 129 °C (265 °F), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminum parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

Caution

Do not use anything other than a mix of DEX-COOL coolant that meets GM Standard GMW3420 and clean, drinkable water. Anything else can cause damage to the engine cooling system and the vehicle, which would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

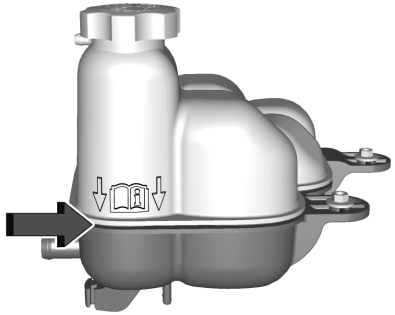
Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams, or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by an authorized service center, familiar with legal requirements regarding used coolant disposal. This will help protect the environment and your health.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

It is normal to see coolant moving in the upper coolant hose return line when the engine is running. It is also normal to see bubbles entering the surge tank through the small hose.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down.



If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the indicated mark, add a 50/50 mixture of clean drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.

If no coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank, add coolant as follows:

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

⚠ Warning

Spilling coolant on hot engine parts can burn you. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough.

⚠ Warning

Plain water, or other liquids such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but there would not be an overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned.

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system,

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

Caution

Failure to follow the specific coolant fill procedure could cause the engine to overheat and could cause system damage. If coolant is not visible in the surge tank, contact your dealer.

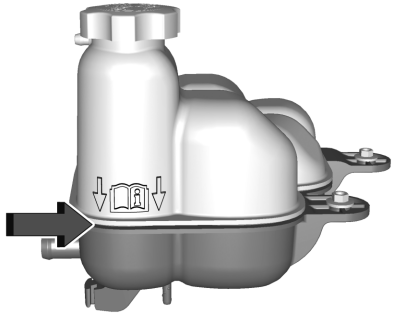
If no problem is found, check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the indicated mark, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it.

2.0L L4 Engine

Automatic Coolant Service Fill Instructions

The vehicle is equipped with a service feature that assists with filling and removing air from the cooling system after service of components or when coolant is added after being too low.

To use the service feature:



1. With a cold system, add coolant to the indicated line on the surge tank.
2. Replace the pressure cap on the surge tank.

To activate the service feature:

1. Connect the vehicle to a battery charger.

2. Turn the ignition on. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *197*.
3. Turn off the air conditioning.
4. Set the parking brake.
5. At the same time, press the accelerator and the brake pedal for two seconds, then release.
6. At the end of the cycle, check the coolant level in the surge tank and add coolant if it is below the indicated line. Turn the ignition off, allow the Electronic Control Module (ECM) to go to sleep, about two minutes, and repeat Steps 2–6.

Listen for pump activation and movement of the control valves while watching the level of the coolant in the surge tank. If the tank empties, turn the ignition off, carefully remove the pressure cap, refill to the indicated line, replace the pressure cap, and repeat Steps 2–6.

The fill and air removal process will run for approximately 15 minutes.

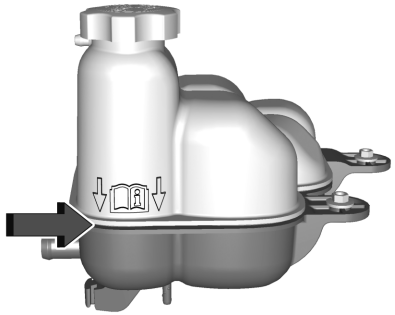
Caution
If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

3.0L V6 Engine and 6.2L V8 Engine

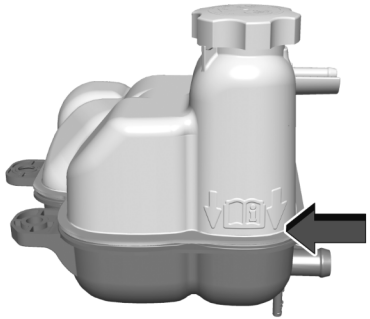


1. Remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

   Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise. If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. This will allow any pressure still left to be vented out the discharge hose.
2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly and remove it.



2.0L L4 Engine and 3.0L V6 Engine Coolant Surge Tank



6.2L V8 Engine Coolant Surge Tank

3. Fill the surge tank with the proper mixture to the indicated level mark.
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the surge tank until the level reaches the indicated level mark.
5. Replace the pressure cap tightly.
6. Check the level in the surge tank after the engine is shut off and the cooling system has cooled down. If the coolant is not at the proper level, repeat Steps 1–6. If the coolant still is not at the proper level when the system cools down again, see your dealer.

Caution

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has an indicator to warn of the engine overheating.

If the decision is made not to lift the hood when this warning appears, get service help right away.

If the decision is made to lift the hood, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Do not run the engine if there is a leak in the engine cooling system. This can cause a loss of all coolant and can damage the system and vehicle. Have any leaks fixed right away.

If Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

If No Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day
- Stops after high-speed driving
- Idles for long periods in traffic

If the overheat warning is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.

2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral) and let the engine idle.

If the overheat warning no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe vehicle distance from the vehicle in front. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

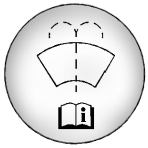
If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down.

Washer Fluid

What to Use

When windshield washer fluid is needed, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If operating the vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *255* for reservoir location.

Caution

- Do not use washer fluid that contains any type of water repellent coating. This can cause the wiper blades to chatter or skip.
- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windshield washer. It can damage the windshield washer system and paint.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system.
- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer instructions for adding water.
- Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.

Brakes

Disc brake linings, except J57 V-Series Blackwing with carbon ceramic brakes, have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake linings are worn and new linings are needed. The sound can come and go or can be heard all the time when the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly. The V-Series Blackwing has electronic pad wear sensors. See *Brake Pad Life System (If Equipped)* ⇨ *273*

⚠ Warning

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake linings could result in costly brake repairs.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake linings for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications. See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *331*.

Brake linings should be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Squeal and Brake Dust

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied, clearing up following several applies. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Vehicles equipped with high performance brake systems provide superior fade resistance, but will produce increased brake squeal and brake dust on the wheels and calipers as compared to standard brake linings. This is normal.

To help reduce squeal, high performance brake pads are treated with an anti-squeal paste that may need to be reapplied periodically as part of normal vehicle maintenance. The anti-squeal paste will dissipate over time. Also, the use of wheel cleaners or power washers directly on the brake calipers may remove the anti-squeal paste from the brake pads. It may be necessary to reapply the anti-squeal paste if it is removed during cleaning.

If brake squeal is excessive, the anti-squeal paste should be reapplied. The anti-squeal paste should always be reapplied whenever the brake pads are removed or replaced. See your dealer for service.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service may be required.

Replacing Brake System Parts

Always replace brake system parts with new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes may not work properly. The braking performance can change in many ways if the wrong brake parts are installed or if parts are improperly installed.

The Brake Fade Warning Assist system is designed for use with the factory-installed brake pads or GM approved replacement pads. If the brake pads on the vehicle need to be replaced, use GM-approved brake pads. If this is not done, the brake fade warning system may not function properly.

High Performance Brake Lining Car Wash and Extended Parking Care

If equipped with high performance brake components, binding or clunking may be noticeable after extended parking or in cold weather when the brakes have been wet, such as when driving in the rain or after a car wash. The clunking is normal for brakes with high performance brake linings and does not affect the operation of the brakes. When driving, normal braking will allow for the brakes to feel smooth and the clunking to go away. If the vehicle is washed before

overnight parking or long term storage, drive it and apply the brakes several times to thoroughly dry the brakes.

Brake Rotor Wear (V-Series Blackwing With J57 Carbon Ceramic Rotors)

The V-Series Blackwing with J57 has carbon ceramic brake rotors. The rotors should be visually inspected whenever the brake pads are replaced. Carbon ceramic brake rotors also need to be weighed before brake pads are replaced to confirm that the rotor mass is greater than the wear-out mass printed on the rotor. The rotor can be reused if the weight of the rotor is above the mass limit. Carbon ceramic brake rotors inspection and weighing methods can be found in the service manual.

V-Series Blackwing Brake Burnish Procedure for Corrosion Cleanup

Corrosion spotting and grooving on the brake rotor surface may appear after the vehicle sits for an extended period of time, especially in high humidity. This corrosion may result in brake pulsation and noise. To help restore optimal braking performance and reduce noise, complete the following procedure:

Caution

Performing the brake burnish procedure on a base brake system can result in brake damage.

Perform this procedure only on dry pavement, in a safe manner, and in compliance with all local and state ordinances/laws regarding motor vehicle operation.

Caution

The new vehicle break-in period should be completed before performing the brake burnishing procedure or damage may occur to the powertrain/engine. See *New Vehicle Break-In* ⇨ *197*.

Caution

Brake fade can occur during this burnish procedure and can cause brake pedal travel and force to increase. This could extend stopping distance until the brakes are fully burnished.

Completing the following procedure as instructed will not damage the brakes. The brake pads may smoke and produce an odor. The braking force and pedal travel may increase. After the procedure, the brake pads may appear white at the rotor contact.

1. Using the G-Force Gauge in the HUD display, apply the brakes 10 times starting at 100 km/h (60 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph) while decelerating at 0.4g. See*Head-Up Display (HUD)* ⇨ *111*. This is a medium brake application. Drive for at least 0.5 km (0.3 mi) between applying the brakes.
2. If further cleanup of the brake discs is needed, repeat this procedure with 0.7g applications.

As with all high performance brake systems, some amount of brake squeal is normal.

Brake Pad Life System (If Equipped)

When to Change Brake Pads

If equipped, this system estimates the remaining life of the front and rear brake pads. Brake Pad Life is displayed in the Driver Information Center (DIC), along with a percentage for each axle. The system must be reset every time the brake pads are changed.

When the system has determined that the brake pads need to be replaced, a message displays, which may include mileage remaining.

Brake pads should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

How to Reset the Brake Pad Life System

The system will automatically detect when significantly worn brake pads are replaced. When the ignition is turned on after new pads and wear sensors are installed, a message will display. Follow the prompts to reset the system.

The brake pad life system can also be manually reset:

1. Display Brake Pad Life on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.
2. Select the Brake Pad Life menu.
3. Select front or rear pads as appropriate.
4. Select YES on the confirmation message. Repeat for the pads on the other axle if they were also replaced.

How to Disable the Brake Pad Life System

The brake pad life system can be turned off. This may be necessary if aftermarket brake pads without wear sensors are installed. When the system is turned off, the front and rear brake pad life percentages will not display. However, the built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn can still determine when the pads should be replaced. See *Brakes* ⇨ *271*.

To turn off the brake pad life system:

1. Display Brake Pad Life on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.
2. Select the Brake Pad Life menu.
3. Select DISABLE.

To turn the brake pad life system back on, follow the above steps but select ENABLE in Step 2.

Brake Pad Sensor System (V-Series Blackwing)

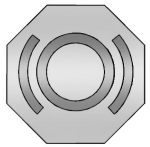
The V-Series Blackwing has electronic brake pad wear sensors, when the brake pads need to be replaced, a message displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

When the message displays, install new brake pads and brake pad wear sensors on the vehicle.

When the ignition is turned on after new brake pads and brake pad wear sensors are installed, the message should no longer display.

The brake pad sensor system can only be reset by replacing the brake pads and brake pad wear sensors.

Brake Fluid



The brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with GM approved DOT 4 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *255* for the location of the reservoir.

Checking Brake Fluid

With the vehicle in P (Park) on a level surface, the brake fluid level should be between the minimum and maximum marks on the brake fluid reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir may go down:

- Normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake hydraulic system. Have the brake hydraulic system fixed. With a leak, the brakes will not work well.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it.

Do not top off the brake fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

⚠ Warning

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

When the brake fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *99*.

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Replace brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent increased stopping distance. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*.

What to Add

Use only GM approved DOT 4 brake fluid from a clean, sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *325*.

⚠ Warning

The wrong or contaminated brake fluid could result in damage to the brake system. This could result in the loss of braking leading to a possible injury. Always use the proper GM approved brake fluid.

Caution

If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Immediately wash off any painted surface.

Battery

The original equipment battery is maintenance free. Do not remove the cap and do not add fluid.

Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new battery is needed.

The vehicle has an Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM) 12-volt battery. Installation of a standard 12-volt battery will result in reduced 12-volt battery life.

When using a 12-volt battery charger on the 12-volt AGM battery, some chargers have an AGM battery setting on the charger.
If available, use the AGM setting on the charger, to limit charge voltage to 14.8 volts.

For replacement of the battery, see your dealer.

Stop/Start System

This vehicle has a Stop/Start system to shut off the engine to help conserve fuel. See *Stop/Start System* ⇨ *199*.



⚠ Warning

Do not use a match or flame near a vehicle's battery. If you need more light, use a flashlight.

Do not smoke near a vehicle's battery.

When working around a vehicle's battery, shield your eyes with protective glasses.

Keep children away from vehicle batteries.

⚠ Warning

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be hurt badly if you are not careful.

Follow instructions carefully when working around a battery.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which can cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

Infrequent Usage: Remove the black, negative (−) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: Remove the black, negative (−) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

All-Wheel Drive

If the vehicle is equipped with All-Wheel-Drive (AWD), this is an additional system that needs lubrication.

Transfer Case

Under normal driving conditions, transfer case fluid does not require maintenance unless there is a fluid leak or unusual noise. If required, have the transfer case serviced by your dealer.

Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check

⚠ Warning

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- Automatic transmission vehicles only: To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear or cracking.

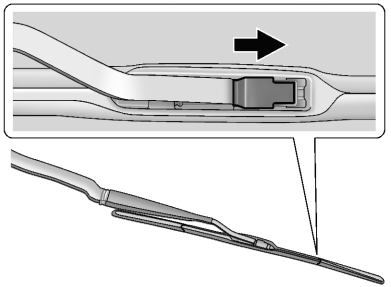
It is a good idea to clean or replace the wiper blade assembly on a regular basis or when worn. For proper windshield wiper blade length and type, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts* ⇨ *326*.

Caution

Allowing the wiper arm to touch the windshield when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windshield. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not allow the wiper arm to touch the windshield.

To replace the wiper blade assembly:

1. Pull the windshield wiper assembly away from the windshield. The passenger side wiper arm has limited travel.



2. Lift up on the latch in the middle of the wiper blade where the wiper arm attaches.
3. With the latch open, pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield far enough to release it from the J-hooked end of the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Reverse Steps 1–3 for wiper blade replacement.

Windshield Replacement

HUD System

The windshield is part of the HUD system. If the windshield needs to be replaced, a GM replacement windshield is recommended.

The replacement windshield must be installed according to GM specifications for proper alignment. If it is not, the HUD image may look out of focus.

Driver Assistance Systems

If the windshield needs to be replaced and the vehicle is equipped with a front camera sensor for the Driver Assistance Systems, a GM replacement windshield is recommended. The replacement windshield must be installed according to GM specifications for proper alignment. If it is not, these systems may not work properly, they may display messages, or they may not work at all. See your dealer for proper windshield replacement.

Acoustic Windshield

The vehicle is equipped with an acoustic windshield. If the windshield needs to be replaced be sure to get an acoustic windshield so you will continue to have the benefits an acoustic windshield can provide.

Gas Strut(s)

Your vehicle may be equipped with gas strut(s) to provide assistance in lifting and holding open the hood/trunk/liftgate system in full open position.

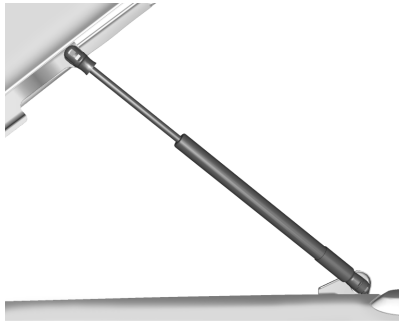
⚠ Warning

If the gas struts that hold open the hood, trunk, and/or liftgate fail, you or others could be seriously injured. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service immediately. Visually inspect the gas struts for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage periodically. Check to make sure the hood/trunk/liftgate is held open with enough force. If struts are failing to hold the hood/trunk/liftgate, do not operate. Have the vehicle serviced.

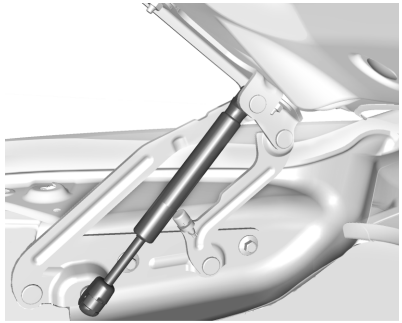
Caution

Do not apply tape or hang any objects from gas struts. Also do not push down or pull on gas struts. This may cause damage to the vehicle.

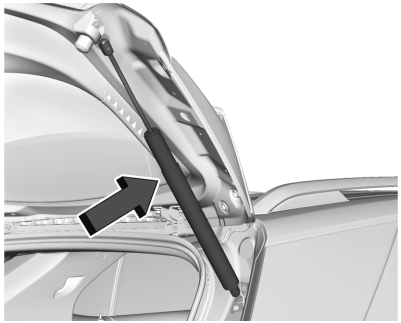
See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*.



Hood



Trunk



Liftgate

Headlamp Aiming

Front Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset and should need no further adjustment.

If the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected.
If adjustment to the headlamps is necessary, see your dealer.

Bulb Replacement

LED Lighting

This vehicle has LED lamps. For replacement of any LED lighting assembly, contact your dealer.

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload

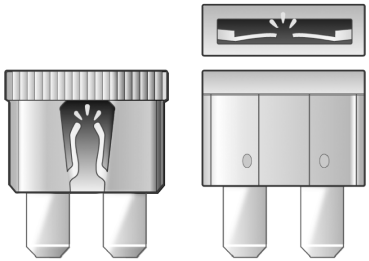
The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect power devices in the vehicle.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

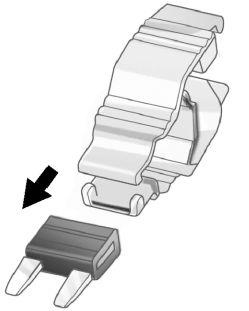
To check a fuse, look at the band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure to replace a bad fuse with a fuse of the identical size and rating.

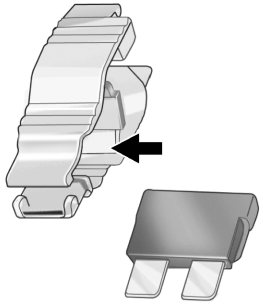




Replacing a Blown Fuse

1. Turn off the ignition.
2. Locate the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse block.





3. Use the fuse puller to remove the fuse from the top or side, as shown above.
4. If the fuse must be replaced immediately, borrow a replacement fuse with the same amperage from the fuse block. Choose a vehicle feature that is not needed to safely operate the vehicle. Repeat Steps 2-3.
5. Insert the replacement fuse into the empty slot of the blown fuse.

At the next opportunity, see your dealer to replace the blown fuse.

Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

Windshield Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windshield wipers will stop. Wiper function is available immediately after the wiper switch is set to off, and back to on.

To protect the wiper motor from overheating, the wipers may slow down when the windshield is dry for a long period of time. If a period of dry operation, or little moisture, exceeds 10 minutes, the wipers

may switch to intermittent operation, and remain there. When moisture is again detected on the windshield, wiper operation will return to the operator selected speed.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windshield before using the windshield wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

⚠ Danger

Fuses and circuit breakers are marked with their ampere rating. Do not exceed the specified amperage rating when replacing fuses and circuit breakers. Use
(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

of an oversized fuse or circuit breaker can result in a vehicle fire. You and others could be seriously injured or killed.



⚠ Warning

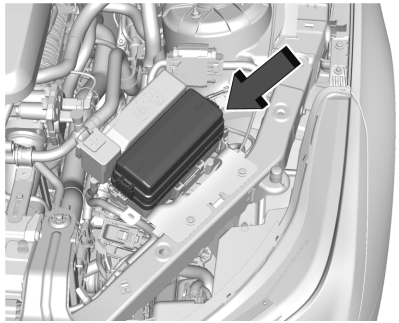
Installation or use of fuses that do not meet GM's original fuse specifications is dangerous. The fuses could fail, and result in a fire. You or others could be injured or killed, and the vehicle could be damaged.

See *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *253* and *General Information* ⇨ *253*.

To check or replace a blown fuse, see *Electrical System Overload* ⇨ *279*.

Engine Compartment Fuse Block

The engine compartment fuse block is on the driver side of the engine compartment.

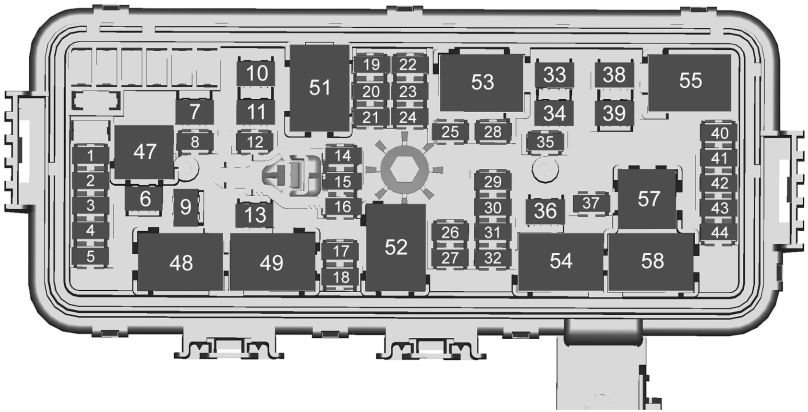


Lift the fuse block cover to access the fuses.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses and relays shown.

Caution

Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.



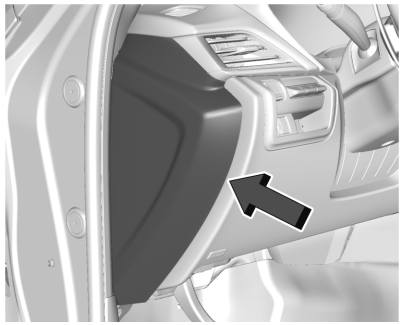
Fuses	Usage
1	Long Range Radar Front Sensor
2	Park/Daytime Running Lamps
3	Exterior Lighting Module 4
4	Exterior Lighting Module 7
5	–
	Headlamp Level
6	–
7	Electronic Brake Control Module
8	Washer Pump
9	–
10	–
11	–
12	Horn
13	Front Wiper
14	–
	Exterior Lighting Module 6
15	–
	Exterior Lighting Module 1
16	Exterior Lighting Module 5
17	Exterior Lighting Module 3
18	Aero Shutter
19	–
20	–
21	Virtual Key System/ Power Sounder Module
22	Engine Control Module Battery
23	Transmission Control Module

Fuses	Usage
24	Active Engine Mount
25	–
26	Engine Control Module
27	Injectors/Ignition 2
28	Charged Air Cooler/ Not Used
29	Transmission Aux Oil Pump/Transmission Reverse Lock Out
30	Injectors/Ignition 1
31	Emissions 1
32	Emissions 2
33	Starter Solenoid
34	–
35	–
36	Starter Pinion/Not Used
37	AC Clutch
38	–
39	–
40	–
41	–
42	Water Pump/Not Used
43	–
44	–

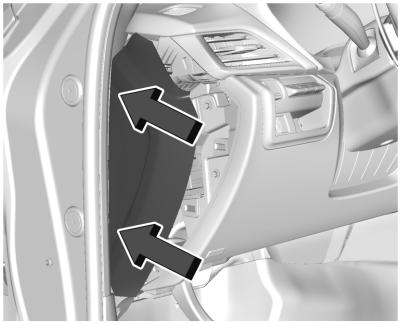
Relays	Usage
47	–
48	Front Wiper Speed/ Not Used
49	Front Wiper Control
51	–
52	Engine Control Module
53	Starter Solenoid
54	Starter Pinion/Not Used
55	–
57	AC Clutch
58	–

Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The instrument panel fuse block is in the end of the driver side of the instrument panel.

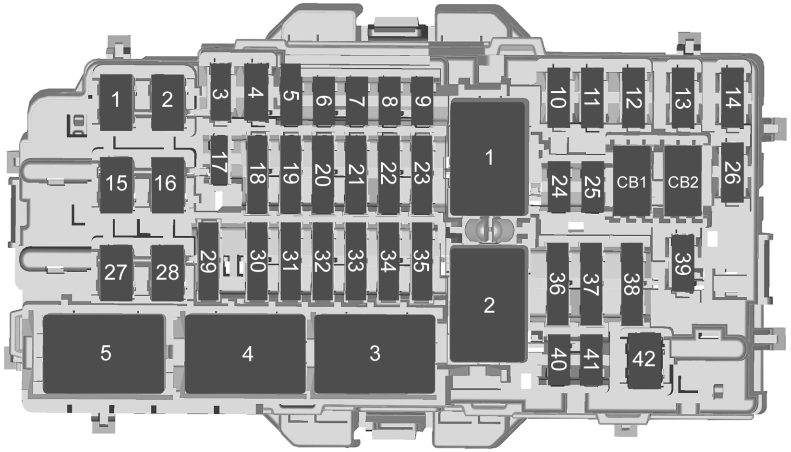


To access the fuses, remove the end panel by gently prying with a plastic tool near each clip, beginning at the point shown.



To install the end cover, insert the tabs on the back of the cover into the slots in the instrument panel at the points shown. Align the clips with the slots in the instrument panel, and press the cover into place.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses and relays shown.



Fuses	Usage
1	–
2	Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning Blower
3	–
4	–
5	Theft Deterrent/Universal Garage Door Opener/ Overhead Console/Rain Sensor
6	–
7	Air Quality Ionizer
8	Heated Steering Wheel
9	–
10	Electronic Steering Column Lock 1
11	–
12	–

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Fuses	Usage
13	–
14	–
15	–
16	–
17	–
18	Display/Infotainment/ USB/Multi-function Control Module
19	Sensing and Diagnostic Module/Automatic Occupant Sensing/Data Link Connection/Wireless Charging Module/Virtual Key Module
20	Power Steering Column Module/Electronic Steering Column Lock 2
21	Driver Monitor System/ Performance Data Recorder
22	–
23	–
24	–

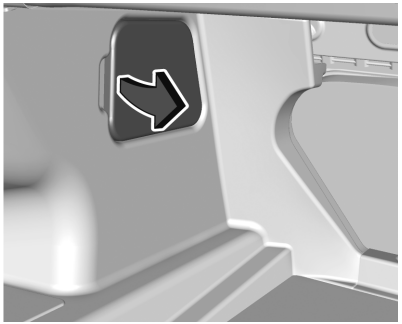
Fuses	Usage
25	USB
26	–
27	Headlamp LH
28	Headlamp RH
29	–
30	–
31	Headlamp Level/Spare
32	–
33	Body Ignition/IP Ignition
34	Exhaust Valve
35	Transmission Control Module Ignition/Engine Control Module Ignition/ Shift Ignition/Brake Ignition
36	Shift Module
37	Body Control Module 1/ Electronic Park Brake Switch
38	Center Stack Module
39	Steering Wheel Controls
40	Body Control Module 2

Fuses	Usage
41	Body Control Module 3
42	Body Control Module 4

Circuit Breakers	Usage
CB1	Auxiliary Power Outlet 1
CB2	Auxiliary Power Outlet 2

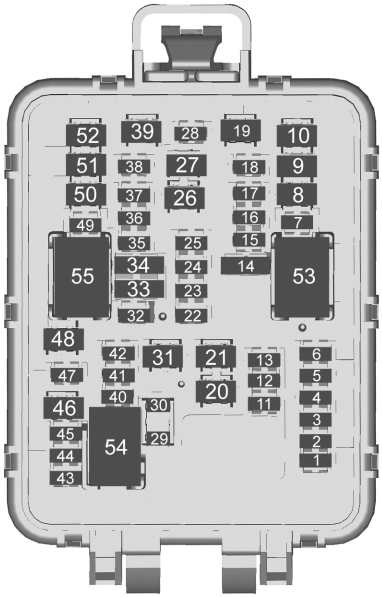
Relays	Usage
1	Run After Park/Accessory
2	Run Crank
3	–
4	–
5	–

Rear Compartment Fuse Block



The rear compartment fuse block is behind a cover on the driver side of the rear compartment.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.



Fuses	Usage
1	Remote Function Actuator

Fuses	Usage
2	–
3	Driver Heated Seat
4	Fuel Tank Zone Module
5	–
6	–
7	–
8	–
9	–
10	Motor Seat Belt Passenger
11	Canister Vent Solenoid
12	Sunroof
13	–
14	–
15	Passenger Heated Seat
16	–
	Exterior Lighting Module 1
17	Electronic Suspension Control
18	–

Fuses	Usage
19	Motor Seat Belt Driver
20	Rear Defog
21	DC to DC Transformer 2
22	Driver Power Window/ Door Handle Switch
23	External Object Calculating Module/Front Camera Module/High Definition Localization Module/Short Range Radar
24	Passenger Power Window/Door Handle Switch
25	–
26	–
	Amplifier (V-Series Blackwing)
27	Rear Drive Control Module
28	–
29	–
30	–

Fuses	Usage
31	DC to DC Transformer 1
32	Transfer Case Electronic Control
33	Central Gateway Module/Side Blind Zone Alert
34	Video Processing Module
35	Hands Free Closure Release
36	Exterior Lighting Module 2
37	Passenger Memory Seat Module
38	–
	Amplifier
39	Right Front/Right Rear Window
40	–
41	–
42	Amplifier
43	Park Assist Module

Fuses	Usage
44	Driver Memory Seat Module
45	OnStar
46	–
47	–
	Exterior Lighting Module 6
48	–
49	–
50	Driver Seat
51	Left Front/Left Rear Window
52	Passenger Seat

Relays	Usage
53	–
54	–
55	Run

Wheels and Tires

Tires

Every new GM vehicle has high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. See the warranty manual for information regarding the tire warranty and where to get service. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer.

⚠ Warning

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.
- Overloading the tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. There could be a blowout and a serious crash. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *194*.
- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when the tires are cold.

- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn or old tires can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.
- Replace any tires that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.
- Improperly repaired tires can cause a crash. Only your dealer or an authorized tire service center should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tires.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not spin the tires in excess of 56 km/h (35 mph) on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tires to explode.

See *Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation* ⇨ *291* for inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed driving.

All-Season Tires

This vehicle may come with all-season tires. These tires are designed to provide good overall performance on most road surfaces and weather conditions. Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall.

Consider installing winter tires on the vehicle if frequent driving on snow or ice-covered roads is expected. All-season tires provide adequate performance for most winter driving conditions, but they may not offer the same level of traction or performance as winter tires on snow or ice-covered roads. See *Winter Tires* ⇨ *289*.

Winter Tires

This vehicle was not originally equipped with winter tires. Winter tires are designed for increased traction on snow and ice-covered roads. Consider installing winter tires on the vehicle if frequent driving on ice or snow covered roads is expected. See your dealer for details regarding winter tire availability and proper tire selection. Also, see *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *298*.

With winter tires, there may be decreased dry road traction, increased road noise, and shorter tread life. After changing to winter tires, be alert for changes in vehicle handling and braking.

If using winter tires:

- Use tires of the same brand and tread type on all four wheel positions.
- Use only radial ply tires of the same size, load range, and speed rating as the original equipment tires.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as the original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, Y, and ZR speed rated tires. If winter tires with a lower speed rating are chosen, never exceed the tire's maximum speed capability.

Run-Flat Tires

This vehicle, when new, may have had run-flat tires. There is no spare tire, no tire changing equipment, and no place to store a tire in the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

While driving with run-flat tires at a reduced inflation pressure, avoid making sudden stops or severe maneuvers as the handling capabilities of the tires will be reduced. Driving too fast could cause loss of control and you or others could be injured. Do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) with the tire operating at low pressure. Drive cautiously and check the tire pressure as soon as possible.

Run-flat tires can be driven up to 80 km (50 mi) at speeds less than 80 km/h (50 mph) after a loss of inflation pressure has occurred. There is no need to stop on the side of the road to change the tire. The possible driving range after a pressure loss will vary based on the vehicle load and driving conditions. As soon as possible, contact the nearest authorized GM or run-flat servicing facility for inspection and repair or replacement.

When driving on a deflated run-flat tire, avoid potholes and other road hazards that could damage the tire and/or wheel beyond repair. When a tire has been damaged, or if driven any distance while deflated, check with an authorized run-flat tire service center to determine whether the tire can be repaired or should be replaced. To maintain the run-flat feature, all replacement tires must be run-flat tires.

To locate the nearest GM or run-flat servicing facility, call Customer Assistance.

Noise Reducing Tires (V-Series Blackwing Only)

This vehicle may be equipped with tires that have noise-absorbing foam technology to reduce road and interior noise levels.

To maintain overall vehicle performance, replace damaged or worn tires with Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) original equipment tires equipped with noise-absorbing foam. See *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *298*.

Low-Profile Tires

If the vehicle has 245/45R18 96V, 245/40R19 94V, 245/40ZR19 94Y, 275/35ZR19 (100Y), or 305/30ZR19 (102Y) size tires, they are classified as low-profile tires.

Caution

Low-profile tires are more susceptible to damage from road hazards or curb impact than standard profile tires. Tire and/or wheel assembly damage can occur when coming into contact with road hazards like potholes, or sharp edged objects, or when sliding into a curb. The warranty does not cover this type of damage. Keep tires set to the correct inflation pressure and when possible, avoid contact with curbs, potholes, and other road hazards.

Summer Tires

High Performance Summer Tires

This vehicle may come with 245/40ZR19 94Y, 275/35ZR19 (100Y), or 305/30ZR19 (102Y) high performance summer tires. These tires have a special tread and compound that are optimized for maximum dry and wet road performance. This special tread and compound will have decreased performance in cold climates, and on ice and snow. It is recommended that winter tires be installed on the vehicle if frequent driving at temperatures below approximately 5 °C (40 °F) or on ice or snow covered roads is expected. See *Winter Tires* ⇨ *289*.

Caution

High performance summer tires have rubber compounds that lose flexibility and may develop surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below −7 °C (20 °F). Always store high performance summer tires indoors and at temperatures above −7 °C (20 °F) when not in use. If the tires have been subjected to −7 °C (20 °F) or less, let them warm up in a heated space to at least 5 °C (40 °F) for 24 hours or more before being installed or driving a vehicle on which they are installed. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect tires before use. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *295*.

Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

⚠ Warning

Neither tire underinflation nor overinflation is good. Underinflated tires, or tires that do not have enough air, can result in:

- Tire overloading and overheating, which could lead to a blowout
- Premature or irregular wear
- Poor handling
- Reduced fuel economy for internal combustion engine vehicles
- Reduced range for electric vehicles

Overinflated tires, or tires that have too much air, can result in:

- Unusual wear
- Poor handling
- Rough ride

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Needless damage from road hazards

The Tire and Loading Information label on the vehicle indicates the original equipment tires and the correct cold tire inflation pressures. The recommended pressure is the minimum air pressure needed to support the vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *194*.

How the vehicle is loaded affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load the vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

When to Check

Check the pressure of the tires once a month or more.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check tire pressure. Proper tire inflation cannot be determined by looking at the tire. Check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold, meaning the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or no more than 1.6 km (1 mi).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until the recommended pressure is reached. If the inflation pressure is high, press on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve to release air.

Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gauge.

Put the valve caps back on the valve stems to keep out dirt and moisture. Use only valve caps designed for the vehicle by GM. TPMS sensors could be damaged and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation

⚠ Warning

Driving at high speeds, 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher, puts additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat buildup and can cause sudden tire failure. This could cause a crash, and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions allow the vehicle to be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high-speed operation, are in excellent condition, and are set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

Vehicles with tire sizes listed in the High Speed Operation Inflation Pressures table require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold tire inflation pressure to the corresponding value in the table for the tire size on the vehicle.

High Speed Operation Inflation Pressures	
Tire Size	**Cold Inflation Pressure kPa (psi)**
275/35ZR19 (100Y)	280 kPa (41 psi) Front
305/30ZR19 (102Y)	290 kPa (42 psi) Rear
245/40ZR19 94Y	300 kPa (44 psi)
245/40R19 94V	280 kPa (41 psi)
245/45R18 96V	280 kPa (41 psi)

Return the tires to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure when high-speed driving has ended. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *194* and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *290*.

Tire Pressure Monitor System

Caution
Modifications made to the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) by anyone other than an authorized service facility may void authorization to use the system.

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your vehicle's tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces energy efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain

correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *293* for additional information.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the tires and transmit the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.



When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *194*.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tire displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC). The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tire pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and needs to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of the original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for the tires when they are cold. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *194*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location. Also see *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *290*.

The TPMS can warn about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *295*, *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *296* and *Tires* ⇨ *288*.

Caution

Tire sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tire sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tire sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tire sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

Factory-installed Tire Inflator Kits use a GM approved liquid tire sealant. Using non-approved tire sealants could damage the TPMS sensors. See *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *301* for information regarding the inflator kit materials and instructions.

TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire pressure warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tire is replaced and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See “TPMS Sensor Matching Process” later in this section.
- The TPMS sensor matching process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tires. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor matching process. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Replacement tires or wheels do not match the original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *298*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly it cannot detect or signal a low tire pressure condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message come on and stay on.

Tire Fill Alert (If Equipped)

This feature provides visual and audible alerts outside the vehicle to help when inflating an underinflated tire to the recommended cold tire pressure.

When the low tire pressure warning light comes on:

1. Park the vehicle in a safe, level place.
2. Set the parking brake firmly.
3. Place the vehicle in P (Park).
4. Add air to the tire that is underinflated. The turn signal lamp will flash.

When the recommended pressure is reached, the horn sounds once and the turn signal lamp will stop flashing and briefly turn solid.

Repeat these steps for all underinflated tires that have illuminated the low tire pressure warning light.

⚠ Warning

Overinflating a tire could cause the tire to rupture and you or others could be injured. Do not exceed the maximum pressure listed on the tire sidewall.

If the tire is overinflated by more than 35 kPa (5 psi), the horn will sound multiple times and the turn signal lamp will continue to flash for several seconds after filling stops. To release and correct the pressure, while the turn signal lamp is still flashing, briefly press the center of the valve stem. When the recommended pressure is reached, the horn sounds once.

If the turn signal lamp does not flash within 15 seconds after starting to inflate the tire, the tire fill alert has not been activated or is not working.

If the hazard warning flashers are on, the tire fill alert visual feedback will not work properly.

The TPMS will not activate the tire fill alert properly under the following conditions:

- There is interference from an external device or transmitter.
- The air pressure from the inflation device is not sufficient to inflate the tire.
- There is a malfunction in the TPMS.
- There is a malfunction in the horn or turn signal lamps.
- The identification code of the TPMS sensor is not registered to the system.
- The battery of the TPMS sensor is low.

If the tire fill alert does not operate due to TPMS interference, move the vehicle about 1 m (3 ft) back or forward and try again. If the tire fill alert feature is not working, use a tire pressure gauge.

TPMS Sensor Matching Process — Auto Learn Function

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tire/wheel position after rotating the tires or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. When a tire is installed, the vehicle must be stationary for about 20 minutes before the system recalculates. The following relearn process takes up to 10 minutes, driving at a minimum speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). A dash (-) or pressure value will display in the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Base Level)* ⇨ *106* or *Driver Information Center (DIC) (Uplevel)* ⇨ *108*. A warning message displays in the DIC if a problem occurs during the relearn process.

Tire Inspection

We recommend that the tires, including the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, be inspected for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Replace the tire if:

- The indicators at three or more places around the tire can be seen.
- There is cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.

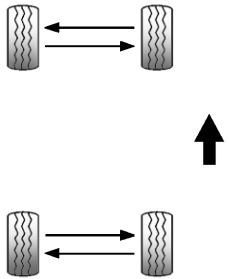
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

Tire Rotation

Tires should be rotated according to the interval specified in the Maintenance Schedule. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *321*.

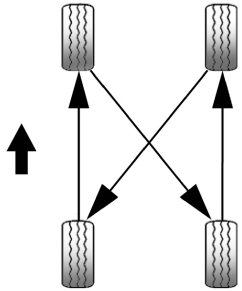
Tires are rotated to achieve a uniform wear for all tires. The first rotation is the most important.

Anytime unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tires as soon as possible, check for proper tire inflation pressure, and check for damaged tires or wheels. If the unusual wear continues after the rotation, check the wheel alignment. See *When It Is Time for New Tires* ⇨ *297* and *Wheel Replacement* ⇨ *299*.



Use this rotation pattern if the vehicle has different size tires on the front and rear.

Different tire sizes should not be rotated front to rear.



Use this rotation pattern when rotating tires of the same size installed on all four wheel positions.

Adjust the front and rear tires to the recommended inflation pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label after the tires have been rotated. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *290* and *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *194*.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *293*.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See "Wheel Nut Torque" under *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *331*.

⚠ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can cause wheel nuts to become loose over time. The wheel could come off and cause a crash. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

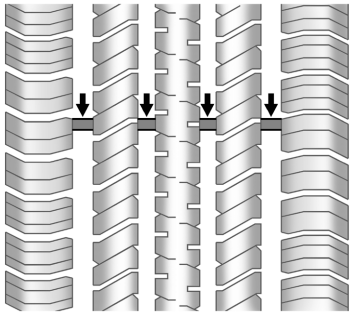
Lightly coat the center of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tire rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up.

⚠ Warning

Do not apply grease to the wheel mounting surface, wheel conical seats, or the wheel nuts or bolts. Grease applied to these areas could cause a wheel to become loose or come off, resulting in a crash.

When It Is Time for New Tires

Factors, such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tires.



Treadwear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tires. Treadwear indicators appear when the tires have only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *295* and *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *296*.

The rubber in tires ages over time. This also applies to the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, even if it is never used. Multiple factors including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast aging takes place. GM recommends that tires, including the spare if equipped, be replaced after six years, regardless of tread wear. To identify the age of a tire, use the tire manufacture date, which is the last four digits of the DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN) molded into one side of the tire sidewall. The last four digits of the TIN indicate the tire manufactured date. The first two digits represent the week and the last two digits, the year. For example, the third week of the year 2020 would have a 4-digit DOT date of 0320. Week 01 is the first full week (Sunday through Saturday) of each year.

Vehicle Storage

Tires age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to slow

aging. This area should be free of grease, gasoline, or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tires that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for at least a month, remove the tires or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tires.

Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for the vehicle. The original equipment tires installed were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. When replacement tires are needed, GM strongly recommends buying tires with the same TPC Spec rating.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of the vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by MS for mud and snow.

GM recommends replacing worn tires in complete sets of four. Uniform tread depth on all tires will help to maintain the performance of the vehicle. Braking and handling performance may be adversely affected if all the tires are not replaced at the same time. If proper rotation and maintenance have been done, all four tires should wear out at about the same time. However, if it is necessary to replace only one axle set of worn tires, place the new tires on the rear axle. See *Tire Rotation ⇨ 296*.

⚠ Warning

Tires could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tire could cause injury or death. Only your dealer or authorized tire service center should mount or dismount the tires.

⚠ Warning

Mixing tires of different sizes (other than those originally installed on the vehicle), brands, tread patterns, or types may cause loss of vehicle control, resulting in a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tire on all wheels.

⚠ Warning

Using bias-ply tires on the vehicle may cause the wheel rim flanges to develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly and cause a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on the vehicle.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as the original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, Y and ZR speed rated tires. Never exceed the winter tires' maximum speed capability when using winter tires with a lower speed rating.

If the vehicle tires must be replaced with a tire that does not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction (radial) as the original tires.

The Tire and Loading Information label indicates the original equipment tires on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *194*.

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If wheels or tires are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tires, vehicle performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, electronic stability control, or All-Wheel Drive, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

⚠ Warning

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *298* and *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *253*.

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing are not necessary on a regular basis. The vehicle's precise steering and handling make it very responsive to road surface feedback. A slight pull may be felt in the steering depending on the crown of the road and/or other road surface variations such as troughs or ruts. This is normal and the vehicle does not require service. Consider an alignment check if there is unusual tire wear or the vehicle is significantly pulling to one side or the other.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it. Some aluminum wheels can be repaired. See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset, and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Replace wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors with new GM original equipment parts.

⚠ Warning

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

handling of the vehicle. Tires can lose air and cause loss of control, resulting in a crash. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

⚠ Warning

Replacing a wheel with a used one is dangerous. How it has been used or how far it has been driven may be unknown. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. When replacing wheels, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Caution

The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire or tire chain clearance to the body and chassis.

Tire Chains

⚠ Warning

Do not use tire chains. There is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause loss of control and a crash.

Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for the vehicle's tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To avoid vehicle damage, drive slowly and readjust or remove the traction device if it contacts the vehicle. Do not spin the wheels. If traction devices are used, install them on the tires of the drive axle only.

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blow out while driving, especially if the tires are maintained properly. See *Tires* ⇨ *288*. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there ever is a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

The vehicle has no spare tire, no tire changing equipment, and no place to store a tire.

If the vehicle has run-flat tires, there is no need to stop on the side of the road to change a flat tire. See *Run-Flat Tires* ⇨ *289*.

⚠ Warning

Driving on a flat tire will cause permanent damage to the tire. Re-inflating a tire after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tire that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorized tire service center repair or replace the flat tire as soon as possible.

⚠ Warning

Special tools and procedures are required to service a run-flat tire. If these special tools and procedures are not used, injury or vehicle damage may occur. Always be sure the proper tools and procedures, as described in the service manual, are used.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road, if possible. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *121*.

This vehicle may come with a tire sealant and compressor kit. To use the tire sealant and compressor kit, see *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *301*.

Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit

⚠ Warning

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *202*.

⚠ Warning

Overinflating a tire could cause the tire to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tire to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

⚠ Warning

Storing the tire sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tire sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

If this vehicle has a tire sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tire or tire changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tire.

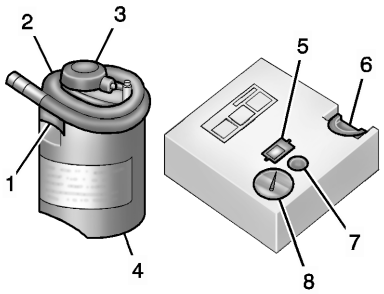
The tire sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tire. It can also be used to inflate an underinflated tire.

If the vehicle is equipped with tires containing acoustic foam, tire sealant performance may be decreased in cold climates.

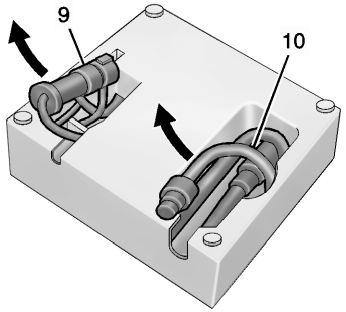
If the tire has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tire is too severely damaged for the tire sealant and compressor kit to be effective.

Read and follow all of the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:



1. Sealant Canister Inlet Valve
2. Sealant/Air Hose
3. Base of Sealant Canister
4. Tire Sealant Canister
5. On/Off Button
6. Slot on Top of Compressor
7. Pressure Deflation Button
8. Pressure Gauge



9. Power Plug
10. Air Only Hose

Tire Sealant

Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the tire sealant canister (4).

Check the tire sealant expiration date on the tire sealant canister. The tire sealant canister (4) should be replaced before its expiration date. Replacement tire sealant canisters are available at your local dealer.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tire. After usage, the tire sealant canister must be replaced.

Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit to Temporarily Seal and Inflate a Punctured Tire

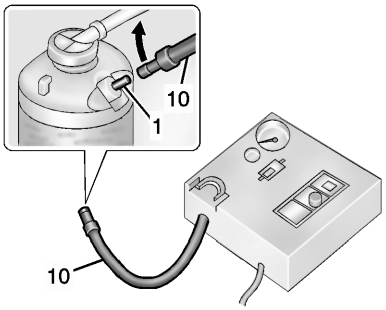
When using the tire sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes. This will help to inflate the tire faster.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *121*.

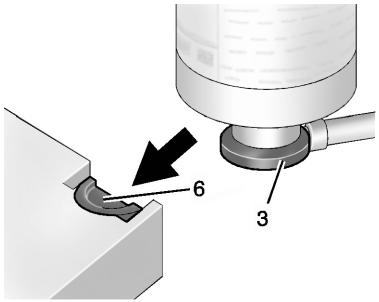
See *If a Tire Goes Flat* ⇨ *300* for other important safety warnings.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tire.

1. Remove the tire sealant canister (4) and compressor from its storage location. See *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *306*.
2. Remove the air only hose (10) and the power plug (9) from the bottom of the compressor.
3. Place the compressor on the ground near the flat tire.



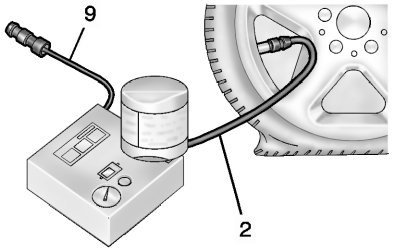
4. Attach the air only hose (10) to the sealant canister inlet valve (1) by turning it clockwise until tight.



5. Slide the base of the tire sealant canister (3) into the slot on the top of the compressor (6) to hold it upright.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.

6. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.



7. Attach the sealant/air hose (2) to the tire valve stem by turning it clockwise until tight.
8. Plug the power plug (9) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *84*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.

9. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
10. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit on.

    The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tire.

    The pressure gauge (8) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tire. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tire, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tire inflates with air only.

11. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (8). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *290*.

    The pressure gauge (8) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor

off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

Caution

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven farther. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tire. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tire valve.

12. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

    The tire is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tire. Therefore, Steps 13–21 must be done immediately after Step 12.

    Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

13. Unplug the power plug (9) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
14. Turn the sealant/air hose (2) counterclockwise to remove it from the tire valve stem.
15. Replace the tire valve stem cap.
16. Remove the tire sealant canister (4) from the slot on top of the compressor (6).
17. Turn the air only hose (10) counterclockwise to remove it from the tire sealant canister inlet valve (1).
18. Turn the sealant/air hose (2) clockwise onto the sealant canister inlet valve (1) to prevent sealant leakage.
19. Return the air only hose (10) and power plug (9) back to their original storage location.



20. If the flat tire was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister and place it in a highly visible location.

    Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tire is repaired or replaced.

21. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.
22. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km (5 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
23. Stop at a safe location and check the tire pressure. Refer to Steps 1–10 under "Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured)."

    If the tire pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant cannot seal the tire.

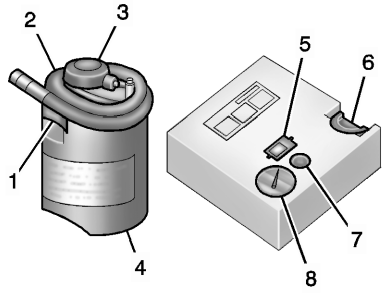
    If the tire pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended inflation pressure, inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.

24. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tire, or vehicle.

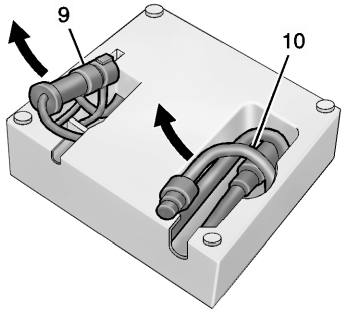
25. Dispose of the used tire sealant canister (4) at a local dealer or in accordance with local state codes and practices.
26. Replace it with a new canister available from your dealer.
27. After temporarily sealing a tire using the tire sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorized dealer within 161 km (100 mi) of driving to have the tire repaired or replaced.

Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured)

The kit includes:



1. Sealant Canister Inlet Valve
2. Sealant/Air Hose
3. Base of Sealant Canister
4. Tire Sealant Canister
5. On/Off Button
6. Slot on Top of Compressor
7. Pressure Deflation Button
8. Pressure Gauge



9. Power Plug
10. Air Only Hose

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *121*.

See *If a Tire Goes Flat* ⇨ *300* for other important safety warnings.

1. Remove the compressor from its storage location. See *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *306*.
2. Remove the air only hose (10) and the power plug (9) from the bottom of the compressor.
3. Place the compressor on the ground near the flat tire.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Attach the air only hose (10) to the tire valve stem by turning it clockwise until tight.
6. Plug the power plug (9) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *84*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.

7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit on.

   The compressor will inflate the tire with air only.
9. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (8). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *290*.

   The pressure gauge (8) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

Caution

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven farther. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tire. Remove the power plug (Continued)

Caution (Continued)

from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tire valve.

10. Press the on/off button (5) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

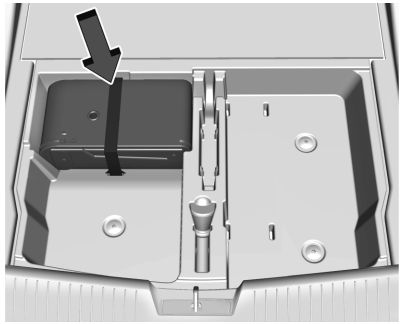
    Be careful while handling the compressor as it could be warm after usage.
11. Unplug the power plug (9) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
12. Turn the air only hose (10) counterclockwise to remove it from the tire valve stem.
13. Replace the tire valve stem cap.
14. Return the air only hose (10) and power plug (9) back to their original storage location.
15. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.

The tire sealant and compressor kit has accessory adapters located in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that can be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.

Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit

The tire sealant and compressor kit is in a bag in the trunk.

1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk* ⇨ *17*.
2. Lift the load floor.



3. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit bag.
4. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from the bag.

To store the tire sealant and compressor kit, reverse the steps.

Jump Starting

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery* ⇨ *275*.

If the battery has run down, try to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ Warning

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Caution

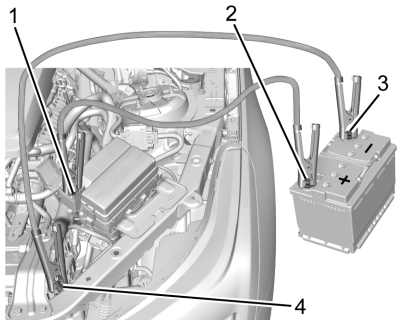
Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Trying
(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.

Caution

If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.



2.0L L4 Engine Shown, 3.0L V6 Engine and 6.2L V8 Engine Similar

Connection Points and Sequence

1. Discharged Battery Positive (+) Terminal
2. Good Battery Positive (+) Terminal
3. Good Battery Negative (−) Terminal
4. Discharged Battery Negative Grounding (−) Terminal

The jump start positive terminal (+) and negative post (−) are on the battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.

The jump start remote positive terminal (+) and the remote negative grounding terminal (−) for the discharged battery are on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The positive jump start connection for the discharged battery is under a cover. Lift the cover to expose the terminal.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Caution

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting.

2. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.
3. Set the parking brake firmly and put the vehicle in P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or Neutral with a manual transmission.

Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting.

4. Turn the ignition off. Turn off all lights and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers if needed.

⚠ Warning

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ Warning

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Connect one end of the red positive (+) cable to the remote positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.
6. Connect the other end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery.
7. Connect one end of the black negative (−) cable to the negative (−) terminal of the good battery.

Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part.

8. Connect the other end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) grounding point for the discharged battery.
9. Start the engine in the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine at idle speed for at least four minutes.
10. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Jumper Cable Removal

Reverse the sequence exactly when removing the jumper cables.

After starting the disabled vehicle and removing the jumper cables, allow it to idle for several minutes.

Towing the Vehicle

Transporting a Disabled Vehicle

Caution

Incorrectly transporting a disabled vehicle may cause damage to the vehicle. Use proper tire straps to secure the vehicle to the flatbed tow truck. Do not strap or hook to any frame, underbody, or suspension component not specified below. Do not move vehicles with drive axle tires on the ground. Damage is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

The vehicle may be equipped with an electric parking brake and/or an electronic shifter. In the event of a loss of 12-volt battery power, the electric parking brake cannot be released, and the vehicle cannot be shifted to N (Neutral). Tire skates or dollies must be used under the non-rolling tires to prevent damage while loading/unloading the vehicle. Dragging the vehicle will cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

The vehicle may be equipped with a tow eye. Improper use of the tow eye may cause damage to the vehicle and is not covered by the vehicle warranty.
If equipped, use the tow eye to load the vehicle onto a flatbed tow truck from a flat road surface, or to move the vehicle a very short distance at a walking pace. The tow eye is not designed for off-road recovery. The vehicle must be in N (Neutral) with the electric parking brake released when using the tow eye.

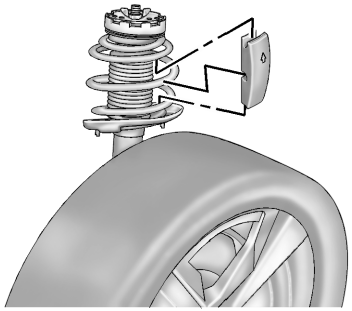
Contact a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be transported. GM recommends a flatbed tow truck to transport a disabled vehicle. Use ramps to help reduce approach angles, if necessary.

If equipped, a tow eye may be located near the spare tire or emergency jack. Do not use the tow eye to pull the vehicle from the snow, mud, sand, or ditch. Tow eye threads may have right or left-hand threads. Use caution when installing or removing the tow eye.

The vehicle must be in N (Neutral) and the electric parking brake must be released when loading the vehicle onto a flatbed tow truck.

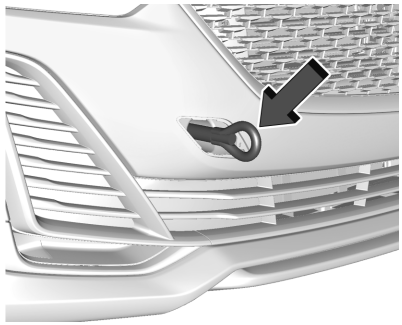
- If the vehicle is equipped with car wash mode and has 12-volt battery power, refer to "Car Wash Mode" under *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *203* to place the vehicle in N (Neutral).
- If the 12-volt battery is dead and/or the engine will not start, the vehicle will not move. Try to jump start the vehicle. Refer to *Jump Starting* ⇨ *307* and if the jump start is successful, retry the "Car Wash Mode" procedure.
- If jump starting is unsuccessful, the vehicle will not move. Tire skates or dollies must be used under the non-rolling tires to prevent vehicle damage.

V-Series Blackwing Only



Due to low ramp angles on the V-Series Blackwing, use care when loading the vehicle onto a flatbed carrier. Front spring spacers were provided for lifting the front suspension if more clearance is necessary when towing.

Front Tow Eye

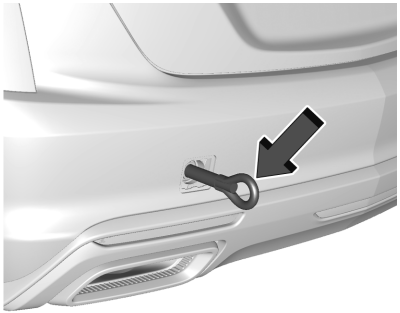


The vehicle is equipped with a tow eye. Only use the tow eye to pull the vehicle onto a flatbed car carrier from a flat road surface. Do not use the tow eye to pull the vehicle from snow, mud, or sand. The tow eye is located under the carpet in the trunk.

Carefully open the cover in the fascia by using the small notch that conceals the tow eye socket.

Install the tow eye into the socket and turn it until it is fully tightened. When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

Rear Tow Eye



If equipped, carefully open the cover by using the small notch that conceals the rear tow eye socket. Install the tow eye into the socket and turn it until it is fully tightened. When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Locks

Locks are lubricated at the factory. Use a de-icing agent only when necessary, and have the locks greased after using. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *325*.

Washing the Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

Caution

Do not use petroleum-based, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal, or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions, and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Caution

Avoid using high-pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8 274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

Automatic Car Wash

Caution

Automatic car washes can cause damage to the vehicle, wheels, ground effects, and convertible top (if equipped).

Do not use automatic car washes due to lack of clearance for the undercarriage, wide rear tires, and wheels.

Caution

To avoid damage to a matte paint finish, do not use an automatic car wash equipped with brushes or scrubbers. Only use touchless automatic car washes.

If using an automatic car wash, follow the car wash instructions. The windshield wiper and rear window wiper, if equipped, must

be off. Remove any accessories that may be damaged or interfere with the car wash equipment.

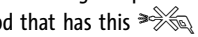
Hand Wash

Rinse the vehicle well, before and after washing, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

Cleaning Underhood Components

Caution

Do not power wash any component under the hood that has this  symbol.

This could cause damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Avoid using solvents or abrasive cleaners that may harm underhood components. GM recommends using only water to clean underhood components.

If using a pressure washer, ensure the following criteria is met:

- Water pressure must be kept below 14 000 KPa (2,000 PSI).
- Water temperature must be below 80 °C (180 °F).
- A spray nozzle with a 40 degree wide angle spray pattern or wider must be used, and must be kept at least 30 cm (1 ft) away from all surfaces.

Finish Care

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended.
If painted surfaces are damaged, see your dealer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your dealer for approved cleaning products.

Caution

Do not apply waxes or polishes to uncoated plastic, vinyl, rubber, decals, simulated wood, or matte paint as damage can occur.

Caution

Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.

To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Moldings

Caution

Failure to clean and protect the bright metal moldings can result in a hazy white finish or pitting. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

The bright metal moldings on the vehicle are aluminum, chrome, or stainless steel. To prevent damage, always follow these cleaning instructions:

- Be sure the molding is cool to the touch before applying any cleaning solution.
- Use only approved cleaning solutions for aluminum, chrome, or stainless steel. Some cleaners are highly acidic or contain alkaline substances and can damage the moldings.
- Always dilute a concentrated cleaner according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not use cleaners that are not intended for automotive use.
- Use a nonabrasive wax on the vehicle after washing to protect and extend the molding finish.

Carbon Fiber Care

Carbon fiber composite parts can be washed and waxed like any other parts. Use a clear or black pigmented wax. See *Composite Materials* ⇨ *197*.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses, Emblems, Decals, and Stripes

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth, and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps, lenses, emblems, decals, and stripes. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" previously in this section.

Lamp covers are made of plastic, and some have a UV protective coating. Do not clean or wipe lamp covers when dry. This can cause scratches to the surface of the lamp cover.

Do not use any of the following items on lamp covers:

- Abrasive or caustic agents.
- Washer fluids and other cleaning agents in higher concentrations than suggested by the manufacturer.
- Solvents, alcohols, fuels, or other harsh cleaners.
- Ice scrapers or other hard items.
- Aftermarket appearance caps or covers while the lamps are illuminated, due to excessive heat generated.

Caution

Failure to clean lamps properly can cause damage to the lamp cover that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

Using wax on low gloss black finish stripes can increase the gloss level and create a non-uniform finish. Clean low gloss stripes with soap and water only.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes between the hood and windshield when washing the vehicle.

Shutter System



The vehicle may have a shutter system designed to help improve fuel economy. Always keep the shutter system clear of debris, snow and ice. If the check engine light is activated, please check to see if the shutter system is clear of debris, snow or ice.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber wiper blades using a lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow, and ice.

Weatherstrips

Apply weatherstrip lubricant on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Lubricate weatherstrips at least once a year. Hot, dry climates may require more frequent application. Black marks from rubber material on painted surfaces can be removed by rubbing with a clean cloth. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *325*.

Tires

Use a stiff brush with tire cleaner to clean the tires.

Caution

Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a
(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.

Wheels and Wheel Trim

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Caution

Chrome wheels and chrome wheel trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium chloride or calcium chloride. These are used on roads for conditions such as dust control. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.

Caution

To avoid surface damage on wheels and wheel trim, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners,
(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

or brushes. Use only GM approved cleaners. Do not drive the vehicle through an automatic car wash that uses silicon carbide tire/wheel cleaning brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Brake System

Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect brake linings/shoes for wear or cracks. Inspect all other brake parts.

Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear at least once a year.

Inspect power steering for proper attachment, connections, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.

Visually check constant velocity joint boots and axle seals for leaks.

Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood hinges, liftgate hinges, and the steel fuel door hinges, unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

Underbody Maintenance

Every six months, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to thoroughly clean any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection. Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your dealer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface. See “Finish Care” previously in this section.

Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Before using cleaners, read and follow all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, open the doors and windows to get proper ventilation. Newspapers or dark garments can transfer color to the vehicle’s interior.

Caution

Immediately remove cleaners, hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Caution

Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage to the vehicle. Apply all cleaners directly to a cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners on any switches or controls.

When using liquid soap cleaners, follow the directions on the specific cleaner or soap solution for dilution instructions.

Caution

To prevent damage:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove soil from any interior surface
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

- Never rub any surface aggressively or with too much pressure.
- Do not get any exposed electrical components wet.
- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.
- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.
- Do not use disinfecting wipes that are scented or contain bleach. Do not use wipes or cleaners that show a color transfer to the wipe or change the appearance of the interior surface when used.
- Do not use scented or gel-type hand sanitizers. If hand sanitizer comes in contact with interior surfaces of the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap and water solution.

Interior Glass

To clean, use a microfiber cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. If necessary, use a commercial glass cleaner after cleaning with plain water.

Caution

To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window defogger.

Cleaning the windshield with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with water and mild soap.

Coated Moldings

Coated moldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft, lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

Vinyl/Rubber

If equipped with vinyl floor and rubber floor mats, use a soft cloth and/or brush dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For more thorough cleaning, use a mild soap and water solution.

⚠ Warning

Do not use cleaners that contain silicone, wax-based products, or cleaners that increase gloss on vinyl/rubber floor and mats. These cleaners can permanently change the appearance and feel of the vinyl/rubber and can make the floor slippery. Your foot could slip while operating the vehicle, and you could lose control, resulting in a crash. You or others could be injured.

Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating vacuum brush attachment is being used, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean, lint-free colorfast cloth with water. Microfiber cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil into the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any color transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colorfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

After cleaning, use a paper towel to blot excess moisture.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Status and Radio Displays

Use a microfiber cloth on high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays. First, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that can scratch the surface. Then gently clean by rubbing with a microfiber cloth. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfiber cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Caution

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, Other Plastic Surfaces, Low Gloss Paint Surfaces, and Natural Open Pore Wood Surfaces

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with a mild soap and water solution.

Caution

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, or spot removers. Do not use liquids that contain alcohol or solvents on leather seats. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim, and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windshield under certain conditions.

Caution

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Cargo Cover and Convenience Net

If equipped, wash with warm water and mild detergent. Do not use chlorine bleach. Rinse with cold water, and then dry completely.

Care of Seat Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye seat belt webbing. It may severely weaken the webbing. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean and rinse seat belt webbing only with mild soap and lukewarm water. Allow the webbing to dry.

Floor Mats

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat use.

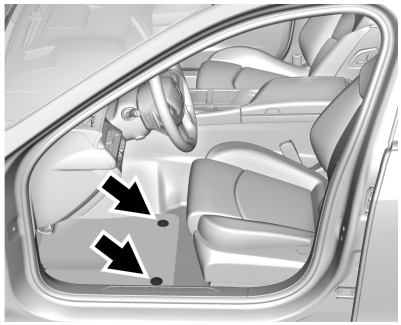
- The original equipment floor mats are designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need to be replaced, it is recommended that GM-certified floor

mats are purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the pedals. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Do not use a floor mat if the vehicle is not equipped with a floor mat retainer on the driver side floor.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

The driver side floor mat is held in place by two button-type retainers.

Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats



1. Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock the retainers and remove.
2. Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snap into position.
3. Make sure the floor mat is properly secured in place. Verify the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Cleaning Rubber Floor Mats (All-Weather Mats and Floor Liners)

See “Vinyl/Rubber” under *Interior Care* ⇨ *315* for important cleaning information.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
General Information 320

Maintenance Schedule
Maintenance Schedule 321

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ... 325
Maintenance Replacement Parts 326

Maintenance Records
Maintenance Records 328

General Information

Your vehicle is an important investment. This section describes the required maintenance for the vehicle. Follow this schedule to help protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance. It may also help to maintain the value of the vehicle if it is sold. It is the responsibility of the owner to have all required maintenance performed.

Your dealer has trained technicians who can perform required maintenance using genuine replacement parts. They have up-to-date tools and equipment for fast and accurate diagnostics. Many dealers have extended evening and Saturday hours, courtesy transportation, and online scheduling to assist with service needs.

Your dealer recognizes the importance of providing competitively priced maintenance and repair services. With trained technicians, the dealer is the place for routine maintenance such as oil changes and tire rotations and additional maintenance items like tires, brakes, batteries, and wiper blades.

Caution

Damage caused by improper maintenance can lead to costly repairs and may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, recommended fluids, and lubricants are important to keep the vehicle in good working condition.

Do not have chemical flushes that are not approved by GM performed on the vehicle. The use of flushes, solvents, cleaners, or lubricants that are not approved by GM could damage the vehicle, requiring expensive repairs that are not covered by the vehicle warranty.

The Tire Rotation and Required Services are the responsibility of the vehicle owner. It is recommended to have your dealer perform these services every 12 000 km/7,500 mi. Proper vehicle maintenance helps to keep the vehicle in good working condition, improves fuel economy, and reduces vehicle emissions.

Because of the way people use vehicles, maintenance needs vary. There may need to be more frequent checks and services. The Additional Required Services - Normal are for vehicles that:

- Carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *194*.
- Are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- Use the recommended fuel. See *Recommended Fuel (LSY 2.0L L4 Engine)* ⇨ *248* or *Recommended Fuel (LGY 3.0L V6 and LT4 6.2L V8 Engines)* ⇨ *248*.

Refer to the information in the Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal chart.

The Additional Required Services - Severe are for vehicles that are:

- Mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather.
- Mainly driven in hilly or mountainous terrain.
- Used for high speed or competitive driving.
- Used for taxi, police, or delivery service.

Refer to the information in the Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe chart.

⚠ Warning

Performing maintenance work can be dangerous and can cause serious injury. Perform maintenance work only if the required information, proper tools, and equipment are available. If they are not, see your dealer to have a trained technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work* ⇨ *253*.

Maintenance Schedule

Owner Checks and Services

Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.

Once a Month

- Check the tire inflation pressures. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *290*.
- Inspect the tires for wear. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *295*.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.

Every Five Years

- Replace brake fluid.

Engine Oil Change

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays, have the engine oil and filter changed within the next 1 000 km. If driven under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate the need for vehicle service for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and the oil life system must be reset. Your trained dealer technician can perform this work. If the engine oil life system is reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 5 000 km since the last service. Reset the oil life system when the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *261*.

Engine Air Filter Change

When the REPLACE AT NEXT OIL CHANGE message displays, the engine air filter should be replaced at the next engine oil change. When the REPLACE ENGINE AIR FILTER SOON message displays, the engine air filter should be replaced at the earliest convenience. Reset the engine air filter life system after the engine air filter is replaced. See *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ *262*.

Air Conditioning Desiccant (Replace Every Seven Years)

The air conditioning system requires maintenance every seven years. This service requires replacement of the desiccant to help the longevity and efficient operation of the air conditioning system. This service can be complex. See your dealer.

Tire Rotation and Required Services Every 10 000 km

Rotate the tires, if recommended for the vehicle, and perform the following services. See *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *296*.

- Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. If needed, change engine oil and filter, and reset the oil life system. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259* and *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *261*.
- Check the air filter life percentage. If necessary, replace the engine air filter and reset the engine air filter life system. See *Engine Air Filter Life System* ⇨ *262*.
- Check engine coolant level. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *265*.
- Check windshield washer fluid level. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *271*.
- Check tire inflation pressures. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *290*.
- Inspect tire wear. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *295*.
- Visually check for fluid leaks.
- Inspect brake system. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *311*.
- Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damage, including cracks or tears in the rubber boots, loose or missing parts, or signs of wear at least once a year. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *311*.
- Inspect power steering for proper attachment, connections, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.
- Visually inspect halfshafts and drive shafts for excessive wear, lubricant leaks, and/or damage including: tube dents or cracks, constant velocity joint or universal joint looseness, cracked or missing boots, loose or missing boot clamps, center bearing excessive looseness, loose or missing fasteners, and axle seal leaks.
- Check restraint system components. See *Safety System Check* ⇨ *49*.
- Visually inspect the fuel system including the evaporative (EVAP) system for damage or leaks. Visually check all fuel pipes, vapor lines, and hoses for proper attachment, connection, routing, and condition.
- Visually inspect exhaust system and nearby heat shields for loose or damaged parts.
- Lubricate body components. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *311*.
- Check parking brake and automatic transmission park mechanism. See *Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check* ⇨ *276*.
- Check accelerator pedal for damage, high effort, or binding. Replace if needed.
- Visually inspect gas strut for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage. Check the hold open ability of the strut. If the hold open is low, service the gas strut. See *Gas Strut(s)* ⇨ *278*.
- Inspect sunroof track and seal, if equipped. See *Sunroof* ⇨ *31*.

Additional Required Services — Normal Service

Every 10 000 km

- Replace passenger compartment air filter. Or every 12 months, whichever comes first. More frequent passenger compartment air filter replacement may be needed if driving in areas with heavy traffic, poor air quality, high dust levels, or environmental allergens. Passenger compartment air filter replacement may also be needed if there is reduced airflow, window fogging, or odors. Your GM dealer can help determine when to replace the filter.

Every 20 000 km

- Replace windshield wiper blades. Or every 12 months, whichever comes first. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *277*.

Every 70 000 km

- Change rear axle fluid, if equipped with limited slip differential. Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

Every 90 000 km

- Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires and/or boots.

Every 150 000 km

- Change transfer case fluid, if equipped with AWD. Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

Every 160 000 km

- Replace hood and/or body lift support gas struts. Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. See *Gas Strut(s)* ⇨ *278*.

Every 240 000 km

- Change rear axle fluid, without limited slip differential. Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.
- Change front axle fluid, if equipped with AWD. Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.
- Drain and fill engine cooling system. Or every six years, whichever comes first. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *265*.
- Visually inspect accessory drive belts. Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. Inspect for fraying, excessive cracking, or damage; replace, if needed.

Severe Conditions Requiring More Frequent Maintenance*

- Public service, military, or commercial use vehicles to include the following:
  - Ambulances, police cars, and emergency rescue vehicles.
  - Civilian vehicles such as light duty pick-up trucks, SUVs, and passenger cars that are used in military applications.

- Recovery vehicles such as tow trucks and flatbed single vehicle carriers or any vehicle that is consistently used in towing trailers or other loads.
- High use commercial vehicles such as courier delivery vehicles, private security patrol vehicles, or any vehicles that operate on a 24–hour basis.
- Any vehicle consistently operated in a high sand or dust environment such as those used on oil pipelines and similar applications.

- Vehicles that are regularly used for short trips of 6 km or less.

  The Oil Life Indicator will show you when to change the oil and filter. Under severe conditions the indicator may come on before 10 000 km. The indicator won't detect dust in the oil, so if you drive in a dusty area you may have to change the oil and filter sooner than every 10 000 km.

  * Footnote: Under extreme driving conditions listed above, it may be necessary to replace your spark plugs at more frequent intervals. For further assistance in determining the most suitable service maintenance intervals for your vehicle, please contact your authorized GM Dealer.

Additional Required Services — Severe Service

Every 70 000 km

- Change automatic transmission fluid and filter.
- Change transfer case fluid, if equipped with AWD. Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.
- Change front axle fluid, if equipped with AWD. Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

Every 120 000 km

- Change rear axle fluid, without limited slip differential. Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name or specification, including fluids or lubricants not listed here, can be obtained from your dealer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON ULV Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL Coolant. See *Cooling System* ⇨ *265*.
Engine Oil – 2.0L L4 Turbo (LSY) and 3.0L V6 Twin Turbo (LGY) Engines	Engine oil meeting the dexos1 specification of the proper SAE viscosity grade. ACDelco dexos1 full synthetic is recommended. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
Engine Oil – 6.2L V8 (LT4) Engine	Engine oil meeting the dexosR specification of the proper SAE viscosity grade. Mobil 1 dexosR full synthetic is recommended. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *259*.
Hood Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor, and Release Pawl	Lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Hydraulic Brake System	DOT 4 Hydraulic Brake Fluid.
Key Lock Cylinders, Hood and Door Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube. See your dealer.
Rear Axle/Front Axle (All-Wheel Drive)	See your dealer.
Transfer Case (All-Wheel Drive)	See your dealer.
Windshield Washer	Automotive windshield washer fluid that meets regional freeze protection requirements.

Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter		
2.0L L4 Engine	84498926	A3245C
3.0L V6 Engine (Driver Side)	84335354	A3235C
3.0L V6 Engine (Passenger Side)	84335354	A3235C
6.2L V8 Engine	84578064	A3247C
Engine Oil Filter		
2.0L L4 Engine	55495105	PF66
3.0L V6 Engine	12707246	PF63
6.2L V8 Engine	25206377	PF64

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco Part Number
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		
Particulate	84987523	CF185
Fine Dust Particulate	23195727	CF206
Spark Plugs		
2.0L L4 Engine	55504354	41-103-IP
3.0L V6 Engine	12650283	41-131
6.2L V8 Engine	12642722	41-128
Wiper Blades		
Driver Side – 60 cm (23.62 in)	84566977	—
Passenger Side – 45 cm (17.72 in)	84574892	—

Maintenance Records

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. Retain all maintenance receipts.

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance Stamp	Services Performed

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) ... 329
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) (V-Series Blackwing Only) 329
Service Parts Identification 330

Vehicle Data
Capacities and Specifications 331
Engine Drive Belt Routing 335

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



This legal identifier is in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver side of the vehicle. It can be seen through the windshield from outside. The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) also appears on the Vehicle Certification label and certificates of title and registration.

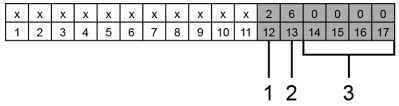
Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code identifies the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See "Engine Specifications" under *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *331* for the vehicle's engine code.

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) (V-Series Blackwing Only)

A serialized plate can be found at the lower portion of the steering wheel.

The plate will correspond to the last six digits in the VIN.



1. Vehicle Build:
   2 – Advanced Regular Production
   3 – Advanced Special Production
   4 – Regular Production
   5 – Special Production
2. Transmission
   6 – 6-speed Manual
   1 – 10-speed Automatic
3. Sequence Number

Service Parts Identification

There may be a large barcode on the certification label on the center pillar that you can scan for the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options

If there is not a large barcode on this label, then you will find this same information on a label inside of the trunk.

Vehicle Data

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in metric and English conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *325* for more information.

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Air Conditioning Refrigerant	For the air conditioning system refrigerant type and charge amount, see the refrigerant label under the hood. See your dealer for more information.	
Engine Cooling System*		
2.0L L4 Engine	10.4 L	11.0 qt
3.0L V6 Engine	12.1 L	12.8 qt
3.0L V6 Engine Intercoolers	3.1 L	3.3 qt
6.2L V8 Engine	13.1 L	13.8 qt

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Engine Oil with Filter		
2.0L L4 Engine	5.0 L	5.3 qt
3.0L V6 Engine	5.7 L	6.0 qt
6.2L V8 Engine	8.5 L	9.0 qt
Front Axle	0.40 L	0.42 qt
Rear Axle		
Open Differential - Small	0.75 L	0.79 qt
Open Differential - Large	1.0 L	1.0 qt
Mechanical Limited Slip	1.0 L	1.0 qt
Electronic Limited Slip	1.5 L	1.5 qt
Fuel Tank	66.0 L	17.5 gal

Application	Capacities	
	Metric	English
Transfer Case - AWD	0.80 L	0.85 qt
Wheel Nut Torque	190 N•m	140 lb ft
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		
*Engine cooling system capacity values are based on the entire cooling system and its components.		

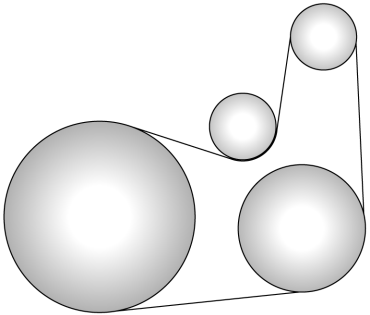
Engine Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Horsepower	Torque	Spark Plug Gap
2.0L L4 Engine (LSY)	K	177 kW (237 hp) @ 5000 rpm	350 N•m (258 lb ft) @ 1500–4000 rpm	0.65–0.75 mm (0.026–0.030 in)
3.0L V6 Engine (LGY) (Luxury)	W	250 kW (335 hp) @ 5400 rpm	550 N•m (405 lb ft) @ 2350 –4000 rpm	0.65–0.75 mm (0.026–0.030 in)
3.0L V6 Engine (LGY) (V-Series)	W	268 kW (360 hp) @ 5400 rpm	550 N•m (405 lb ft) @ 2350 –4000 rpm	0.65–0.75 mm (0.026–0.030 in)
6.2L V8 Engine (LT4) (V-Series)	6	498 kW (668 hp) @ 6500 rpm	893 N•m (659 lb ft) @ 3600 rpm	0.725–0.875 mm (0.028–0.034 in)
Spark plug gaps are preset by the manufacturer. Re-gapping the spark plug is not recommended and can damage the spark plug.				

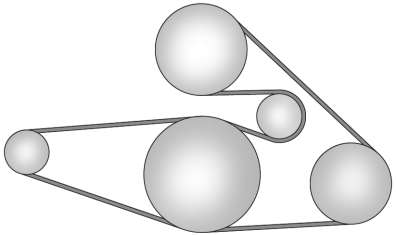
Vehicle Top Speed

Engine	Metric	English
2.0L L4 Engine (LSY) with 19” (QBJ) Tires	232 km/h	144 mph
2.0L L4 Engine (LSY) with 18” (QBF) Tires	240 km/h	149 mph
3.0L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LGY) with 19” (QBJ) Tires	232 km/h	144 mph
3.0L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LGY) with 18” (QBF) Tires	240 km/h	149 mph
3.0L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LGY) (V-Series)	266 km/h	165 mph
6.2L V8 Engine (LT4) (V-Series)	322 km/h	200 mph

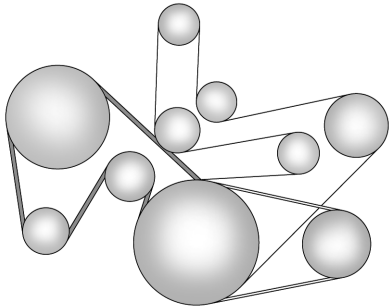
Engine Drive Belt Routing



2.0L L4 Engine (LSY)



3.0L V6 Engine (LGY)



6.2L V8 Engine (LT4)

Customer Information

Customer Information
Declaration of Conformity 336

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy ... 342
Cybersecurity 343
Event Data Recorders 343
OnStar 344
Infotainment System 344

Customer Information

Declaration of Conformity

Radio Frequency Devices

China

- Shall not change transmission frequency, increase transmission power (including additional RF power amplifier), and shall not connect external antenna or change the transmitting antenna.
- When used, it shall not generate harmful interference to various legitimate radio communication services. Once interference is found, it shall be stopped immediately, and measures shall be taken to eliminate interference before it can continue to be used.
- When using micropower radio equipment, interference from various radio services or radiation interference from industrial, scientific and medical applications must be tolerated.
- Shall not be used near aircraft and airports.

Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission.

Body Control Module (BCM)

China

Model B1NA5

Report No. 202115010220

Israel

Certificate No. 55-12767

Jordan

Model B1NA0 : Type Approval No. TRC/34/7153/2020

Model B1NA5 : Ref No. T/4/11/11/2029

Oman

Model B1NA0 :

OMAN TRA
TA-R/6040/18
D080134

Model B1NA5 :

OMAN - TRA
R/11113/21
D100428

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

Model B1NA0 :

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER64922/18
DEALER No:
DA00290/21

Model B1NA5 :

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER96377/21
DEALER No:
DA00290/21

Garage Door Opener

China

Certificate ID: 2016-3167

Israel

Certificate No. 55-09892

Jordan

Ref No. T/4/11/11/6944

Oman

OMAN TRA
TA-R/3270/16
D090258

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER46032/16
DEALER No:
DA35176/14

Radar Hands Free

Israel

Certificate No. 55-12957

Japan

Certificate No. JRF-005-102890-001

Jordan

Type Approval No. TRC/32/9519/2022

Oman

OMAN TRA
TA-R/13032/22
D100428

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER04644/22
DEALER No:
not available

Radar Long Range (77V12FLR, LRR120)

Israel

Certiflcate No. 55-15901

Japan

This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law under the grant ID no. : 215-JRA003

This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid).

Oman

OMAN TRA
TA-R/7713/19
D172338

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER72325/19
DEALER No:
DA0020858/10

Radar Long Range (ARS5-B/ARS510)

China

Automotive driver assistant radar system model ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems ARS5–B

Micropower short range radio transmission device category H

Frequency Range : 76 – 77 GHz

Emission Power : 100 mW

Antenna : Integrated microstrip patch array antenna

User Controls : None

Israel

Certificate No. 55-12676

Japan

This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law under the grant ID no. : 202-LSG051

This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid).

Jordan

Ref No. T/4/11/11/4192

Oman

OMAN TRA
R/6132/18
D172249

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER68006/18
DEALER No:
DA40068/15

Radar Short Range (RS5.3A)

China

Automotive driver assistant radar system model Hella RS4. Micropower short range radio transmission device category H.

Antenna: Integrated microstrip patch array antenna

User Controls: None

Short Range Radar (SRR) : Cert. No. 2022-11657

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) : Cert. No. 2022-11830

Frequency Range : 76 – 77 Ghz

Transmitting Power : 50 – 55 dBm

Emission Limits : –20 dBm/1Mhz

Israel

MOC. No. 55-12845

Japan

This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law under the grant ID no. : R 219-210023.

This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid).

Jordan

Type Approval No. TRC/31/10345/2022

Oman

OMAN TRA
TA-R/14101/22
D172338

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER11776/22
DEALER No:
DA44932/15

Radar Short Range (SRR5-C/SRR520)

China

Automotive driver assistant radar system model ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems SRR5–C

Micropower short range radio transmission device category H

Frequency Range : 76 – 77 GHz

Emission Power : 23 dbm

Antenna : Integrated microstrip patch array antenna

User Controls : None

Israel

Certificate No. 55-12845

Japan

This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law under the grant ID no: 202–LSG052.

This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid).

Jordan

Ref. No. T/4/11/11/4195

Oman

OMAN TRA
R/6364/18
D172249

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER68005/18
DEALER No:
DA40068/15

Remote Function Receiver (RFR)

Israel

MOC No. 51-85562

Jordan

Type Approval No. TRC/36/7716/2020

Oman

OMAN TRA
TA-R/6220/18
D172338

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

Certificate No. ER66706/18

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER66706/18
DEALER No:
DA36976/14

Remote Key

Israel

Certificate No. 51-86353

Jordan

Type Approval No. TRC/36/7715/2020

Oman

OMAN TRA
R/7981/19
D172249

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER66704/18
DEALER No:
DA36976/14

Tire Pressure Sensor (G6GB3)

Japan

Tire Pressure Sensors are compliant with the Radio Act Certification (grant ID no. 020-190091).

This device should not be modified (othewise the granted designation number will become invalid).

Tire Pressure Sensor (G6GB4)

Israel

MOC No. 51-78777

Jordan

Ref No. T/4/11/11/3816

Oman

OMAN TRA
R/7742/19
D090258

United Arab Emirates

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER70116/19
DEALER No:
DA0047074/10

2014/53/EU Radio Equipment Directive (RED) Declaration of Conformity

This vehicle has systems that transmit and/or receive radio waves subject to 2014/53/EU. The manufacturers of the systems listed below declare conformity with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity for each system is available at the following Internet address: www.cadillaceurope.com.

Importer

GM Mobility Europe GmbH

Bethmannstraße 50-54 Ort

60311 Frankfurt am Main

Hessen

Germany

Body Control Module (BCM) — B1NA0, B1NA5

Model B1NA0 : Denso Corporation

1-1, Showa-cho

Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448

Japan

Frequency Range (Mhz): 0.125 – 0.125

Model B1NA5 : DENSO INTERNATIONAL AMERICA

24777 DENSO Drive

Southfield, MI 48033 USA

Operation frequency: 125kHz

Maximum output power (ERP): 1.58 mW

Garage Door Opener

Gentex Corporation

600 North Centennial Street

Zeeland, MI 49464

USA

Operating frequency: 433.05 MHz - 434.79 MHz

Maximum transmit power: 0.138 mW E.R.P.

Radar Hands Free

Alps Alpine

6-3-36, Nakazato, Furukawa

Osaki-city, Miyagi-pref.

Japan 989-6181

Frequency Range: 57-64 GHz

Maximum Transmit Power: 15.5 dBm (EIRP peak)

Radar Long Range (77V12FLR, LRR120)

Veoneer US, Inc

26360 American Drive

Southfield, MI 48034, USA

Product Description: 77 GHz FL Radar Sensor

Operating Frequency: 76 – 77 Ghz

Output Power: 24.69 max. dBm (peak)

Radar Long Range (ARS5-B/ARS510)

ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH

Peter-Dornier-Strasse 10, 88131 Lindau, Germany

Operating frequency: 76-77 GHz

Maximum transmit power: 100 mW

Radar Short Range (RS5.3A)

FMCW and Patch Array Antenna

Hella GmbH & Co KGaA

Rixbecker Straße 75

59552 Lippstadt

Frequency: 76-77 Ghz

Power Output: 10mW

Radar Short Range (SRR5-C/SRR520)

ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH

Peter-Dornier-Strasse 10, 88131 Lindau, Germany

Operating frequency: 76-77 GHz

Maximum transmit power: 23 dBm

Remote Function Receiver (RFR)

Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG

Steeger Str. 17

Velbert, 42251

Germany

Telematics Module

Continental Automotive Systems, Inc.

21440 West Lake Cook Road

Deer Park, IL 60010 USA

Frequency Ranges: 869.0-894.0 mHz, 729.0-768.0 mHz

Tire Pressure Sensor (G6GB4)

Schrader Electronics Ltd.

11 Technology Park

Belfast Road

Antrim Bt41 1QS

Northern Ireland

United Kingdom

Operating frequency: 433.92 MHz

Maximum transmit power: 10 dBm

Tire Pressure Sensor (TMSS6A4)

Baolong Huf Shanghai Electronics Co., Ltd.

1st Floor, Building 5

5500, Shenzhuan Road

Songjiang, Shanghai, China

Operating Frequency: 433.92 MHz

Tire Pressure Sensor (WARDKS)

Baolong Huf Shanghai Electronics Co., Ltd.

5500 Shenzhuan Road

Songjiang, Shanghai, China

VCU Low/Mid/High

Robert Bosch GmbH

Robert-Bosch-Strasse 200

Hildesheim, 31139

Germany

Frequency Range (Mhz): 88.0 - 108.0

Wireless Phone Charger (Gen 2)

BH EVS Co., Ltd

Leaders Avenue Magok 2nd Floor, 791-7,

Magokdong, Gangseo-gu, Seoul, Korea, 07794

Models: WC500B15, BEJWC500B15

Wireless Phone Charger (Gen 3.0)

BH EVS Co., Ltd

Leaders Avenue Magok 2nd Floor, 791-7,

Magokdong, Gangseo-gu, Seoul, Korea, 07794

Operating frequency: 145 kHz

Maximum transmit power: 3 amp (15w)

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

The vehicle has a number of computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven or used. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy them in a crash, and, if equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help the dealer technician service the vehicle or to help GM improve safety or features. Some modules may also store data about how the vehicle is operated, such as rate of fuel consumption

or average speed. These modules may retain personal preferences, such as radio presets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Cybersecurity

GM collects information about the use of your vehicle including operational and safety related information. We collect this information to provide, evaluate, improve, and troubleshoot our products and services and to develop new products and services. The protection of vehicle electronics systems and customer data from unauthorized outside electronic access or control is important to GM. GM maintains appropriate security standards, practices, guidelines and controls aimed at defending the vehicle and the vehicle service ecosystem against unauthorized electronic access, detecting possible malicious activity in related networks, and responding to suspected cybersecurity incidents in a timely, coordinated and effective manner. Security incidents could impact your safety or compromise your private data. To minimize security risks, please do not connect your vehicle electronic systems to unauthorized devices or connect your vehicle to any unknown or untrusted networks (such as Bluetooth, WIFI or similar technology). In the event you suspect any security incident impacting your data or the safe operation of your vehicle, please stop operating your vehicle and contact your dealer.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs. No data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access these data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request of police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research

purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

OnStar

If the vehicle is equipped with OnStar and has an active service plan, additional data may be collected and transmitted through the OnStar system. This includes information about the vehicle's operation; collisions involving the vehicle; the use of the vehicle and its features, including infotainment; and the location and approximate GPS speed of the vehicle. Refer to the OnStar Terms and Conditions and Privacy Statement on the OnStar website.

See *OnStar Additional Information* ⇨ *347*.

Infotainment System

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system as part of the infotainment system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. See the infotainment section for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

OnStar

OnStar Overview
OnStar Overview 345

OnStar Services
Emergency 346
Security 346

OnStar Additional Information
OnStar Additional Information 347

OnStar Overview



Privacy Button

Blue OnStar Button

Red Emergency Button

This vehicle may be equipped with a comprehensive, in-vehicle system that can connect to an OnStar Advisor for Emergency, Security, Navigation, Connections, and Diagnostics Services. OnStar and connected services may require a paid service plan and data plan. OnStar requires the vehicle battery and electrical system, cellular service, and GPS satellite signals to be available and operating. OnStar acts as a link to existing emergency service providers. OnStar may collect information about you and your vehicle, including location information. See OnStar User Terms, Privacy Statement, and Software Terms for more details including system limitations at my.cadillacarabia.com or onstararabia.com.

The OnStar system status light is next to the OnStar buttons. If the status light is:

- Solid Green: System is ready.
- Flashing Green: On a call.
- Red: Indicates a problem.
- Off: System is off. Press twice to speak with an OnStar Advisor.

Press to speak to an Advisor. See "Contacting OnStar" later in this section.

Functionality of the Voice Command button may vary by vehicle and region.

Press to:

- Open the myCadillac app on the infotainment display.

Or

- Obtain and customize the Wi-Fi hotspot name or SSID and password, if equipped.

Press Ⓞn to connect to an Advisor to:

- Verify account information or update contact information.
- Receive a Diagnostic check of the vehicle's key operating systems.
- Receive Roadside Assistance.
- Manage Wi-Fi Settings, if equipped.

Press SOS to get a priority connection to an OnStar Advisor available 24/7 to:

- Get help for an emergency.
- Be a Good Citizen.

Contacting OnStar

To contact an OnStar Advisor, press Ⓞn or call one of the following phone numbers.

Country	Phone Number
Bahrain	800 06956
Kuwait	22285334
UAE	800 04444433
Saudi Arabia STC	800 8449102
Saudi Arabia not STC	800 8500674

OnStar Services

Emergency

Emergency Services require an active safety and security plan. With Automatic Crash Response, built-in sensors can automatically alert a specially trained OnStar Advisor who is immediately connected in to the vehicle to help.

Press SOS for a priority connection to an OnStar Advisor who can contact emergency service providers, direct them to your exact location, and relay important information.

With Roadside Assistance, Advisors can locate a nearby service provider to help with a flat tire, a battery jump, or an empty gas tank.

Security

If equipped, OnStar provides these services:

- With Stolen Vehicle Assistance, OnStar Advisors can use GPS to pinpoint the vehicle and help authorities quickly recover it.
- With Remote Ignition Block, if equipped, OnStar can block the engine from being restarted.
- With Stolen Vehicle Slowdown, if equipped, OnStar can work with law enforcement to gradually slow the vehicle down.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Theft Alarm Notification

If equipped, if the doors are locked and the vehicle alarm sounds, a notification by text, e-mail, or both will be sent. If the vehicle is stolen, an OnStar Advisor can work with authorities to recover the vehicle.

OnStar Additional Information

Transferring Service

Press ⓞ to request account transfer eligibility information. The Advisor can cancel or change account information.

Selling/Transferring the Vehicle

Call immediately to terminate your OnStar or connected services if the vehicle is disposed of, sold, transferred, or if the lease ends. See "Contacting OnStar" later in this section.

Reactivation for Subsequent Owners

Press ⓞ and follow the prompts to speak to an Advisor as soon as possible. The Advisor will update vehicle records and explain OnStar or connected service options.

How OnStar Service Works

Automatic Crash Response, Emergency Services, Stolen Vehicle Assistance, Remote Services, and Roadside Assistance are available on most vehicles. Not all OnStar services are available everywhere or on all vehicles. For more information, a full description of OnStar services, system limitations, and OnStar User Terms, Privacy Statement, and Software Terms, see "Contacting OnStar" later in this section.

- See my.cadillacarabia.com.
- Press ⓞ to speak with an Advisor.

OnStar or connected services cannot work unless the vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area. The wireless service provider must also have coverage, network capacity, reception, and technology compatible with OnStar or connected services. Service involving location information about the vehicle cannot work unless GPS signals are available, unobstructed, and compatible with the OnStar hardware. OnStar or connected services may not work if the OnStar equipment is not properly installed or it has not been properly maintained. If equipment or software is added, connected, or modified, OnStar or connected services may not work. Other problems beyond the control of OnStar — such as hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather, electrical system design and architecture of the vehicle, damage to the vehicle in a crash, or wireless phone network congestion or jamming — may prevent service.

OnStar Personal Identification Number (PIN)

A PIN is needed to access some OnStar services. The PIN must be changed the first time when speaking with an Advisor. To change the OnStar PIN, contact an OnStar Advisor by pressing ⓞ or calling. See "Contacting OnStar" later in this section.

Warranty

OnStar equipment may be warranted as part of the vehicle warranty.

Languages

The vehicle can be programmed to respond in multiple languages. Press ⓞ and ask for an Advisor. Advisors are available in English and Arabic. Available languages may vary by vehicle.

Potential Issues

OnStar cannot perform Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Assistance after the vehicle has been off continuously for 10 days without an ignition cycle. If the vehicle has not been started for 10 days, OnStar can contact Roadside Assistance or a locksmith to help gain access to the vehicle.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

- Obstruction of the GPS can occur in a large city with tall buildings; in parking garages; around airports; in tunnels and underpasses; or in an area with very dense trees. If GPS signals are not available, the OnStar system should still operate to call OnStar. However, OnStar could have difficulty identifying the exact location.
- In emergency situations, OnStar can use the last stored GPS location to send to emergency responders.

Cellular and GPS Antennas

Cellular reception is required for OnStar to send remote signals to the vehicle. Do not place items over or near the antenna to prevent blocking cellular and GPS signal reception.

Unable to Connect to OnStar Message

If there is limited cellular coverage or the cellular network has reached maximum capacity, this message may come on. Press ⓞ to try the call again or try again after driving a few miles into another cellular area.

Vehicle and Power Issues

OnStar services require a vehicle electrical system, wireless service, and GPS satellite technologies to be available and operating for features to function properly. These systems may not operate if the battery is discharged or disconnected.

Add-on Electrical Equipment

The OnStar system is integrated into the electrical architecture of the vehicle. Do not add any electrical equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *251*. Added electrical equipment may interfere with the operation of the OnStar system and cause it to not operate.

Vehicle Software Updates

OnStar or GM may remotely deliver software updates or changes to the vehicle without further notice or consent. These updates or changes may enhance or maintain safety, security, or the operation of the vehicle or the vehicle systems. Software updates or changes may affect or erase data or settings that are stored in the vehicle, such as saved navigation destinations or pre-set radio stations. Neither OnStar nor GM is responsible for any affected or erased data or settings. These updates or changes may also collect personal information. Such collection is described in the OnStar privacy statement or separately disclosed at the time of installation. These updates or changes may also cause a system to automatically communicate with GM servers to collect information about vehicle system status, identify whether updates or changes are available, or deliver updates or changes. An active OnStar agreement constitutes consent to these software updates or changes and agreement that either OnStar or GM may remotely deliver them to the vehicle.

Privacy

The complete OnStar Privacy Statement may be found at my.cadillacarabia.com. We recommend that you review it. If you have any questions, call or press ⓞ to speak with an Advisor. Users of wireless

communications are cautioned that the privacy of any information sent via wireless cellular communications cannot be assured. Third parties may unlawfully intercept or access transmissions and private communications without consent.

OnStar - Software Acknowledgements

To obtain the source code under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses, that is contained in this product, please visit https://opensource.lge.com. In addition to the source code, all referred license terms, warranty disclaimers, and copyright notices are available for download. This offer is valid for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product. This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information.

*Provided through LG Electronics Inc., who is solely responsible for provisions of related OSS compliance.

Contacting OnStar

To contact an OnStar Advisor, press ⓞ or call one of the following phone numbers.

Country	Phone Number
Bahrain	80006956
Kuwait	22285334
UAE	800 04444433
Saudi Arabia STC	800 8449102
Saudi Arabia not STC	800 8500674

Connected Services

Connected Services

Navigation 350
Connections 350
Diagnostics 352

Connected Services

Navigation

Navigation requires a specific OnStar or connected service plan.

Send Destination to Vehicle

Directions can be sent to the vehicle's navigation screen, if equipped.

Press , then ask the Advisor to download directions to the vehicle's navigation system, if equipped. After the call ends, the navigation screen will provide prompts to begin driving directions. Routes that are sent to the navigation screen can only be canceled through the navigation system.

See my.cadillacarabia.com.

Connections

The following services help with staying connected.

For more information, see my.cadillacarabia.com.

Ensuring Security

- Change the default passwords for the Wi-Fi hotspot and myCadillac mobile application. Make these passwords different from each other and use a combination of letters and numbers to increase the security.
- Change the default name of the SSID (Service Set Identifier). This is your network's name that is visible to other wireless devices. Choose a unique name and avoid family names or vehicle descriptions.

Wi-Fi Hotspot (If Equipped)

The vehicle may have a built-in Wi-Fi hotspot that provides access to the Internet and web content at 4G LTE speed. Up to seven mobile devices can be connected. A data plan is required. Use the in-vehicle controls only when it is safe to do so.

1. To retrieve Wi-Fi hotspot information, press to open the OnStar app on the infotainment display, then select Wi-Fi Hotspot. On some vehicles, touch Wi-Fi or Wi-Fi Settings on the screen.

2. The Wi-Fi settings will display the Wi-Fi hotspot name (SSID), password, and on some vehicles, the connection type (no Internet connection, 3G, 4G, 4G LTE), and signal quality (poor, good, excellent). The LTE icon shows connection to Wi-Fi. It is possible that the icon may not illuminate even though the vehicle has an active connection.
3. To change the SSID or password, press Ⓞn or call to connect with an Advisor. On some vehicles, the SSID and password can be changed in the Wi-Fi Hotspot menu.

Country	Phone Number
Bahrain	80006956
Kuwait	22285334
UAE	800 04444433
Saudi Arabia STC	800 8449102
Saudi Arabia not STC	800 8500674

After initial set-up, your vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot will connect automatically to your mobile devices. Manage data usage by turning Wi-Fi on or off on your mobile device, using the myCadillac mobile app, or by contacting an OnStar Advisor. On some vehicles, Wi-Fi can also be managed from the Wi-Fi Hotspot menu.

MyCadillac Mobile App (If Available)

Download the myCadillac mobile app to compatible Apple and Android smartphones. Cadillac users can access the following services from a smartphone:

- Remotely start/stop the vehicle, if factory-equipped.
- Lock/unlock doors, if equipped with automatic locks.
- Activate the horn and lamps.
- Check the vehicle's fuel level, oil life, or tire pressure, if factory-equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System.
- Turn the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot on/off, manage settings, and monitor data consumption, if equipped.
- Locate a dealer and schedule service.
- Request Roadside Assistance.
- Connect with Cadillac on social media.

Features are subject to change. For myCadillac mobile app information and compatibility, see my.cadillacarabia.com.

An active OnStar or connected service plan may be required. A compatible device, factory-installed remote start, and power locks are required. Data rates apply. See my.cadillacarabia.com for details and system limitations.

Remote Services

Contact an OnStar Advisor to unlock the doors or sound the horn and flash the lamps.

Diagnostics

By monitoring and reporting on the vehicle's key systems, OnStar Advanced Diagnostics, if equipped, provides a way to keep up on maintenance. Capabilities vary by model. See www.onstararabia.com for details and system limitations. Features are subject to change. For updates on feature capabilities, see my.cadillacarabia.com. Message and data rates may apply.

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Index

A
Accessories and Modifications 253
Accessory Power 200
Active
Fuel Management 201
Adaptive
Cruise Control 106, 221
Add-On Electrical Equipment 251
Additional
OnStar Information 347
Adjustments
Lumbar, Front Seats 36
Thigh Support 35
Advanced
Driver Assistance Systems 230
Agreements
Trademarks and License 167
Air
Cleaner/Filter, Engine 263
Conditioning 173
Filter Life System 262
Filter, Passenger Compartment 177
Vents 177
Airbag System 50
Check 59
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 54
Passenger Sensing System 55
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 54
Airbag System (cont'd)
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 54
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 53
Where Are the Airbags? 52
Airbags
Adding Equipment to the Vehicle 59
Passenger Status Indicator 96
Readiness Light 96
Replacing System Parts after a Crash 60
Servicing Airbag-Equipped Vehicles 58
Alarm
Vehicle Security 21
Alert
Lane Change (LCA) 244
Rear Cross Traffic 238
Rear Pedestrian 237
Side Blind Zone (SBZA) 244
All-Season Tires 288
All-Wheel Drive 208, 276
AM-FM Radio 130
Antenna
Multi-band 134
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 208
Warning Light 100
Appearance Care
Exterior 311

Appearance Care (cont'd)
Interior 315
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 163
Ashtrays 87
Assistance Systems
Advanced 230
Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) 241
Automatic Parking Assist (APA) 235
Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 244
Driving 238
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 239
Front Pedestrian Braking (FPB) 242
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 244
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 246
Parking 233
Parking and Backing 231
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) 238
Rear Pedestrian Alert 237
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 231
Reverse Automatic Braking (RAB) 236
Surround Vision System 232
Audio
Bluetooth 137
Automatic
Dimming Mirrors 26
Door Locks 16
Automatic (cont'd)
Emergency Braking (AEB) Disabled Light 101
Headlamp System 120
Parking Assist (APA) 235
Transmission 203
Transmission Fluid 262
Vehicle Hold Light 100
Automatic Transmission
Manual Mode 206
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH) 210
Avoiding Untrusted Media Devices 134

B

Battery 275
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 124
Jump Starting 307
Load Management 124
Power Protection 124
Blade Replacement, Wiper 277
Bluetooth
Audio 137
Overview 159
Brake
Fluid 274
Pad Life System 273
System Warning Light 99
Brake Pad Life System 273
Brakes 271
Antilock 208
Brake Assist 209
Electric Brake Boost 208
Electric Parking Brake 208
Braking 181
Automatic Emergency (AEB) 241
Front Pedestrian (FPB) System 242
Reverse Automatic 236
Break-In, New Vehicle 197
Bulb Replacement
Headlamp Aiming 279
Buying New Tires 298

C

Calibration
Compass 83
Camera
Rear Vision (RVC) 231
Capacities and Specifications 331
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 202
Trunk 17
Cargo
Tie-Downs 79
Caution, Danger, and Warning 1
Center Console
Storage 78

Chains, Tire 300
Charging
System Light 97
Wireless 84
Check Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator) 97
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 61
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 66
Older Children 60
Securing 72, 74
Systems 63
Child Safety Locks 16
Cigarette Lighter 86
Circuit Breakers 281
Cleaning
Exterior Care 311
Interior Care 315
Climate Control Systems
Dual Automatic 173
Clock 84
Cluster, Instrument 87, 90
Collision Alert
Forward (FCA) System 239
Compartments
Storage 77
Compass 83
Competitive Driving Mode 217
Composite Materials 197
Compressor Kit, Tire Sealant 301
Conformity
Declaration of 336
Connected Services
Connections 350
Diagnostics 352
Navigation 350
Connections
Connected Services 350
Control
Traction and Electronic Stability 210
Control of a Vehicle 181
Controls
Steering Wheel 127
Convex Mirrors 24
Coolant
Engine Temperature Gauge 95
Engine Temperature Warning Light 102
Cooling 173
Cooling System 265
Cornering Lamps 121
Courtesy Lamps 122
Coverage Explanations 148
Cruise Control 219
Adaptive 221
Light 106
Cupholders 77
Cybersecurity 343

D

Danger, Warning, and Caution 1
Dashboard 4
Data Collection
Infotainment System 344
OnStar 344
Data Recorder
Performance 153
Data Recorders, Event 343
Database Coverage Explanations 148
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 120
Declaration of Conformity
Certification Information 336
Defensive Driving 181
Delayed Locking 16
Destination 141
Diagnostics
Connected Services 352
Differential, Limited-Slip 219
Digital
Audio Broadcast (DAB) Radio 132
Disabled Vehicle
Transporting 309
Distracted
Driving 180

Distracted Driving 180
Dome Lamps 122
Door
  Ajar Light 106
  Delayed Locking 16
  Locks 13
  Power Locks 15
Drive Belt Routing, Engine 335
Drive Systems
  All-Wheel Drive 208, 276
Driver
  Assistance Systems, Advanced 230
  Information Center (DIC) 106, 108
  Mode Control 212
  Mode Control Light 103
Driving
  Assistance Systems 238
  Better Fuel Economy 180
  Competitive 217
  Defensive 181
  Hill and Mountain Roads 193
  If the Vehicle is Stuck 193
  Loss of Control 183
  Off-Road Recovery 182
  Track Events and Competitive 183
  Vehicle Load Limits 194
  Wet Roads 192
Dual
  Automatic Climate Control System 173

E
Electric
  Brake Boost 208
  Parking Brake 208
  Parking Brake Light 99
Electrical
  Equipment, Add-On 251
  System Overload 279
Electrical System
  Engine Compartment Fuse Block 281
  Fuses and Circuit Breakers 281
  Instrument Panel Fuse Block 283
  Rear Compartment Fuse Block 286
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off
  Light 102
Emergency
  OnStar 346
Engine
  Air Cleaner/Filter 263
  Air Filter Life System 262
  Check Light (Malfunction Indicator) 97
  Compartment Overview 255
  Coolant Temperature Gauge 95
  Coolant Temperature Warning
    Light 102
Engine (cont'd)
  Cooling System 265
  Drive Belt Routing 335
  Exhaust 202
  Oil Life System 261
  Oil Pressure Light 104
  Overheating 270
  Power Messages 114
  Running While Parked 202
  Starting 199
Entry Lighting 123
Event Data Recorders 343
Exit Lighting 123
Extended Parking 202
Exterior
  Lamp Controls 118
  Lamps Off Reminder 119
  Lighting Battery Saver 124

F
Filter
  Engine Air Cleaner 263
Flash-to-Pass 120
Flashers, Hazard Warning 121
Flat Tire 300
Floor Mats 318
Fluid
  Automatic Transmission 262

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Fluid (cont'd)
Brakes ... 274
Washer ... 271
Folding Mirrors ... 25
Front
Heated and Ventilated Seats ... 40
Fuel
Additives ... 249
Economy, Driving for Better ... 180
Filling a Portable Fuel Container ... 250
Filling the Tank ... 249
Gauge ... 94
Low Fuel Warning Light ... 105
Management, Active ... 201
Prohibited Fuels ... 249
Recommended ... 248
Top Tier ... 248
Fuses
Engine Compartment Fuse Block ... 281
Fuses and Circuit Breakers ... 281
Instrument Panel Fuse Block ... 283
Rear Compartment Fuse Block ... 286

G

Garage Door Opener
Programming ... 115
Gas Strut(s) ... 278
Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature ... 95
Fuel ... 94
Odometer ... 93
Speedometer ... 93
Tachometer ... 93
Trip Odometer ... 93
Warning Lights and Indicators ... 87
General Information
Service and Maintenance ... 320
Towing ... 251
Vehicle Care ... 253
Global Positioning System (GPS) ... 147
Glove Box ... 77
Guidance
Problems with the Route ... 147

H

Hazard Warning Flashers ... 121
Head Restraints ... 33
Head-Up Display (HUD) ... 111
Headlamps
Aiming ... 279
Automatic ... 120
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) ... 120
Flash-to-Pass ... 120
High-Beam On Light ... 105
High/Low Beam Changer ... 119
Headlamps (cont'd)
Lamps On Reminder ... 106
Heated
Mirrors ... 26
Steering Wheel ... 81
Ventilated Front Seats ... 40
Heating ... 173
High-Beam On Light ... 105
High-Speed Operation ... 291
Hill and Mountain Roads ... 193
Hill Start Assist (HSA) ... 210
Hood ... 253
Horn ... 82
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly ... 44
HVAC ... 173

I

If the System Needs Service ... 148
Ignition Positions ... 197
Indicator
Pedestrian Ahead ... 101
Vehicle Ahead ... 101
Indicators
Warning Lights and Gauges ... 87
Infants and Young Children, Restraints ... 61
Infotainment
Using the System ... 128
Infotainment System ... 344

Instrument Cluster 87, 90
Instrument Panel Overview 4
Interior Rearview Mirrors 26
Introduction 1, 125

J

Jump
  Starting 307

K

Keys 6
  Remote 7
  Remote Operation 7

L

Lamps
  Cornering 121
  Courtesy 122
  Daytime Running (DRL) 120
  Dome 122
  Exterior Controls 118
  Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 119
  Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 124
  Flash-to-Pass 120
  High/Low Beam Changer 119
  Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine) 97
  On Reminder 106
  Reading 122
Lane
  Keep Assist Light 100
Lap-Shoulder Belt 46
LATCH System
  Replacing Parts after a Crash 72
LATCH, Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children 66
LED Lighting 279
Lighter, Cigarette 86
Lighting
  Entry 123
  Exit 123
  Illumination Control 122
  LED 279
Lights
  Adaptive Cruise Control 106
  Airbag Readiness 96
  Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 100
  Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) Disabled 101
  Automatic Vehicle Hold 100
  Brake System Warning 99
  Charging System 97
  Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) 97
  Cruise Control Light 106
  Door Ajar 106
Lights (cont'd)
  Driver Mode Control 103
  Electric Parking Brake 99
  Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Off 102
  Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 102
  Engine Oil Pressure 104
  Gauges and Indicators 87
  High-Beam On 105
  Lane Keep Assist 100
  Low Fuel Warning 105
  Performance Shifting 100
  Seat Belt Reminders 95
  Security 105
  Service Electric Parking Brake 99
  Tire Pressure 104
  Traction Control System (TCS)/Electronic Stability Control Light 102
  Traction Off 101
Limited-Slip Differential 219
Lock
  Steering Column 23
Locks
  Automatic Door 16
  Delayed Locking 16
  Door 13

Cadillac CT5 Owner Manual (GMNA-Localizing-MidEast-17287296) - 2024 -
CRC - 6/19/23

Locks (cont'd)
Lockout Protection 16
Power Door 15
Safety 16
Loss of Control 183
Low Fuel Warning Light 105
Low-Profile Tires 290
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 66
Lumbar Adjustment 36
Front Seats 36

M

Maintenance
Records 328
Maintenance Schedule 321
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 325
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 97
Manual
Mode 206
Map Data Updates 148
Maps 140
Massage
Seats 37
Media
Avoiding Untrusted Devices 134
Memory Seats 38
Messages
Engine Power 114
Vehicle 114
Vehicle Speed 114
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming 26
Automatic Dimming Rearview 27
Convex 24
Folding 25
Heated 26
Interior Rearview 26
Manual Rearview 27
Power 25
Rear Camera 27
Tilt in Reverse 26
Mode
Driver Control 212
Monitor System, Tire Pressure 292
Multi-band Antenna 134

N

Navigation
Connected Services 350
Destination 141
Symbols 141
Using the System 137
New Vehicle Break-In 197
Noise
Reducing Tires 289

O

Odometer 93
Trip 93
Off-Road
Recovery 182
Oil
Engine 259
Engine Oil Life System 261
Pressure Light 104
Older Children, Restraints 60
OnStar 344
Additional Information 347
Overview 345
OnStar Emergency 346
OnStar Security 346
Outlets
Power 84
Overheating, Engine 270
Overview 126
Instrument Panel 4

P

Park
Assist 231, 233
Shifting Into 200
Shifting Out of 201

Parking
Brake and P (Park) Mechanism
Check ... 276
Extended ... 202
Over Things That Burn ... 201
Parking Assist
Automatic ... 235
Parking or Backing
Assistance Systems ... 231
Passenger
Airbag Status Indicator ... 96
Compartment Air Filter ... 177
Sensing System ... 55
Pedestrian Ahead Indicator ... 101
Performance
Data Recorder (PDR) ... 153
Shifting Light ... 100
Phone
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto ... 163
Bluetooth ... 159
Port
USB ... 135
Positioning
Vehicle ... 147
Power
Door Locks ... 15
Mirrors ... 25
Outlets ... 84
Power (cont'd)
Protection, Battery ... 124
Retained Accessory (RAP) ... 200
Seat Adjustment ... 35
Windows ... 29
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts ... 49
Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording ... 342
Problems with Route Guidance ... 147
Prohibited Fuels ... 249

R

Radiator ... 265
Radio
AM-FM Radio ... 130
Data System (RDS) ... 133
Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB) ... 132
Reception ... 134
Reading Lamps ... 122
Rear
Camera Mirror ... 27
Seats ... 42
Rearview Mirrors ... 27
Automatic Dimming ... 27
Reclining Seatbacks ... 36
Recognition
Voice ... 148
Recommended
Fuel ... 248
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ... 325
Records
Maintenance ... 328
Remote
Key ... 7
Key Operation ... 7
Vehicle Start ... 12
Replacement Parts
Airbags ... 60
Maintenance ... 326
Replacing
Airbag System ... 60
LATCH System Parts After a Crash ... 72
Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash ... 50
Restraints
Where to Put ... 65
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) ... 200
Reverse Tilt Mirrors ... 26
Ride Control Systems
Enhanced Traction System (ETS) ... 219
Roads
Driving, Wet ... 192
Roof
Sunroof ... 31
Rotation, Tires ... 296
Routing, Engine Drive Belt ... 335

Run-Flat Tires 289
Running the Vehicle While Parked 202

S

Safety
  Kit 79
  Locks 16
Safety System Check 49
Sealant Kit, Tire 301
Seat Belts 43
  Care 49
  How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 44
  Lap-Shoulder Belt 46
  Reminders 95
  Replacing after a Crash 50
  Use During Pregnancy 49
Seats
  Head Restraints 33
  Heated and Ventilated, Front 40
  Lumbar Adjustment, Front 36
  Massage 37
  Memory 38
  Power Adjustment, Front 35
  Rear 42
  Reclining Seatbacks 36
Securing Child Restraints 72, 74
Security
  Light 105
Security (cont'd)
  OnStar 346
  Vehicle 21
  Vehicle Alarm 21
Service 177
  Accessories and Modifications 253
  Doing Your Own Work 253
  Electric Parking Brake Light 99
  Maintenance Records 328
  Maintenance, General Information 320
  Parts Identification 330
Servicing System 148
Servicing the Airbag 58
Settings 164
Shifting
  Into Park 200
  Out of Park 201
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 121
Software Updates 130
Specifications and Capacities 331
Speedometer 93
Start Assist, Hill 210
Start Vehicle, Remote 12
Starting the Engine 199
Steering 181
  Column Lock 23
  Heated Wheel 81
  Wheel Adjustment 81
Steering (cont'd)
  Wheel Controls 127
Stop/Start System 199
Storage
  Center Console 78
  Compartments 77
  Cupholders 77
  Glove Box 77
  Umbrella 78
Storing the Tire Sealant and
  Compressor Kit 306
Struts
  Gas 278
Stuck Vehicle 193
Summer Tires 290
Sun Visors 31
Sunroof 31
Surround
  Vision System 232
Symbols 2
  Navigation 141
System
  Airbag 50
  Brake Pad Life 273
  Engine Air Filter Life 262
  Global Positioning 147
  Infotainment 344

T
Tachometer 93
Theft-Deterrent Systems 23
Thigh Support Adjustment 35
Time 84
Tires 288
All-Season 288
Buying New Tires 298
Chains 300
Different Size 299
If a Tire Goes Flat 300
Inspection 295
Low-Profile 290
Noise Reducing 289
Pressure 290, 291
Pressure Light 104
Pressure Monitor Operation 293
Pressure Monitor System 292
Rotation 296
Run-Flat 289
Sealant and Compressor Kit 301
Sealant and Compressor Kit, Storing 306
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 299
Wheel Replacement 299
When It Is Time for New Tires 297
Winter 289
Top Tier Fuel 248
Towing
General Information 251
Track Events and Competitive Driving 183
Traction
Control System (TCS)/Electronic Stability Control Light 102
Control/Electronic Stability Control 210
Limited-Slip Differential 219
Off Light 101
Trademarks and License Agreements 167
Transmission
Automatic 203
Fluid, Automatic 262
Transporting
a Disabled Vehicle 309
Trip Odometer 93
Trunk 17
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 121

U
Umbrella Storage 78
Universal Remote System
Operation 117
Programming 115
Updates
Map Data 148
Software 130
USB Port 135
Using
Infotainment System 128
Navigation System 137

V
Vehicle
Ahead Indicator 101
Alarm System 21
Automatic Hold 210
Automatic Hold Light 100
Control 181
Data Recording and Privacy 342
Identification Number (VIN) 329
Load Limits 194
Messages 114
Positioning 147
Remote Start 12
Security 21
Speed Messages 114
Symbols 2
Vehicle Care
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 306
Tire Pressure 290
Vehicle Security
Steering Column Lock 23
Ventilation, Air 177
Visors 31

Voice Recognition 148

W

Warning
  Brake System Light 99
  Caution and Danger 1
  Hazard Flashers 121
  Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 87
Washer Fluid 271
Wheels
  Alignment and Tire Balance 299
  Different Size 299
  Replacement 299
When It Is Time for New Tires 297
Where to Put the Restraint 65
Windows 29
  Power 29
Windshield
  Replacement 277
  Wiper/Washer 82
Winter
  Tires 289
Wiper
  Blade Replacement 277
Wireless Charging 84